Owner's Manual

2021 CIVIC

Hatchback

HONDA

⚠WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to *www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle*.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential. Some diagnostic and maintenance information is uploaded to Honda upon vehicle start up.

California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See *www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/*

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a NOTICE symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Software End User License Agreement

Your vehicle comes equipped with software, which is governed by the End User License Agreement in Owner’s Manual, and which contains a binding arbitration clause. Please refer to the End User License Agreement for the terms and conditions governing your use of the installed software, as well as the applications, services, functions, and content provided through the software. Your use of the installed software will serve as your consent to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement.

You may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at American Honda Motor Co., Inc. Honda Automobile Customer Services Mail Stop 100-5E-8A, 1919 Torrance Blvd. Torrance, CA 90501-2746.

Privacy Notice

This vehicle may share location and usage information. To manage this setting, visit *www.hondalink.com/vehicle-data-choices*.

To learn more about how we collect and use Personal Information, please read our Privacy Policy, accessible at *www.honda.com*.

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

This owner's manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Safe Driving P. 35
For Safe Driving P. 36
Seat Belts P. 40
Airbags P. 48

Instrument Panel P. 81
Indicators P. 82
Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 122

Controls P. 143
Clock P. 144
Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 145
Moonroof* P. 170
Adjusting the Seats P. 193

Features P. 225
Audio System P. 226
Audio System Basic Operation P. 233, 251
Customized Features P. 343, 350
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*P. 380

Driving P. 443
Before Driving P. 444
Towing a Trailer P. 450
Parking Your Vehicle P. 558
Multi-View Rear Camera P. 560

Maintenance P. 569
Before Performing Maintenance P. 570
Maintenance Minder™ P. 573
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 604
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 624

Handling the Unexpected P. 633
Tools P. 634
If a Tire Goes Flat P. 635
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 665
Overheating P. 666
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 680

Information P. 683
Specifications P. 684
Identification Numbers P. 686
Emissions Testing P. 689
Warranty Coverages P. 692

Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 6

Safe Driving P. 35
- Child Safety P. 64
- Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 79
- Safety Labels P. 80

Instrument Panel P. 81

Controls P. 143
- Hatch P. 160
- Security System P. 163
- Opening and Closing the Windows P. 167
- Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 171
- Adjusting the Mirrors P. 190
- Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 201
- Climate Control System P. 217

Features P. 225
- Audio Error Messages P. 320
- General Information on the Audio System P. 324
- *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® P. 383, 410

Driving P. 443
- When Driving P. 451
- Honda Sensing®P. 488
- Braking P. 549
- Refueling P. 562
- Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 566
- Turbo Engine Vehicle P. 567

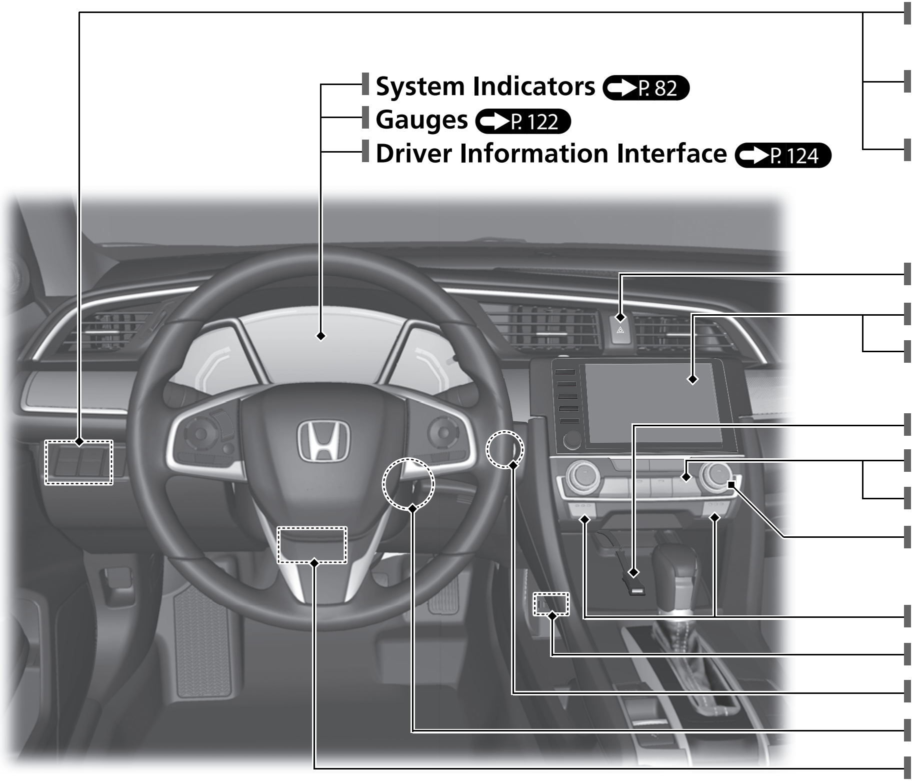
Maintenance P. 569
- Maintenance Under the Hood P. 579
- Replacing Light Bulbs P. 594
- Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 609
- Battery P. 620
- Remote Transmitter Care P. 622
- Cleaning P. 625
- Accessories and Modifications P. 631

Handling the Unexpected P. 633
- Handling of the Jack* P. 656
- Engine Does Not Start P. 659
- If the Battery Is Dead P. 662
- Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 668
- Fuses P. 674
- Emergency Towing P. 679
- If You Cannot Open the Hatch P. 681
- Refueling P. 682

Information P. 683
- Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 687
- Reporting Safety Defects P. 688
- Authorized Manuals P. 695
- Customer Service Information P. 696

Index P. 698

Visual Index



OFF (Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System OFF) Button ➤P. 476

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Button ➤P. 543

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) OFF Button ➤P. 495

System Indicators ➤P. 82

Gauges ➤P. 122

Driver Information Interface ➤P. 124

Hazard Warning Button

Audio System ➤P. 233, 251

Navigation System*

➤ See the Navigation System Manual

USB Extension Cable*[2] ➤P. 227

Rear Defogger ➤P. 188

Heated Door Mirror Button* ➤P. 188

Climate Control System ➤P. 217

Front Seat Heater Buttons* ➤P. 215

USB Port ➤P. 227

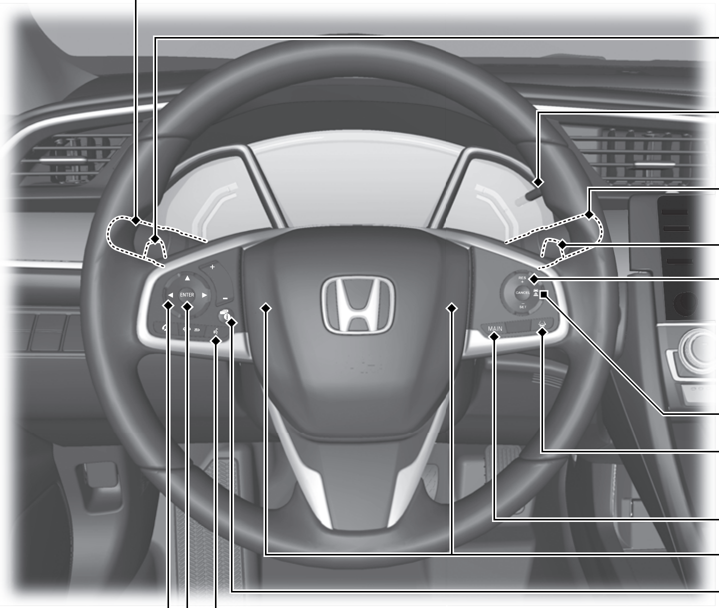
ENGINE START/STOP Button*[1] ➤P. 172

Ignition Switch* ➤P. 171

Steering Wheel Adjustments ➤P. 189

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2: Pre-installed on U.S. models only.



Headlights/Turn Signals ➡P. 176

Fog Lights* ➡P. 180

LaneWatch™* ➡P. 480

Paddle Shifter (Shift down)* ➡P. 466

◎ (TRIP) Knob ➡P. 127

Brightness Control ➡P. 187

Wipers/Washers ➡P. 184

Paddle Shifter (Shift up)* ➡P. 466

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons* ➡P. 501

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Buttons* ➡P. 518

Interval Button ➡P. 512

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button ➡P. 533

MAIN Button ➡P. 489, 502, 519, 535

Horn (Press an area around 📯.)

ⓘ (Display/Information) Button ➡P. 125

Navigation System Voice Control Buttons* ➡P. 276 ➡ See the Navigation System Manual

***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® System Voice Control Buttons** ➡P. 383, 410

ENTER Button ➡P. 134, 230

▲ / ▼ / ◀ / ▶ Buttons ➡P. 134, 230

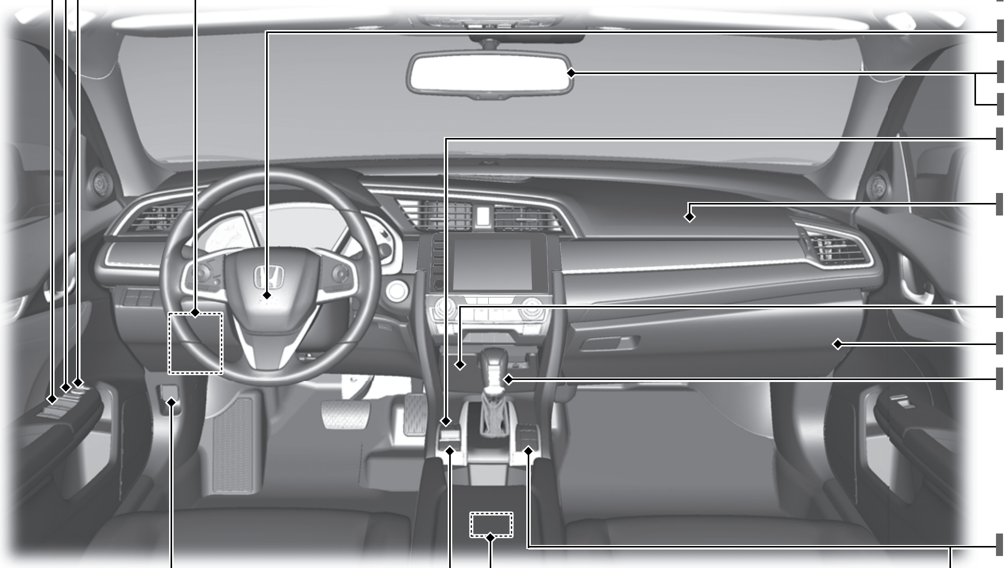
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Power Window Switches ➡P. 167

Master Door Lock Switch ➡P. 158

Door Mirror Controls ➡P. 192



Interior Fuse Box ➡P. 676

Driver's Front Airbag ➡P. 51

Rearview Mirror ➡P. 190

HomeLink® Buttons* ➡P. 381

Automatic Brake Hold Button ➡P. 553

Passenger's Front Airbag ➡P. 51

Wireless Charger* ➡P. 209

Glove Box ➡P. 203

Shift Lever
Continuously Variable Transmission ➡P. 461, 463
Manual Transmission ➡P. 468

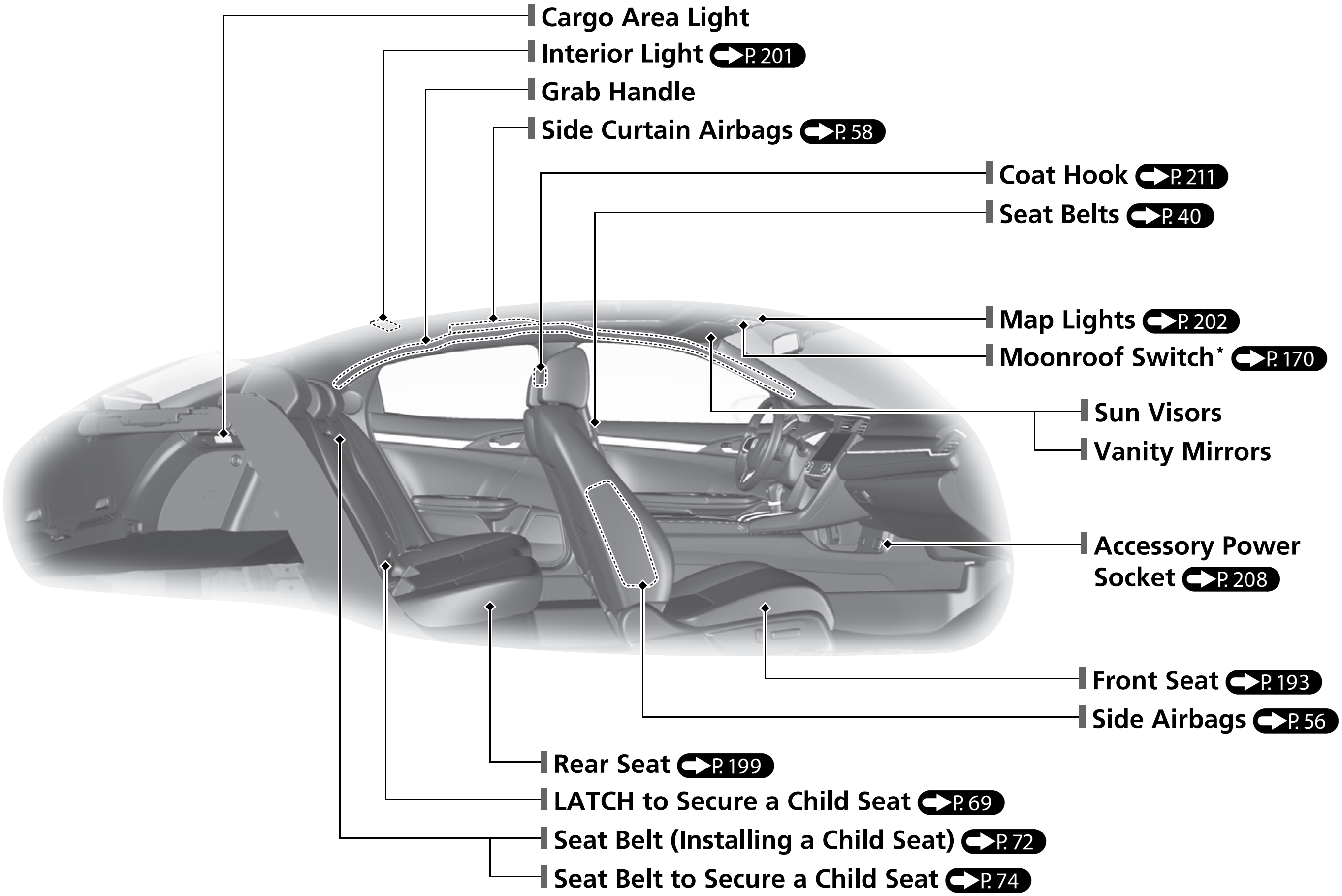
ECON Button* ➡P. 472

Drive Mode Switch* ➡P. 473

USB Port* ➡P. 227

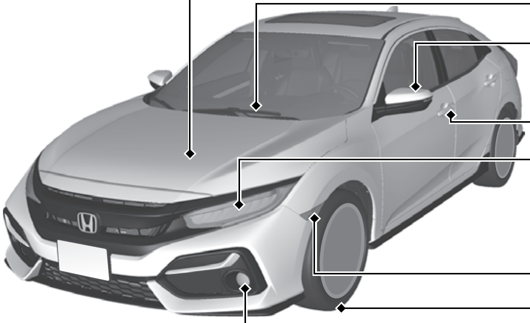
Electric Parking Brake Switch ➡P. 549

Hood Release Handle ➡P. 581

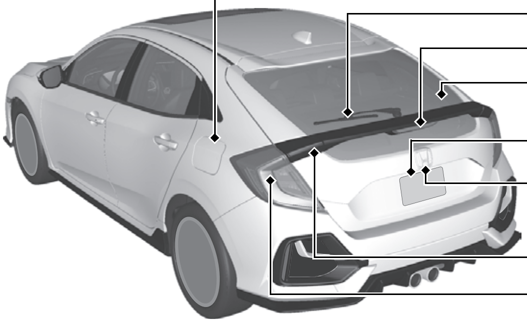

Cargo Area Light
Interior Light P. 201
Grab Handle
Side Curtain Airbags P. 58
Coat Hook P. 211
Seat Belts P. 40
Map Lights P. 202
Moonroof Switch* P. 170
Sun Visors
Vanity Mirrors
Accessory Power Socket P. 208
Front Seat P. 193
Side Airbags P. 56
Rear Seat P. 199
LATCH to Secure a Child Seat P. 69
Seat Belt (Installing a Child Seat) P. 72
Seat Belt to Secure a Child Seat P. 74

* Not available on all models

Visual Index



Maintenance Under the Hood ➡P. 579
Windshield Wipers ➡P. 184, 604
Power Door Mirrors ➡P. 192
Side Turn Signal Lights* ➡P. 176, 601
Door Lock/Unlock Control ➡P. 147
Headlights ➡P. 177, 594
Front Turn Signal Lights ➡P. 176, 598
Parking/Daytime Running Lights ➡P. 176, 601
Front Side Marker Lights ➡P. 599
Tires ➡P. 609, 635
Fog Lights* ➡P. 180, 596



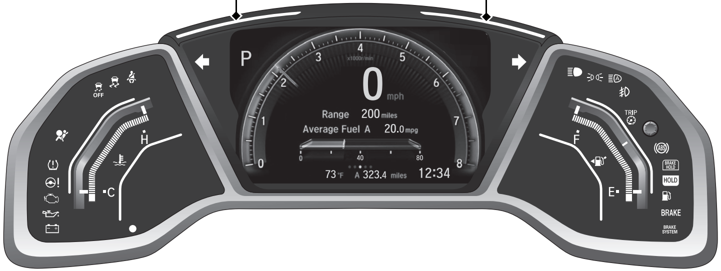
How to Refuel ➡P. 564
Rear Wiper* ➡P. 186, 607
High-Mount Brake Light ➡P. 603
Opening/Closing the Hatch ➡P. 160
Multi-View Rear Camera ➡P. 560
Hatch Release Button ➡P. 161
License Plate Light ➡P. 603
Taillights ➡P. 603
Taillights/Rear Side Marker Lights ➡P. 603
Brake Lights ➡P. 602
Rear Turn Signal Lights ➡P. 602
Back-Up Lights ➡P. 602

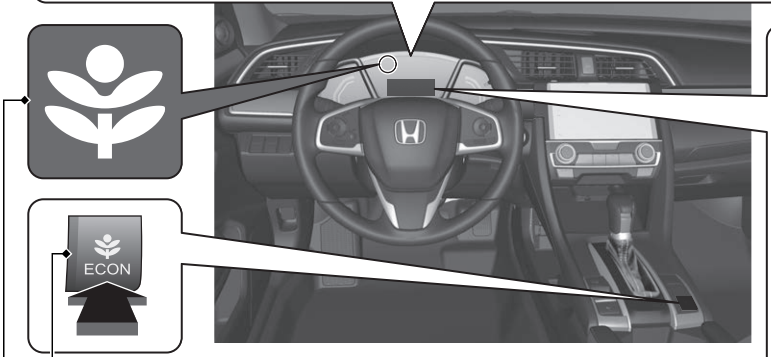
Eco Assist® System P. 472

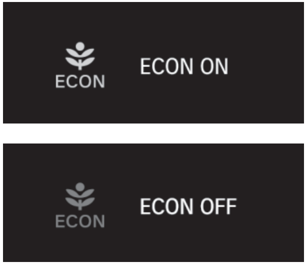
1.5 L engine models

Ambient Meter

- The color of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.


P
0
mph
Range 200 miles
Average Fuel A 20.0 mpg
73°F
A 323.4 miles
12:34
H
C
F
E
TRIP
HOLD
BRAKE




ECON
ECON ON
ECON
ECON OFF

The message is displayed for a few seconds when the **ECON** button is pressed.

ECON Button P. 472
Helps maximize fuel economy.

ECON Mode Indicator P. 95
Comes on when the **ECON** button is pressed.

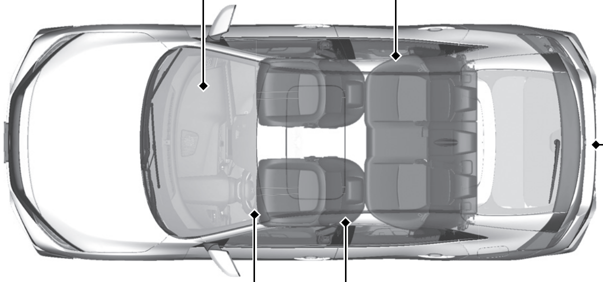
Safe Driving P. 35

Airbags P. 48

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety P. 64

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Smaller children should be properly restrained in a forward-facing child seat.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat.

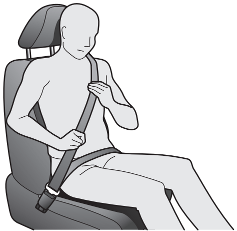


Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 79

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts P. 40

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Before Driving Checklist P. 39

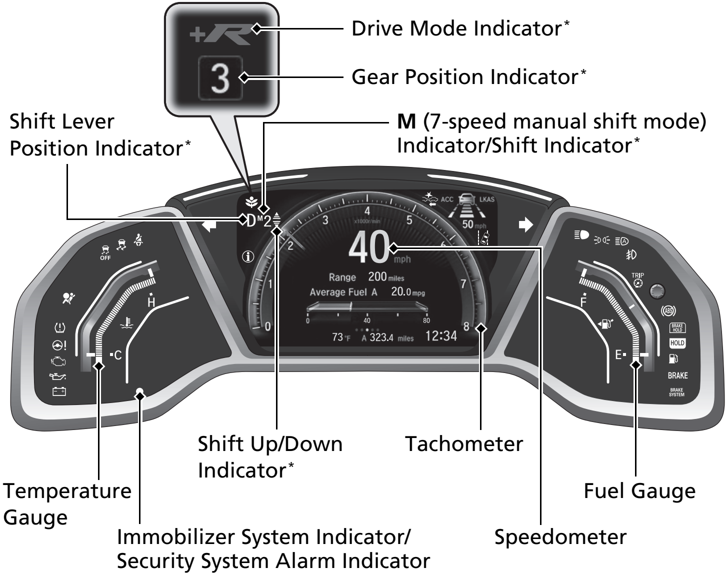
- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints*, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Instrument Panel ➡P. 81

Gauges ➡P. 122/Driver Information Interface ➡P. 124/System Indicators ➡P. 82

System Indicators

- Malfunction Indicator Lamp
- Low Oil Pressure Indicator
- Charging System Indicator
- Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
- Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System Indicator
- OFF Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) **OFF** Indicator
- ECON Mode Indicator*
- System Message Indicator
- Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator*
- ACC Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* Indicator (Amber/Green)
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator


Drive Mode Indicator*
Gear Position Indicator*
Shift Lever Position Indicator*
M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator*
+R
3
D
M
2
ACC
LKAS
50 mph
40 mph
x1000r/min
Range 200 miles
Average Fuel A 20.0 mpg
73°F A 323.4 miles 12:34
H
C
F
E
TRIP
BRAKE HOLD
HOLD
BRAKE
BRAKE SYSTEM
OFF
Shift Up/Down Indicator*
Tachometer
Temperature Gauge
Fuel Gauge
Immobilizer System Indicator/Security System Alarm Indicator
Speedometer

System Indicators

- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator
- LKAS Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber/Green)

Lights Indicators

- Lights On Indicator
- High Beam Indicator
- Fog Light Indicator*
- Auto High-Beam Indicator

System Indicators

- Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
- Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator
- Low Fuel Indicator
- Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
- Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
- BRAKE HOLD Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
- HOLD U.S. (A) Canada Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
- BRAKE U.S. (!) Canada Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
- BRAKE SYSTEM U.S. (!) Canada Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)

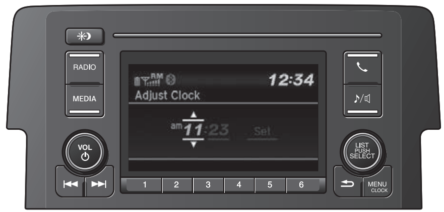
---

* Not available on all models

Controls (P. 143)

Clock (P. 144)

Models with color audio system


RADIO
MEDIA
VOL
Adjust Clock
12:34
am 11:23
Set
1
2
3
4
5
6
LIST PUSH SELECT
MENU CLOCK

❶ Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

❷ Rotate ⟲ to change hour, then press ⊙.

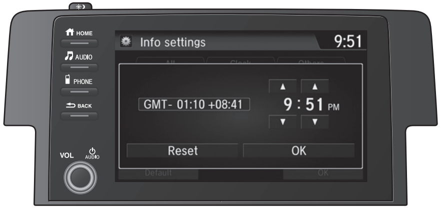
❸ Rotate ⟲ to change minute, then press ⊙.

❹ Select **Set**, then press ⊙.

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

- Rotate ⟲ to select.
- Press ⊙ to enter.

Models with Display Audio


HOME
AUDIO
PHONE
BACK
VOL
AUDIO
Info settings
9:51
GMT- 01:10 +08:41
9 : 51 PM
Reset
OK

❶ Press the ⌂ (Home) button, then select **Settings**.

❷ Select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.

❸ Touch the respective ▲ / ▼ icon to adjust the hours or minutes up or down.

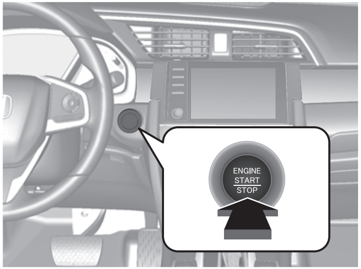
❹ Select **OK**.

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

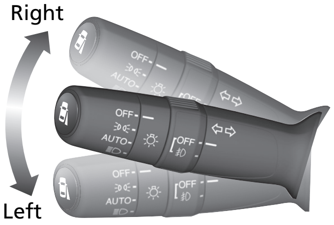
ENGINE START/STOP Button* (P. 172)

- Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.


ENGINE
START
STOP

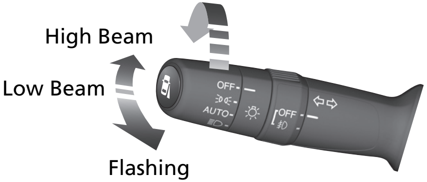
Turn Signals ➡P. 176

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights ➡P. 177

Light Control Switches

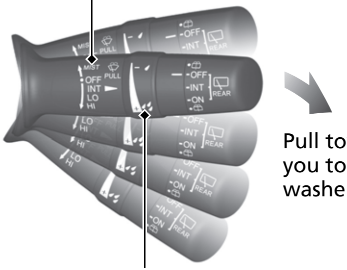


Wipers and Washers

➡P. 184

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

MIST
OFF
AUTO[*1]: Wiper speed varies automatically
INT[*2]: Low speed with intermittent
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe



Pull toward you to spray washer fluid.

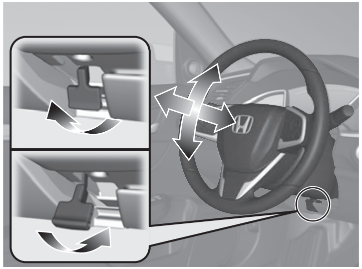
Adjustment Ring*
⊟: Low sensitivity[*1]
⊟: Lower speed, fewer sweeps[*2]
⊞: High sensitivity[*1]
⊞: Higher speed, more sweeps[*2]

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:
- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel ➡P. 189

- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever toward you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



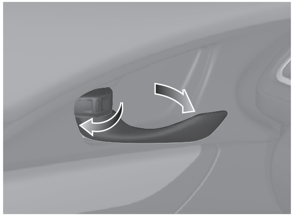
[*1] Models with automatic intermittent wipers
[*2] Models without automatic intermittent wipers

* Not available on all models

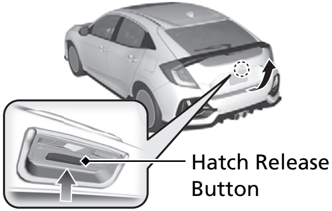
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

P. 157

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



Hatch P. 160


Hatch Release Button

Models without smart entry system

- With all the doors unlocked, press the hatch release button and lift open the hatch.

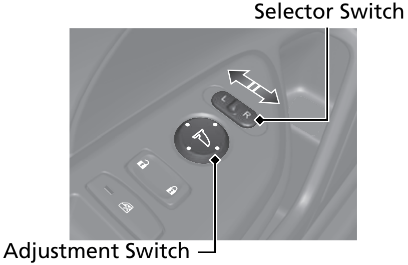
Models with smart entry system

- Press the hatch release button to unlock and open the hatch when you carry the smart entry remote.

Power Door Mirrors

P. 192

- With the ignition switch in ON II*1, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.

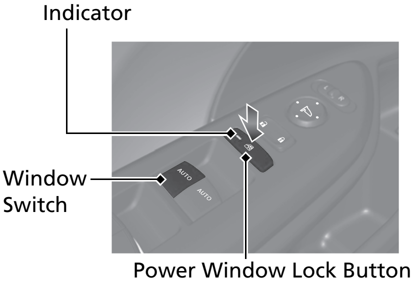

Selector Switch
L
R
Adjustment Switch

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Power Windows P. 167

- With the ignition switch in ON II*1, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator is on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.


Indicator
Window Switch
AUTO
AUTO
Power Window Lock Button

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

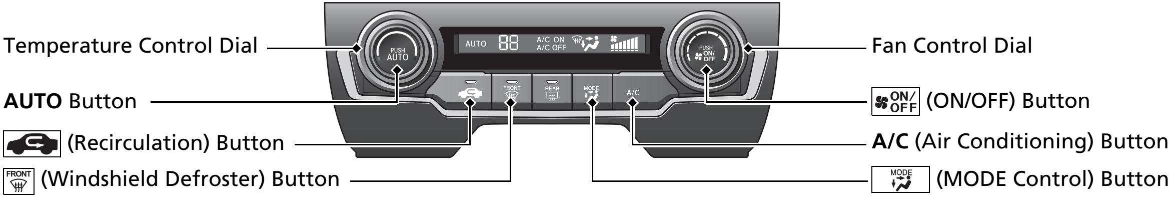
Climate Control System (P. 217)

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windshield.

Models with navigation system

The climate control system is voice operable. (P. 276)

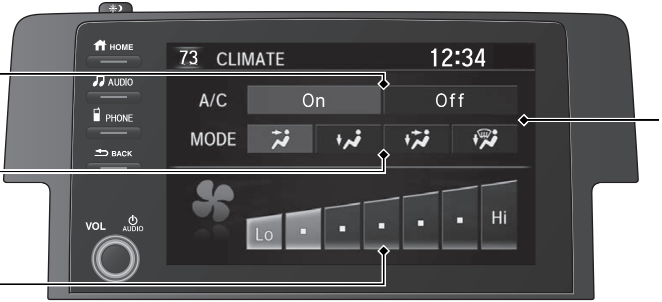
Models with color audio system


Temperature Control Dial
AUTO Button
(Recirculation) Button
FRONT (Windshield Defroster) Button
Fan Control Dial
ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button
A/C (Air Conditioning) Button
MODE (MODE Control) Button
AUTO
88
A/C ON
A/C OFF
PUSH AUTO
PUSH ON/OFF
FRONT
REAR
MODE
A/C

- Air flows from floor and windshield defroster vents.
- Air flows from floor vents.
- Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
- Air flows from dashboard vents.

Models with Display Audio

Models without SYNC button

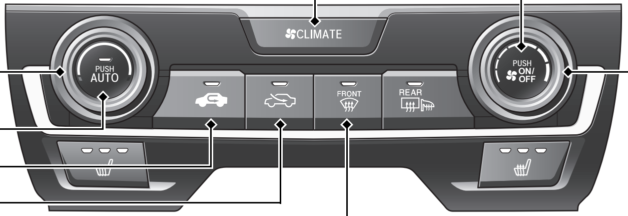

HOME
AUDIO
PHONE
BACK
VOL
AUDIO
73
CLIMATE
12:34
A/C
On
Off
MODE
Lo
Hi

A/C (Air Conditioning) Icon

MODE Control Icon

Fan Control Icon

Audio/Information Screen


CLIMATE
PUSH
AUTO
FRONT
REAR
PUSH
ON/
OFF

CLIMATE (CLIMATE) Button

ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button

Temperature Control Dial

Fan Control Dial

AUTO Button

(Recirculation) Button

(Fresh Air) Button

FRONT (Windshield Defroster) Button

Air flows from floor and windshield defroster vents.

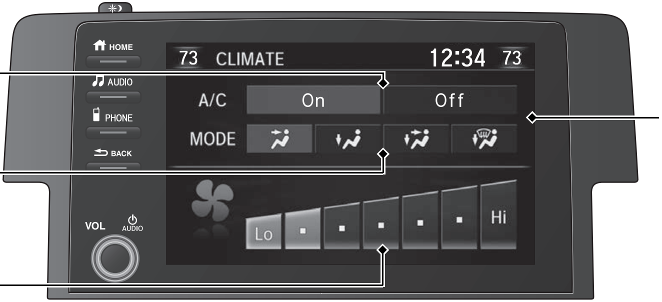
Air flows from floor vents.

Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.

Air flows from dashboard vents.

Models with Display Audio

Models with SYNC button

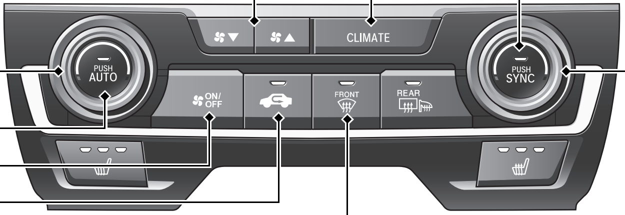

HOME
AUDIO
PHONE
BACK
VOL
AUDIO
73
CLIMATE
12:34
73
A/C
On
Off
MODE
Lo
Hi

A/C (Air Conditioning) Icon

MODE Control Icon

Fan Control Icon

Audio/Information Screen


CLIMATE
PUSH
AUTO
ON/
OFF
FRONT
REAR
PUSH
SYNC

CLIMATE Button

▼/▲ (Fan Control) Buttons

Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial

AUTO Button

ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button

(Recirculation) Button

FRONT (Windshield Defroster) Button

SYNC (Synchronization) Button

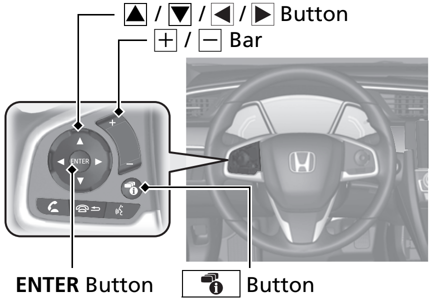
Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

- Air flows from floor and windshield defroster vents.
- Air flows from floor vents.
- Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
- Air flows from dashboard vents.

Features (P. 225)

Audio Remote Controls

(P. 230)



- + / − Bar
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- ▲ / ▼ Button
  Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:
  FM→AM→SiriusXM®*→USB→iPod→*Bluetooth*® Audio→Pandora®*→Apple CarPlay/Android Auto*→Audio Apps*

Models with Display Audio

- **ENTER** Button
  - When listening to the radio and SiriusXM®*

❶ Press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
❷ Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to a USB flash drive

❶ Press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
❷ Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
❸ Press **ENTER** to display a list of files in that folder.
❹ Press ▲ or ▼ to select a file, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to an iPod

❶ Press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
❷ Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.
❸ Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
❹ Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
▶ Press **ENTER** and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

- When listening to Pandora®*

❶ Press **ENTER** to display the station list.
❷ Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.

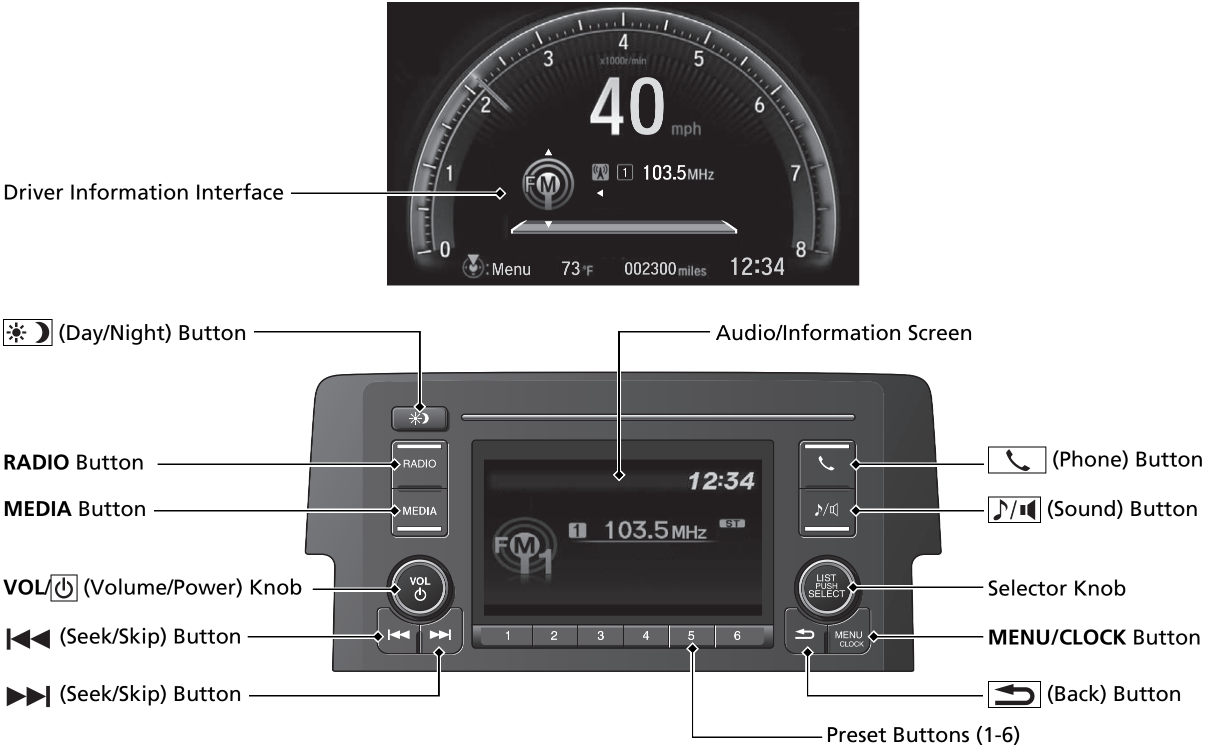
- When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio

❶ Press **ENTER** to display the track list.
❷ Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

- ◀ / ▶ Button
  Radio: Press to change the preset station.
  Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.
  USB device:
  Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  Press and hold to change a folder.
- ℹ Button
  Press to change contents.
  ➔ **Driver Information Interface**
  ➔ P. 124

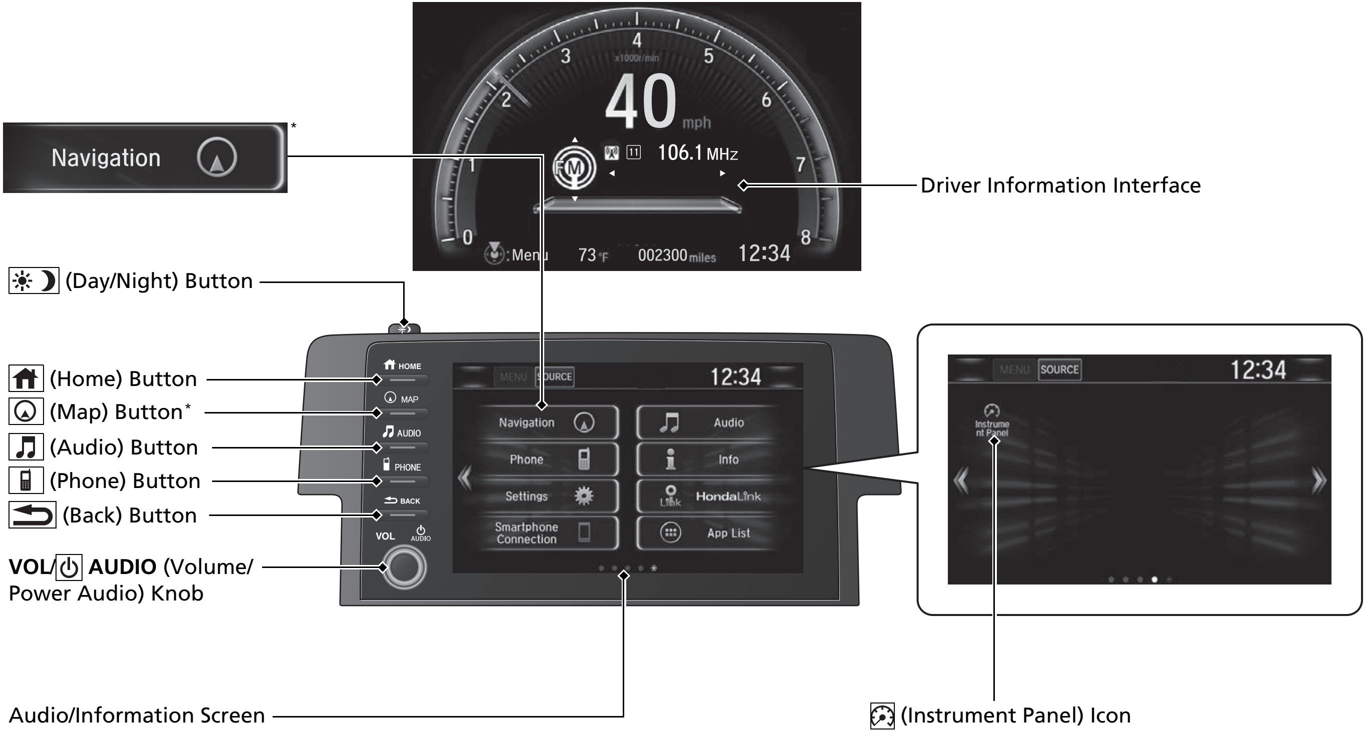
Audio System ➡P. 226

Models with color audio system ➡P. 233


Driver Information Interface
☀☽ (Day/Night) Button
Audio/Information Screen
RADIO Button
MEDIA Button
VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
⏮ (Seek/Skip) Button
⏭ (Seek/Skip) Button
☎ (Phone) Button
♪/🔈 (Sound) Button
Selector Knob
MENU/CLOCK Button
↩ (Back) Button
Preset Buttons (1-6)
RADIO
MEDIA
VOL
LIST PUSH SELECT
MENU CLOCK
1
2
3
4
5
6
12:34
103.5MHz
ST
FM1
40 mph
x1000r/min
Menu
73°F
002300 miles

Models with Display Audio ▶P. 251

For navigation system operation ▶ See the Navigation System Manual


Navigation*
Driver Information Interface
☀☽ (Day/Night) Button
(Home) Button
(Map) Button*
(Audio) Button
(Phone) Button
(Back) Button
VOL/⏻ AUDIO (Volume/ Power Audio) Knob
Audio/Information Screen
(Instrument Panel) Icon
HOME
MAP
AUDIO
PHONE
BACK
VOL
MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List
Instrument Panel
40 mph
106.1 MHz
FM
:Menu
73°F
002300 miles

Driving ➡P. 443

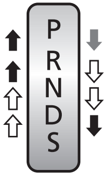
Manual Transmission* ➡P. 468

Continuously Variable Transmission* ➡P. 461

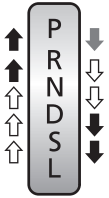
- Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Shifting

Models with paddle shifters



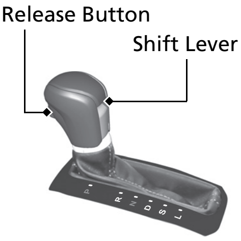
Models without paddle shifters



⬇ Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of P.

⬇⬆ Press the release button to move the shift lever.

⇩⇧ Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.



P **Park**
Turn off or start the engine.
Transmission is locked.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Normal driving.
On models with paddle shifters, 7-speed manual shift mode can be used temporarily.

S Models with paddle shifters
Drive (S)
7-speed manual shift mode can be used.

S Models without paddle shifters
Drive (S)
- Better acceleration.
- Increased engine braking.
- Going up or down hills.

L Models without paddle shifters
Low
- Further increased engine braking.
- Going up or down hills.

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode P. 465

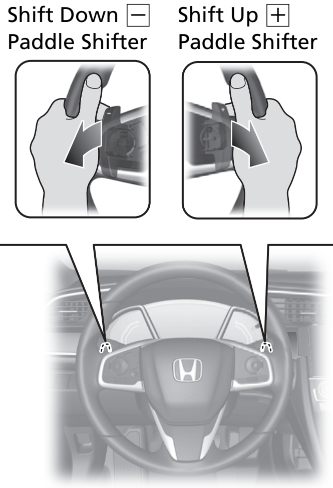
Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without releasing your hands from the steering wheel.

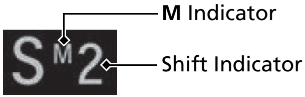
When the shift lever is in S

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

When the shift lever is in D

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.


Shift Down − Paddle Shifter
Shift Up + Paddle Shifter


S M 2
M Indicator
Shift Indicator

CMBS™ On and Off

P. 495

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS™ can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS™ is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS™ on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

VSA® On and Off P. 476

- The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA® function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* P. 482

- Detects a change in tire conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tire pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Refueling P. 562

Fuel recommendation: Models without 18 or 20 inch wheels

Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher required

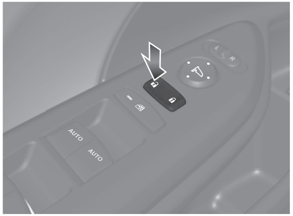
Models with 18 or 20 inch wheels

Unleaded premium gasoline, pump octane number 91 or higher recommended

Fuel tank capacity: 12.39 US gal (46.9 L)

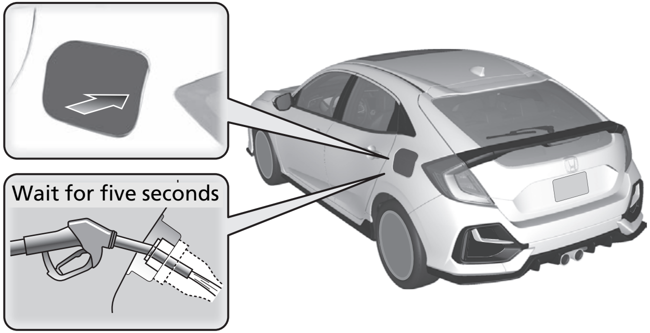
① Unlock the driver’s door.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside P. 156



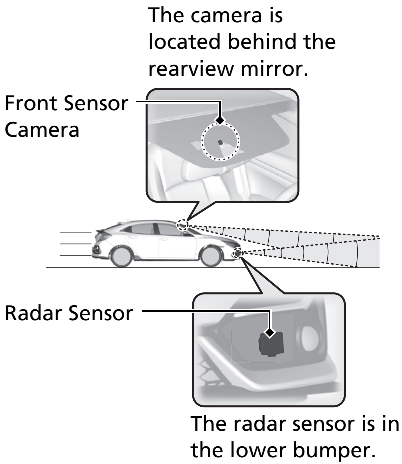
② Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.

③ After refueling, wait for about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.



Honda Sensing® P. 488

Honda Sensing® is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located in the lower bumper next to the fog light* and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windshield, behind the rearview mirror.


The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.
Front Sensor Camera
Radar Sensor
The radar sensor is in the lower bumper.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) P. 491

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* P. 501

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 518

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 533

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System P. 541

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

---

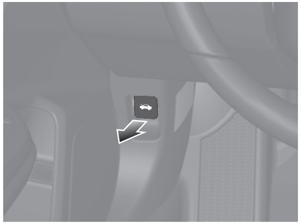
* Not available on all models

Maintenance P. 569

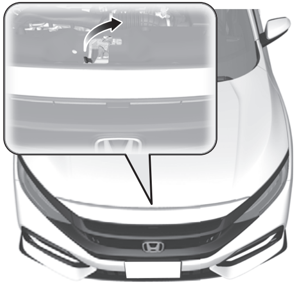
Under the Hood P. 579

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windshield washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake/clutch* fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

❶ Pull the hood release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



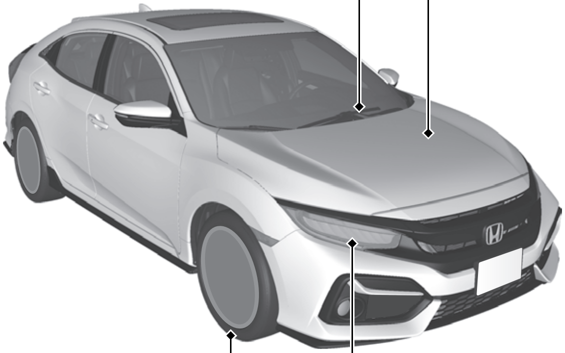
❷ Locate the hood latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.



❸ When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 604

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield.



Tires P. 609

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

2.0 L engine models

Handling Summer Only tires and Ultra High Performance (UHP) tires in low ambient temperatures.

➤ **Cold Weather Driving** P. 619

Lights P. 594

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected ➜P. 633

Flat Tire ➜P. 635

Models with temporary tire repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tire using the temporary tire repair kit.

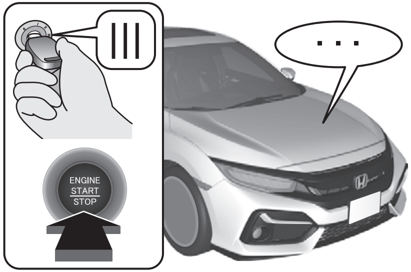
Models with a compact spare tire

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tire with the compact spare tire in the cargo area.

Engine Won’t Start

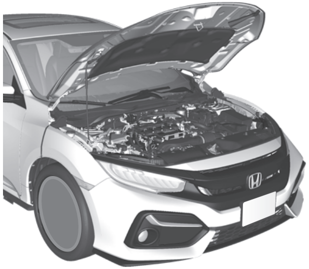
➜P. 659

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Overheating ➜P. 666

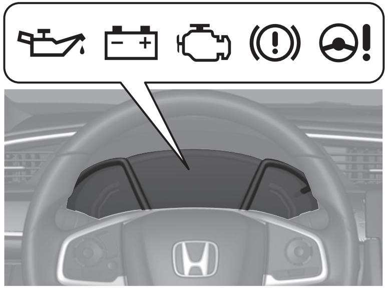
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the engine cool down.



Indicators Come On

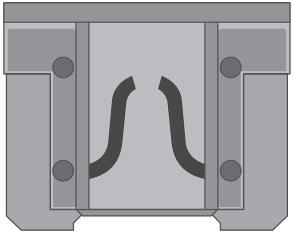
➜P. 668

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse ➜P. 674

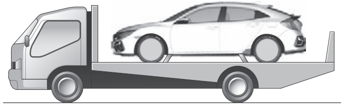
- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing

➜P. 679

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q

Models without smart entry system

The ignition switch does not turn from 0 to I. Why?

Models with smart entry system*1

The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?

A

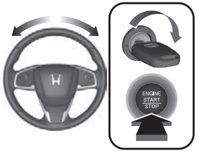
The steering wheel may be locked.

Models without smart entry system

- Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.

Models with smart entry system*1

- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Q

Models without smart entry system

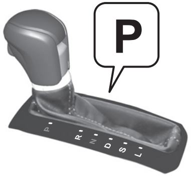
The ignition switch does not turn from I to 0 and I cannot remove the key. Why?

Models with smart entry system

The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?

A

The shift lever should be moved to P.



Q

Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

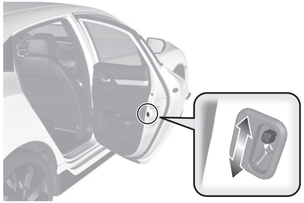
A

This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 556

---

*1:U.S. models with manual transmission and Canadian models

Q **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**	**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position. 
Q **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**	**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.
Q **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**	**A** The beeper sounds when: • The key is left in the ignition switch*. • The power mode* is in ACCESSORY. • The exterior lights are left on.
Q Models with smart entry system **Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?**	**A** The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes. **Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock®)** P. 150

* Not available on all models

Q	**Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**	A	The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
Q	**Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**	A	Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.
Q	**Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**	A	• Fasten the driver’s seat belt. • Check if the transmission is in [P]* or [N]. If so, select any other position.
Q	**Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**	A	The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
Q	**I’m seeing an amber indicator of a tire with an exclamation point. What is that?**	A	The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tire, you have to recalibrate the system. ➔ **Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*** ➔P. 482

Q	A
Models with 18 or 20 inch wheels **Unleaded gasoline with a Pump Octane Number (PON) of 91 or higher is recommended. Is it possible to use unleaded gasoline with a Pump Octane Number (PON) of 87 or lower on this vehicle?**	Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. Use of a gasoline with a pump octane less than 87 can lead to engine damage. The use of regular unleaded gasoline can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions 36
Your Vehicle's Safety Features............ 38
Safety Checklist 39

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts........................ 40
Fastening a Seat Belt.......................... 44
Seat Belt Inspection............................ 47

Airbags

Airbag System Components............... 48
Types of Airbags 51
Front Airbags (SRS) 51
Side Airbags 56
Side Curtain Airbags 58
Airbag System Indicators.................... 60
Airbag Care 63

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers 64
Safety of Infants and Small Children.......66
Safety of Larger Children 77

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas........................ 79

Safety Labels

Label Locations 80

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children ages 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

≫Important Safety Precautions

Some states, provinces and territories prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

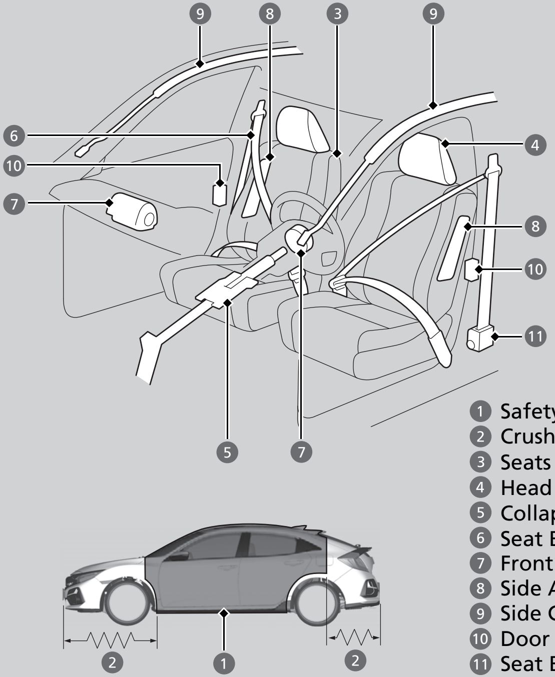
■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death.
Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



① Safety Cage
② Crush Zones
③ Seats and Seat-Backs
④ Head Restraints
⑤ Collapsible Steering Column
⑥ Seat Belts
⑦ Front Airbags
⑧ Side Airbags
⑨ Side Curtain Airbags
⑩ Door Locks
⑪ Seat Belt Tensioners

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

≫Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors and the hatch are closed and locked. Locking the doors and the hatch helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door or the hatch.
  - **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 156

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  - **Adjusting the Seats** P. 193

Except 2.0 L engine models

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  - **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 196

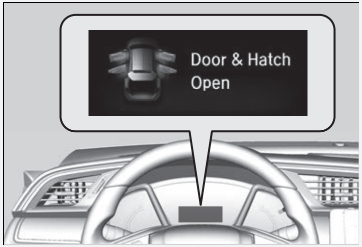
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  - **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 44

- Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child's age, height and weight.
  - **Child Safety** P. 64

Safety Checklist

If the door and hatch open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the hatch is not completely closed. Close all doors and the hatch tightly until the message disappears.

- **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 104



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All four or five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.
The front passenger's and rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

➔ **Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 72

≫About Your Seat Belts

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

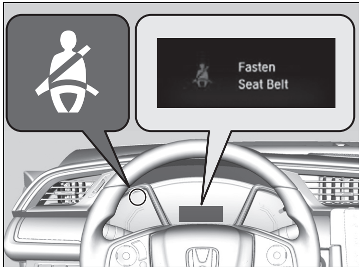
- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

≫About Your Seat Belts

If a passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

Continued

Seat Belt Reminder



The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts. If the ignition switch is turned to ON $\boxed{\text{II}}$*1 and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON $\boxed{\text{II}}$*1.
When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.
The indicator also may not come on and the beeper may not sound when the occupant is not heavy enough to trigger the weight sensor. Such occupants (e.g., infants and smaller children) should be moved to the rear seat as a deploying front airbag likely will injure or kill them.

Protecting Child Passengers P. 64

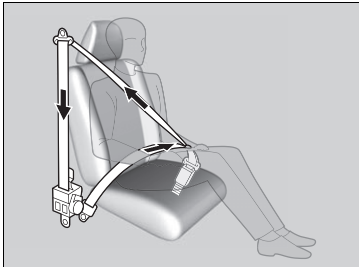
---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



》Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

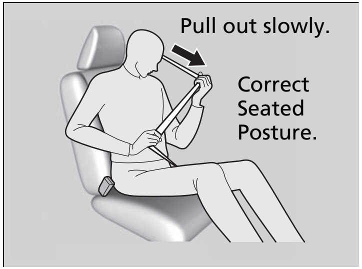
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once.
If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

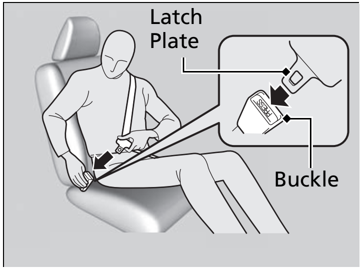
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

Adjusting the Seats P. 193


Pull out slowly.
Correct Seated Posture.

1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.
   ▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

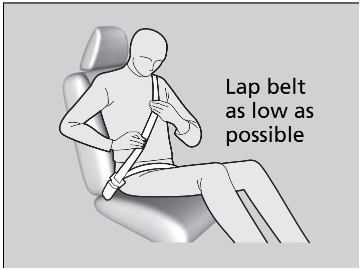
»Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten.
If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

About Your Seat Belts P. 40
Seat Belt Inspection P. 47

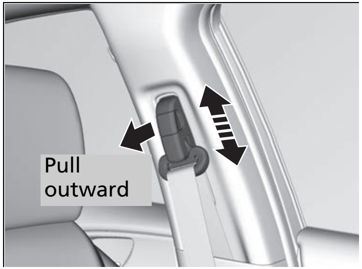
Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the shoulder anchor outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

Continued

»Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

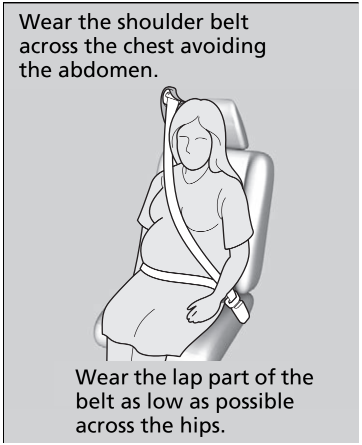
»Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.


Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.
Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

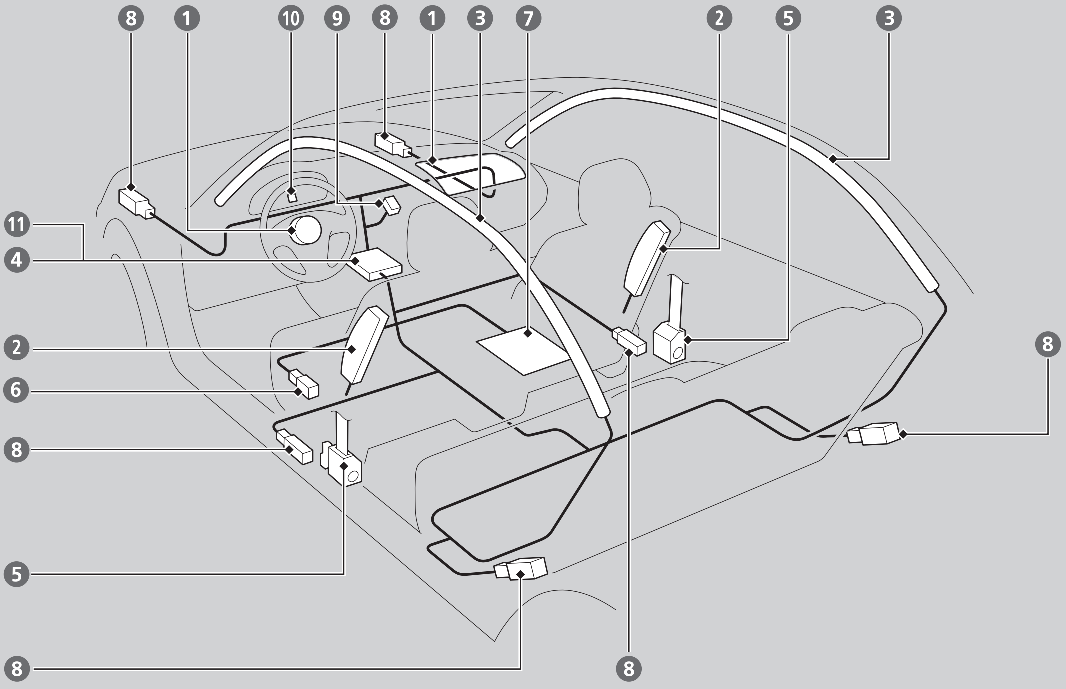
≫Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Airbag System Components


❽
❶
❿
❾
❽
❶
❸
❼
❷
❺
❸
⓫
❹
❷
❻
❽
❺
❽
❽
❽

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. Both side curtain airbags are deployed in a rollover. The airbag system includes:

❶ Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

❷ Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

❸ Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

❹ An electronic control unit that, when the ignition switch is in ON (II)[*1], continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, rollover sensor, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.

❺ Automatic front seat belt tensioners. In addition, the driver’s and front passenger’s seat belt buckles incorporate sensors that detect whether or not the belts are fastened.

❻ Driver’s seat position sensor. This sensor detects the driver’s seat slide position to help determine the optimal deployment of the driver’s airbag.

❼ Weight sensors in the front passenger’s seat. The sensors are used for occupant classification to activate or deactivate the front passenger’s airbag.

❽ Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

❾ An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger’s front airbag has been turned off.

❿ An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

⓫ A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbags.

[*1] 1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

»Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver’s and front passenger’s seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver’s and front passenger’s seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

»Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON II[*1].

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

»Front Airbags (SRS)

During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

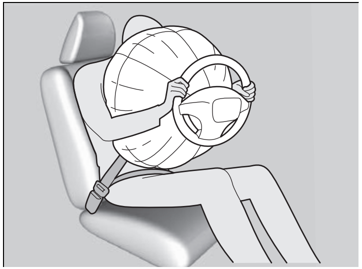
Continued

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move toward the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move toward the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: In a rollover, your best form of protection is a seat belt or, if your vehicle is equipped with a rollover sensor, both a seat belt and a side curtain airbag. Front airbags, however, are not designed to deploy in a rollover as they would provide little if any protection.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

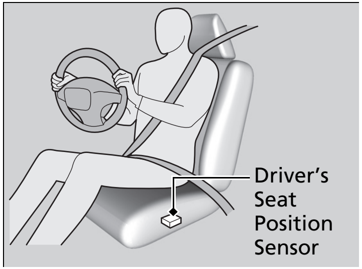
■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Continued

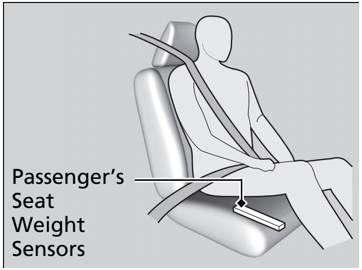
Advanced Airbags

The airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.



The driver's advanced airbag system includes a seat position sensor.

Based on information from this sensor and the severity of the impact, the advanced airbag system determines the optimal deployment of the driver's airbag.



The front passenger's advanced airbag system has weight sensors. The sensors are used for occupant classification to activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag.

For adult size occupants, the system will automatically activate the front passenger's airbag. If a small adult sits in the front passenger seat and the system does not recognize him/her as an adult, see

➲ **Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator** P. 61

»Advanced Airbags

If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor or the passenger's seat weight sensors, the SRS indicator will come on, and in the event of a crash, the airbag will deploy (regardless of the driver's seating position or passenger's occupant classification) with a force corresponding to the severity of the impact.

➲ **Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator** P. 60

For the advanced front airbags to work properly, confirm that:

- The occupant is sitting in an upright position, wearing the seat belt properly and the seat back is not excessively reclined.
- The occupant is not leaning against the door or center console.
- The occupant's feet are placed on the floor in front of them.
- There are no objects hanging from the front passenger's seat.
- Only small, lightweight objects are in the seat back pocket.
- The steering wheel and passenger's side dashboard are not obstructed by any object.
- No liquid has been spilled on or under the seat.
- There is no child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat or seat back.
- There is no rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.

We advise against allowing a child age 12 or under to ride in the front passenger's seat. However, if you do allow a small child or infant to ride in the front passenger's seat, the system is designed to automatically deactivate the front passenger's airbag. Do not let a small child or infant ride in the front passenger's seat if the airbag does not automatically deactivate.

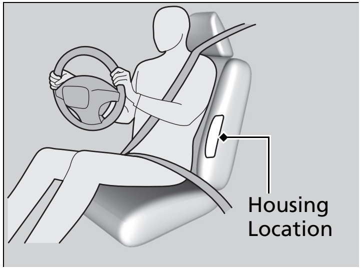
»Advanced Airbags

- There are no objects placed under or beside the front passenger's seat. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The head restraint is not contacting the roof.
  - **Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator** P. 61
- The floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is set in the correct position evenly on the floor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
  - **Floor Mats** P. 626

Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

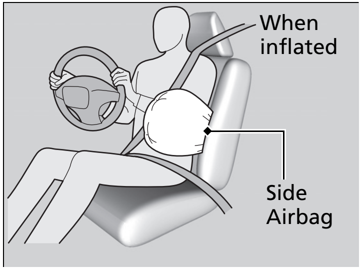
Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

»Side Airbags

Make sure you and your front seat passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of a side airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle’s framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

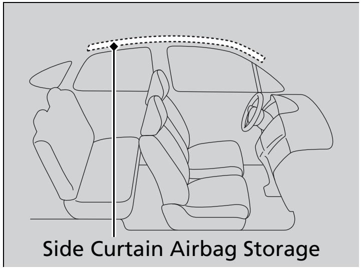
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was toward the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle’s crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in the outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact. The side curtain airbags equipped in this vehicle are also designed to help reduce the likelihood of partial and complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in crashes, particularly rollover crashes.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

》Side Curtain Airbags

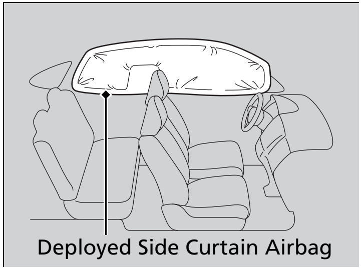
To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts properly and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

If the impact is on the passenger’s side, the passenger’s side curtain airbag deploys even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

If the SRS control unit senses that your vehicle is about to rollover, it immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates both front seat belt tensioners.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a rollover or a moderate-to-severe side impact.

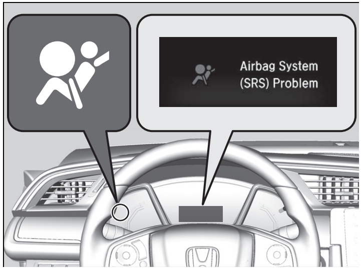
When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON II[*1]

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

⧉Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠WARNING

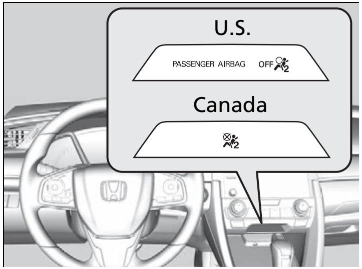
Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator



When the passenger front airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the front passenger's airbag has been turned off.

This occurs if the seat is empty or when the weight sensors determine that a small child or infant is on the passenger seat.

Children age 12 or under should always ride properly restrained in a back seat.

Child Safety P. 64

If the indicator is on in the event of a crash, the front passenger's airbag will not deploy.

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator

To ensure the passenger is detected properly, confirm that:

- The occupant is sitting in an upright position, wearing the seat belt properly and the seat back is not excessively reclined.
- The occupant is not leaning against the door or center console.
- The occupant's feet are placed on the floor in front of them.
- There are no objects hanging from the front passenger's seat.
- Only small, lightweight objects are in the seat back pocket.
- No liquid has been spilled on or under the seat.
- There is no child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat or seat back.
- There is no rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- There are no objects placed under or beside the front passenger's seat. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is set in the correct position evenly on the floor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The head restraint is not contacting the roof.

Continued

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and go off periodically if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold. For a small adult, depending on physique and posture, the system may not recognize him/her as an adult and thus deactivate the front passenger's airbag.
If this occurs, please confirm that the conditions set forth in the above bullet points on the previous page are met.
If the above conditions are met and the indicator is still on, then with the transmission in park, turn the ignition off and back on.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if:

- All of the above conditions are met, and the indicator comes on with an adult seated in the front passenger seat.
- The seat is empty and the indicator is off.

Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the indicator is on.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

■ Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting a dealer

This would likely disable or affect the proper operation of the driver's seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger's seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact a Honda dealer, or for U.S. vehicles, American Honda Automobile Customer Service at 1-800-999-1009 and for Canadian vehicles, Honda Canada Customer Relations at 1-888-9-HONDA-9.

≫Airbag Care

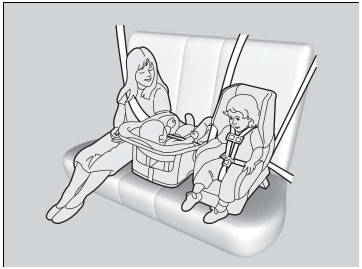
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

» Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the seat belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

▶▶Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

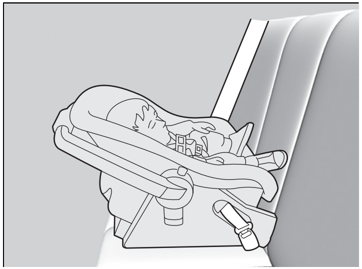
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

➔ **Safety Labels** P. 80

Safety of Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat until the infant reaches the seat manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child seat

Child seats must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position. Make sure that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front of it.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

➔ **Airbags** P. 48

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

>Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

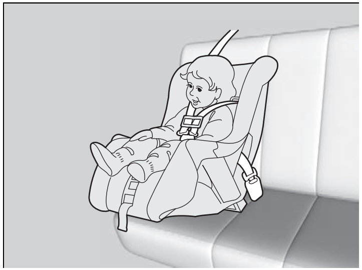
Experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child for so long as the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

Always refer to the child seat manufacturer's instructions before installation.
Infants never should be seated in a forward-facing position.

Do not allow a front seat to rest against a child seat installed in a rear seating position:
The weight sensor in the front seat may not correctly detect the actual weight of the occupant.

Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rearward-facing child seat, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward-facing child seat until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the forward-facing child seat.



Forward-facing child seat placement

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Continued

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children). Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:

- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

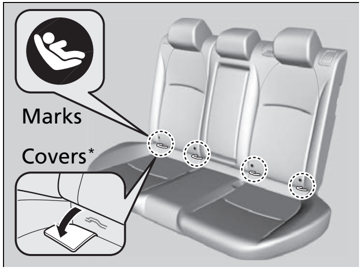
≫Selecting a Child Seat

Installation of a LATCH-compatible child seat is simple.

LATCH-compatible child seats have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

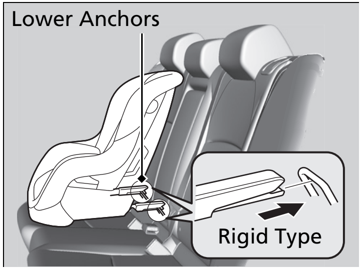
A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



1. Locate the anchor marks affixed to the base of the seat cushion.

   Models with anchor covers

   Pull out the anchor covers under the marks to expose the lower anchors.



2. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.
   - ▶ When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

»Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

⚠WARNING

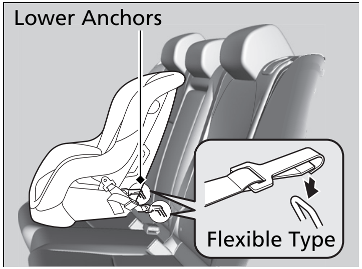
Never attach two child seats to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

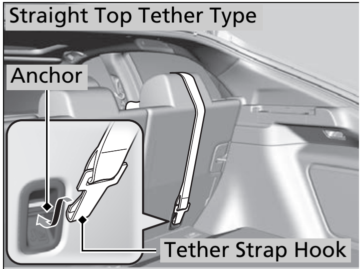
For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the child seat is properly secured to the vehicle. A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

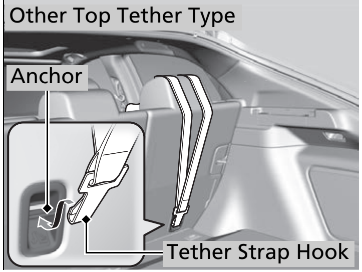
---

* Not available on all models

Continued







3. Retract the cargo area cover.
   ➲ **Cargo Area Cover*** P. 213
4. Route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint and secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.
6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

≫Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

Except 2.0 L engine models

⚠WARNING

Using the outer rear seats' inner anchors to secure a LATCH-compatible child seat in the center seating position may result in failure of the child seat, causing injury or death.

Only use the outer rear seats' inner anchors to install a child seat in the center seating position if the manufacturer's instructions expressly permit.

Except 2.0 L engine models

Installing a LATCH-compatible child seat in the rear center seat

Each outer rear seat is equipped with a pair of lower anchors which are used to secure a LATCH-compatible child seat. The rear center seat, however, is not equipped with anchors of any kind.

The inner and outer anchors are spaced apart at a standard distance of 11 inches (280 mm). The distance between the two inner anchors is 15 inches (380 mm).

LATCH-compatible restraint systems that are fitted with rigid-type attachments cannot be installed in the rear center seat. However, a system fitted with flexible-type attachments can be installed in the center seat, provided that the manufacturer's instructions for that system permit the use of the inner anchors with the stated spacing.

---

* Not available on all models

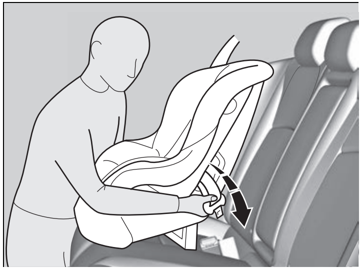
≫Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

Before seating a child, make sure that the system is properly attached to both the lower anchors and tether anchors.

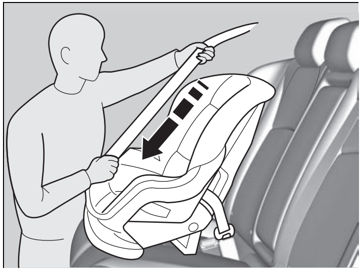
Continued

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat can be installed with a lap/shoulder belt in any rear seat or, if absolutely necessary, the front passenger seat.



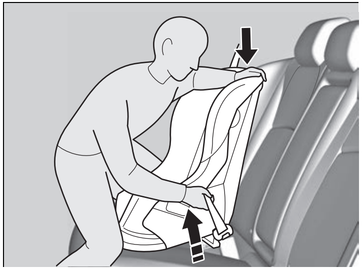
1. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



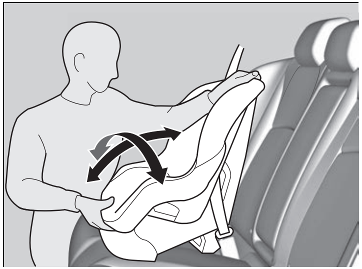
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt retract a few inches and check that the retractor has switched modes by pulling on the webbing. It should not pull out again until it is reset by removing the latch plate from the buckle.
   ▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 4.

»Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
   - ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.



6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; less than one inch of movement should occur near the seat belt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

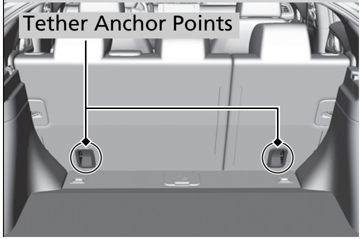
Continued

»Installing a Child Seat with a Seat Belt

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

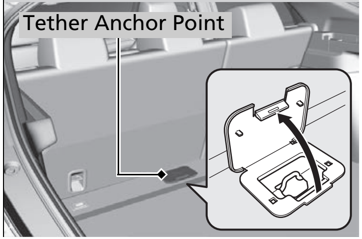
Adding Security with a Tether

Outer Position



Except 2.0 L engine models

Center Position

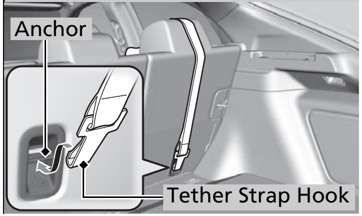


A tether anchor point is provided behind each rear seating position.
If you have a child seat that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

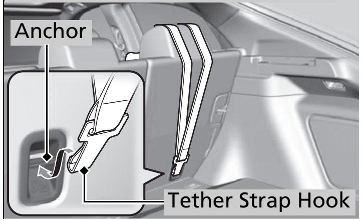
≫Adding Security with a Tether

Always use a tether for forward-facing child seats whether using the seat belt or lower anchors.

Straight Top Tether Type in Outer Position



Other Top Tether Type in Outer Position



■Using an outer anchor

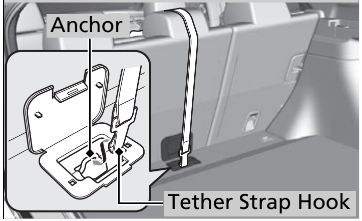
1. Retract the cargo area cover.

   ➔ **Cargo Area Cover*** P. 213
2. Locate the appropriate tether anchor point.
3. Route the tether strap over the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

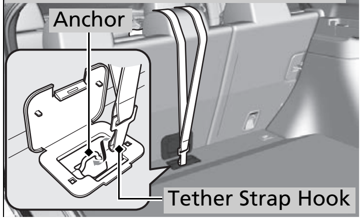
* Not available on all models

Continued

Straight Top Tether Type in Center Position



Other Top Tether Type in Center Position



Except 2.0 L engine models

■ Using the center anchor

1. Retract the cargo area cover.

   ⮚ **Cargo Area Cover*** P. 213
2. Locate the appropriate tether anchor point and lift the cover.
3. Route the tether strap over the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

* Not available on all models

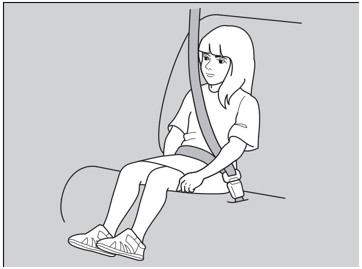
Safety of Larger Children

Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Continued

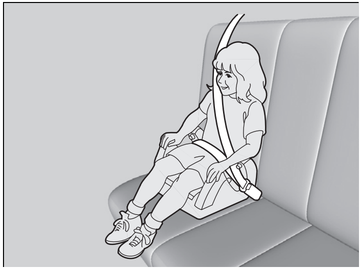
Safety of Larger Children

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child’s safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer’s recommendations.

Protecting Larger Children-Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

≫Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states, and Canadian provinces and territories require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g. 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state or province, or territory where you intend to drive.

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the hatch open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the hatch open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

≫Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

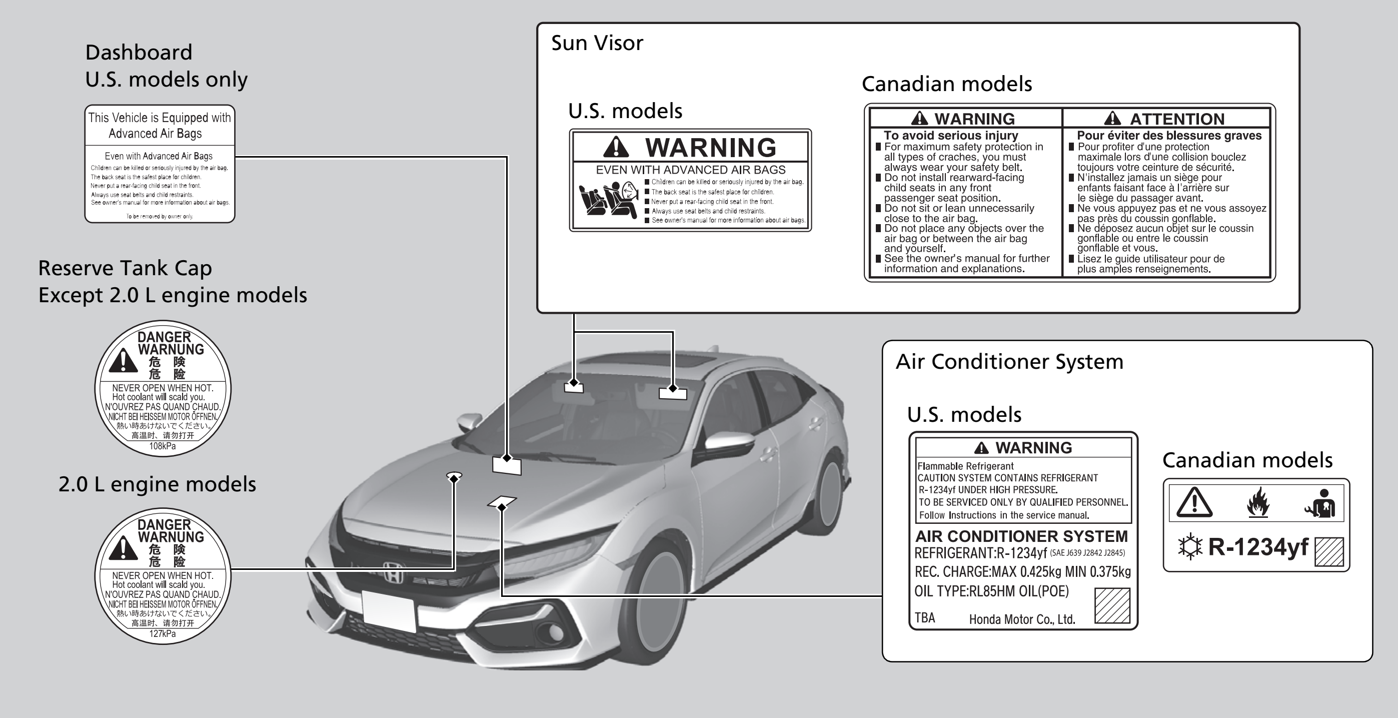
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.



Dashboard
U.S. models only

This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags

Even with Advanced Air Bags
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.
The back seat is the safest place for children.
Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.
Always use seat belts and child restraints.
See owner's manual for more information about air bags.

To be removed by owner only.

Reserve Tank Cap
Except 2.0 L engine models

DANGER
WARNUNG
危　険
危　险
NEVER OPEN WHEN HOT.
Hot coolant will scald you.
N'OUVREZ PAS QUAND CHAUD.
NICHT BEI HEISSEM MOTOR ÖFFNEN.
熱い時あけないでください。
高温时、请勿打开
108kPa

2.0 L engine models

DANGER
WARNUNG
危　険
危　险
NEVER OPEN WHEN HOT.
Hot coolant will scald you.
N'OUVREZ PAS QUAND CHAUD.
NICHT BEI HEISSEM MOTOR ÖFFNEN.
熱い時あけないでください。
高温时、请勿打开
127kPa

Sun Visor

U.S. models

WARNING

EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS
- Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.
- The back seat is the safest place for children.
- Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.
- Always use seat belts and child restraints.
- See owner's manual for more information about air bags.

Canadian models

WARNING

To avoid serious injury
- For maximum safety protection in all types of craches, you must always wear your safety belt.
- Do not install rearward-facing child seats in any front passenger seat position.
- Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag.
- Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.
- See the owner's manual for further information and explanations.

ATTENTION

Pour éviter des blessures graves
- Pour profiter d'une protection maximale lors d'une collision bouclez toujours votre ceinture de sécurité.
- N'installez jamais un siège pour enfants faisant face à l'arrière sur le siège du passager avant.
- Ne vous appuyez pas et ne vous assoyez pas près du coussin gonflable.
- Ne déposez aucun objet sur le coussin gonflable ou entre le coussin gonflable et vous.
- Lisez le guide utilisateur pour de plus amples renseignements.

Air Conditioner System

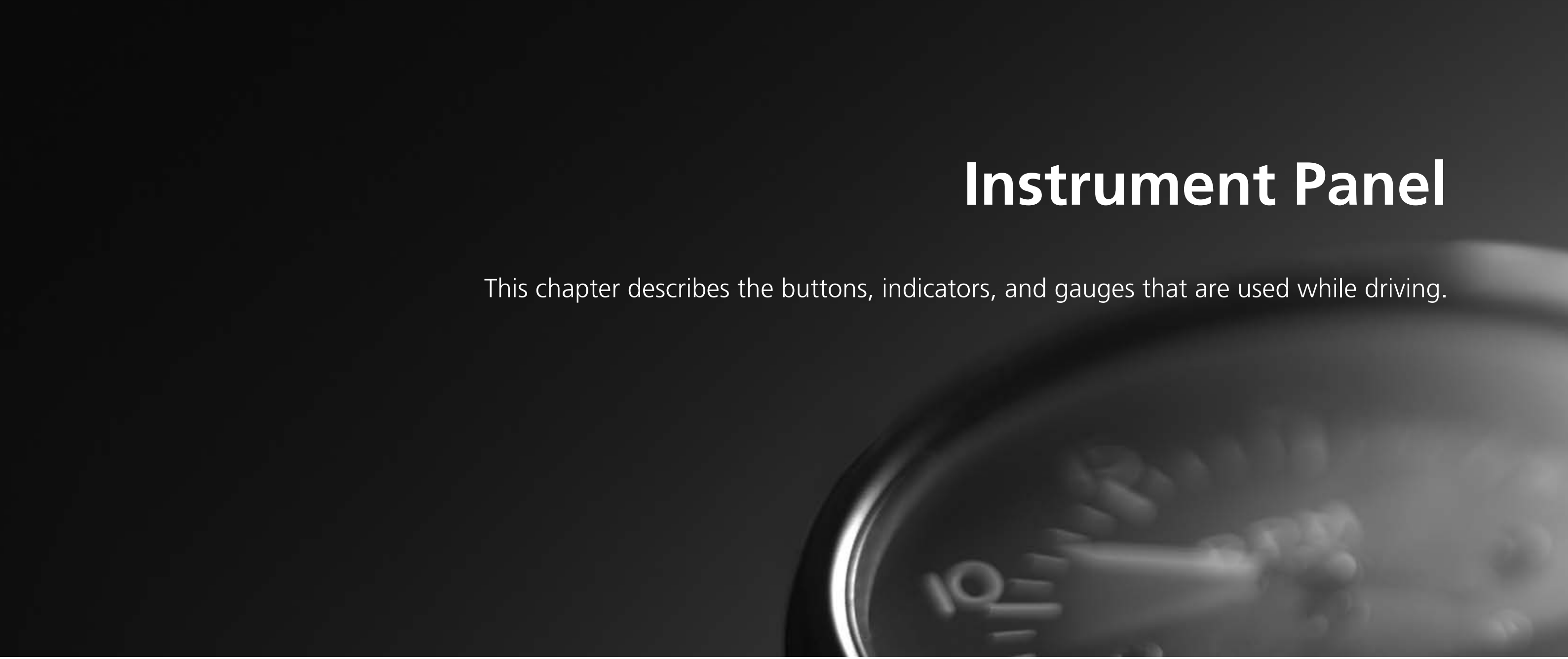
U.S. models

WARNING
Flammable Refrigerant
CAUTION SYSTEM CONTAINS REFRIGERANT R-1234yf UNDER HIGH PRESSURE.
TO BE SERVICED ONLY BY QUALIFIED PERSONNEL.
Follow Instructions in the service manual.

AIR CONDITIONER SYSTEM
REFRIGERANT:R-1234yf (SAE J639 J2842 J2845)
REC. CHARGE:MAX 0.425kg MIN 0.375kg
OIL TYPE:RL85HM OIL(POE)
TBA Honda Motor Co., Ltd.

Canadian models

R-1234yf



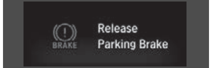
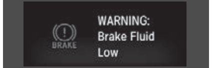
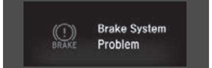
Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

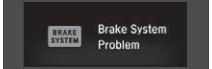
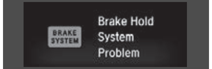
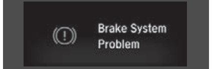
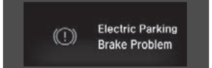
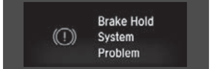
Indicators 82
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages.................... 104

Gauges and Driver Information Interface

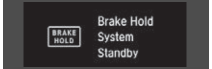
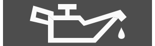
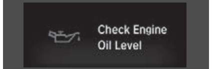
Gauges... 122
Driver Information Interface............. 124

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
U.S. BRAKE Canada (!) (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. • Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. • Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. • Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. • Comes on for about 15 seconds when you pull the electric parking brake switch while the ignition switch is in LOCK 0*1. • Stays on for about 15 seconds when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 while the electric parking brake is set.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on** P. 670 • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 670 • **Blinks and the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 671	 Release Parking Brake  WARNING: Brake Fluid Low  Brake System Problem

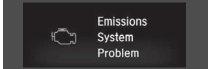
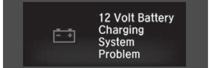
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
U.S. BRAKE SYSTEM Canada (!) (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. • Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Comes on while driving** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	U.S.  Brake System Problem Electric Parking Brake Problem  Brake Hold System Problem Canada  Brake System Problem  Electric Parking Brake Problem  Brake Hold System Problem
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor. • Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 447 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—

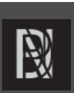
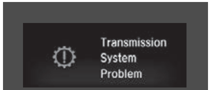
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
BRAKE HOLD	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	➲ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 553	 BRAKE HOLD Brake Hold System Standby
U.S. HOLD Canada (A)	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	➲ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 553	—
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Immediately stop in a safe place. ➲ **If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On** P. 668	 Check Engine Oil Level

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	**1.5 L engine models** • Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II *1, and goes off when the engine starts, or after several seconds if the engine did not start. If "readiness codes" have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off. **2.0 L engine models** • Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. If "readiness codes" have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	• Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems. ➡ **Testing of Readiness Codes** P. 689 • **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Blinks while driving** - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer. ➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 669	 Emissions System Problem
	Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II *1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on when the battery is not charging.	• **Comes on while driving** - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption. ➡ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 668	 12 Volt Battery Charging System Problem

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

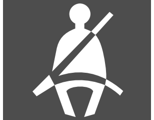
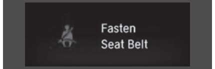
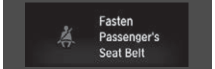
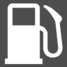
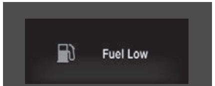
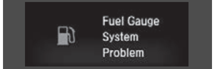
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
D	Shift Lever Position Indicator*	• Indicates the current shift lever position.	➲ **Shifting** P. 461	—
M 2	**M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/ Shift Indicator*	• Comes on when 7-speed manual shift mode is applied.	➲ **7-Speed Manual Shift Mode** P. 465	—
	Transmission System Indicator*	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• **Blinks while driving** - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	 Transmission System Problem
▲	Shift Up Indicator*	• Comes on when shifting up is recommended.	➲ **Shift Up/Down Indicators** P. 467, 470	—
▼	Shift Down Indicator*	• Comes on when shifting down is recommended.	➲ **Shift Up/Down Indicators** P. 467, 470	—

* Not available on all models

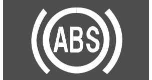
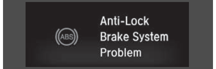
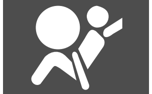
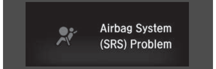
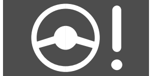
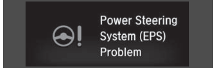
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
6	Gear Position Indicator*	• Indicates 1st to 6th gear position.	• If you shift gears very slowly, a different gear position may be displayed for a moment. ➔ **Shifting** P. 468 • The display can be turned ON/OFF in customized features in driver information interface or audio/information screen. ➔ **Customized Features** P. 134, 350 • Under the following conditions, gear positions and frame borders are not displayed. - The select lever is in R position. - The display of gear position indicator is turned OFF in customized features. • Under the following conditions, gear positions are not displayed. - The vehicle is stopped (approximately less than 2 mph or 3 km/h) - The select lever is in N position.	—

* Not available on all models

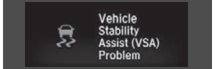
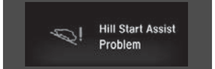
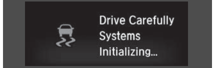
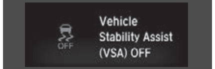
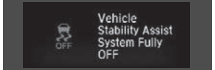
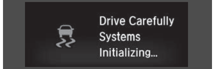
Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON $\boxed{\text{II}}$*1. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Blinks while driving if either you and/or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you and/or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 42	 Fasten Seat Belt  Fasten Passenger's Seat Belt
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 1.8 U.S. gal/7.0 Liter left). • Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• **Comes on** - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. • **Blinks** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 Fuel Low  Fuel Gauge System Problem

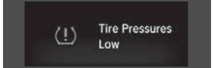
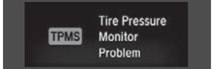
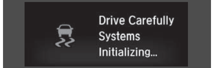
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 556	 Anti-Lock Brake System Problem
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental restraint system - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 Airbag System (SRS) Problem
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts. • Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	• **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 672	 Power Steering System (EPS) Problem

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Blinks when VSA® is active. • Comes on if there is a problem with the brake assist system, VSA® system or hill start assist system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System** P. 475	 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) Problem  Hill Start Assist Problem
		• Comes on if the VSA® system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing...
OFF	Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on when you partially disable VSA®.	➔ **VSA® On and Off** P. 476	 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF
		2.0 L engine models • Comes on when you press and hold the (VSA OFF) button while **+R** mode is selected.	➔ **When the drive mode is in +R mode** P. 477	 Vehicle Stability Assist System Fully OFF
		• Comes on if the VSA® system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing...

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
U.S. models	Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1. • May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1 and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tires' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tires are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated. ➔ **TPMS Calibration** P. 483	 Tire Pressures Low
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a spare tire* is temporarily installed.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a spare tire*, get your regular tire repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.	 TPMS Tire Pressure Monitor Problem
		• Comes on if the TPMS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing...

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

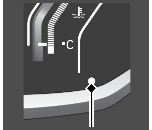
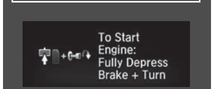
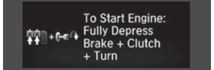
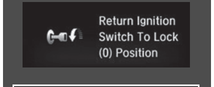
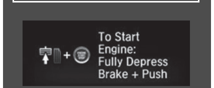
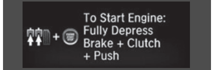
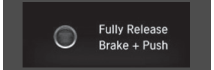
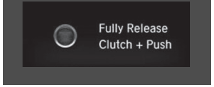
Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
ⓘ	System Message Indicator	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• While the indicator is on, press the ⓘ (display/information) button to see the message again. • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. • The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the ⓘ button is pressed.	—
⇦ ⇨	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➔ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 598, 602	—
≣◗	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—	—
☼	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the light switch in a position other than **OFF** or when the switch is set to **AUTO** and the exterior lights come on.	• If you remove the key from the ignition switch[*1] while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.	—

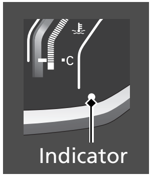
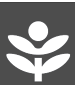
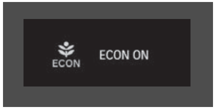
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the fog lights are on.	➔ **Fog Lights*** P. 180	—
A	Auto High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the Auto high-beam are met.	➔ **Auto High-Beam** P. 181	—
+R SPORT COMFORT	Drive Mode Indicator*	• Comes on when each drive mode is selected by drive mode switch.	➔ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 473	

---

* Not available on all models

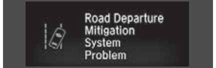
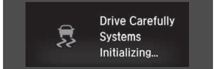
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message[2]
	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK $\boxed{0}$[1], pull the key out[2], and then insert the key and turn it to ON $\boxed{II}$[1] again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.	Models without smart entry system To Start Engine: Fully Depress Brake + Turn To Start Engine: Fully Depress Brake + Clutch + Turn Return Ignition Switch To Lock (0) Position Models with smart entry system To Start Engine: Fully Depress Brake + Push To Start Engine: Fully Depress Brake + Clutch + Push Fully Release Brake + Push Fully Release Clutch + Push

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the ignition on.

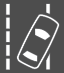
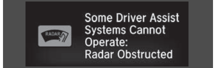
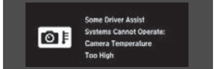
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	⮕ **Security System Alarm** P. 164	—
	ECON Mode Indicator*	• Comes on when ECON mode is on.	⮕ **ECON Mode*** P. 472	 ECON ON

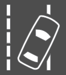
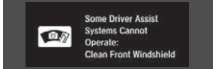
---

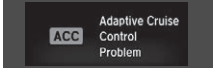
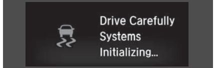
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator	- Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON $\boxed{\text{II}}$*1, then goes off. - Comes on if there is a problem with the RDM system.	- **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 Road Departure Mitigation System Problem
		- Comes on if the RDM is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	- Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing...

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

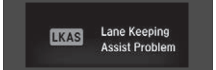
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator	• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.	• Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel. • The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you have cleaned the sensor cover. ➔ **Radar Sensor** P. 548	 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed
			• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546	 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator	• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546 • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.	 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 447 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow* Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow*.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 ACC Adaptive Cruise Control Problem
		• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow* is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing...
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. • ACC with Low Speed Follow* has been automatically canceled.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ⮕ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 447 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—

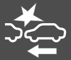
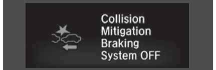
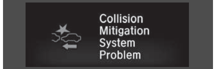
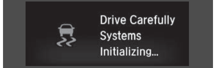
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

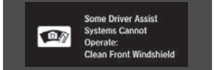
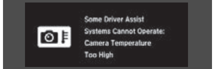
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow* Indicator (Green)	• Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518	—
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 LKAS Lane Keeping Assist Problem
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Green)	• Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button.	➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 533	—

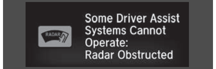
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator	- Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. - Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS™. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds. - Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS™.	- **Stays on constantly without the CMBS™ off** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 491	 Collision Mitigation Braking System OFF  Collision Mitigation System Problem
		- Comes on if the CMBS™ is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	- Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	 Drive Carefully Systems Initializing...

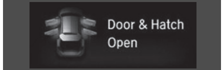
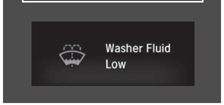
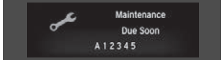
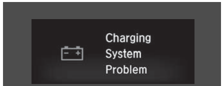
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

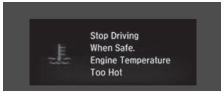
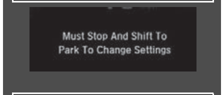
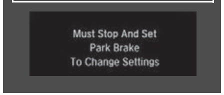
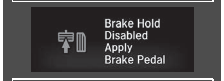
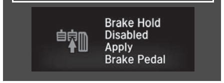
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator	• Comes on when the CMBS™ shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546 • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the camera.	 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield
			• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546	 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explaining	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator	• Comes on when the CMBS™ system shuts itself off.	• Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel. • The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you have cleaned the sensor cover. ➔ **Radar Sensor** P. 548	 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➔ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 447 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—

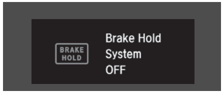
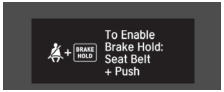
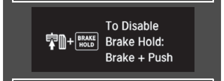
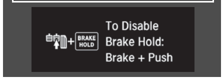
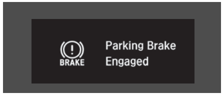
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

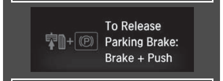
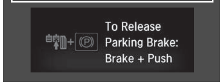
The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the ℹ (display/information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

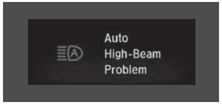
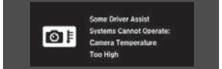
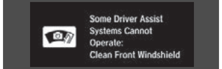
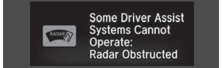
Message	Condition	Explanation
 Door & Hatch Open	• Appears if any door or the hatch is not completely closed. • Appears if any door or the hatch is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.	• Disappears when all doors and the hatch are closed.
Canadian models  Washer Fluid Low	• Appears when the washer fluid is low.	• Refill the washer fluid. ➡ **Refilling Window Washer Fluid** P. 593
 Maintenance Due Soon A12345	• Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. • Consequently, **Maintenance Due Now** and **Maintenance Past Due** follow.	➡ **Maintenance Minder Messages on the Driver Information Interface** P. 575
 Charging System Problem	• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Checking the Battery** P. 620

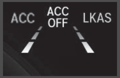
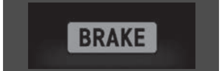
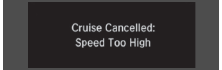
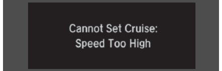
Message	Condition	Explanation
 Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot	- Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.	➲ **Overheating** P. 666
Continuously variable transmission models  Must Stop And Shift To Park To Change Settings Manual transmission models  Must Stop And Set Park Brake To Change Settings	Continuously variable transmission models - Appears while you are customizing the settings and the shift lever is moved out of (P). Manual transmission models - Appears while you are customizing the settings and the parking brake is released.	➲ **Customized Features** P. 134
Continuously variable transmission models  Brake Hold Disabled Apply Brake Pedal Manual transmission models  Brake Hold Disabled Apply Brake Pedal	- Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically canceled while it is in operation.	- Immediately depress the brake pedal.

Continued

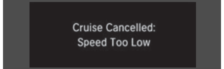
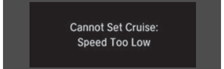
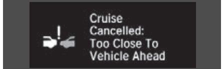
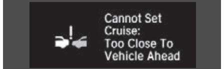
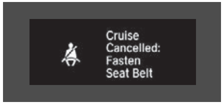
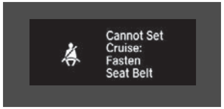
Message	Condition	Explanation
 Brake Hold System OFF	- Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 553
 To Enable Brake Hold: Seat Belt + Push	- Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.	- Fasten the driver's seat belt. ➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 553
Continuously variable transmission models  To Disable Brake Hold: Brake + Push Manual transmission models  To Disable Brake Hold: Brake + Push	- Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.	- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. ➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 553
 Parking Brake Engaged	- Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 553 ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 549

Message	Condition	Explanation
Continuously variable transmission models  To Release Parking Brake: Brake + Push Manual transmission models  To Release Parking Brake: Brake + Push	• Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.	• **Appears while driving** - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 549

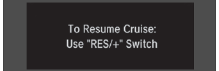
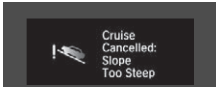
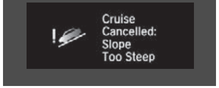
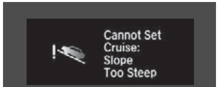
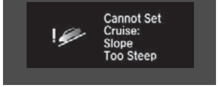
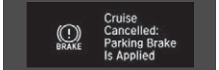
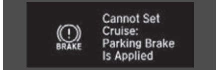
Message	Condition	Explanation
 Auto High-Beam Problem	• Appears if there is a problem with the auto high-beam.	• Manually operate the headlight switch. • If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.
 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High	• Appears if the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high and some driver assist systems cannot be activated.	• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. • **Disappears** - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546
 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield	• Appears if the area around the front sensor camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front. • May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)	• When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera. ➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546
 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed	• Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. • May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)	• When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. The message may take some time to go off. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover. ➔ **Radar Sensor** P. 548

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when ACC has been automatically canceled.	• You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves. Press the **RES/+** button. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518
BRAKE	• Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you.	• Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.) ➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 491 ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518
Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too High	• Appears when ACC is canceled due to excessive high vehicle speed.	• Reduce the speed, then reset ACC. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518
Cannot Set Cruise: Speed Too High	• Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC.	• Reduce the speed, then set ACC. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518

* Not available on all models

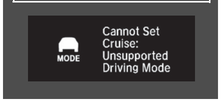
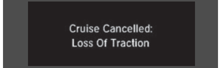
Message	Condition	Explanation
 Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too Low	• Appears when ACC is canceled due to excessive low vehicle speed.	• Raise the speed, then reset ACC. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518
 Cannot Set Cruise: Speed Too Low	• Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too low for you to set ACC.	• Raise the speed, then set ACC. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518
 Cruise Cancelled: Too Close To Vehicle Ahead	• Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC is in operation.	• ACC has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518
 Cannot Set Cruise: Too Close To Vehicle Ahead	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close.	• ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518
 Cruise Cancelled: Fasten Seat Belt	• Appears when the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC.	• ACC has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501
 Cannot Set Cruise: Fasten Seat Belt	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened.	• ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501

* Not available on all models

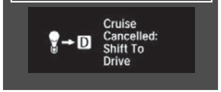
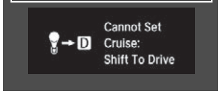
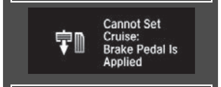
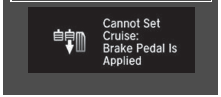
Message	Condition	Explanation
 To Resume Cruise: Use "RES/+" Switch	• Appears when the vehicle ahead of you resumes driving, after your vehicle has been stopped automatically by ACC.	• Press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button or depress the accelerator pedal to resume. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501
 Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep  Cruise Cancelled: Slope Too Steep	• Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC is in operation.	• ACC has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501
 Cannot Set Cruise: Slope Too Steep  Cannot Set Cruise: Slope Too Steep	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.	• ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501
 Cruise Cancelled: Parking Brake Is Applied	• Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC is in operation.	• ACC has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➡ **Parking Brake** P. 549
 Cannot Set Cruise: Parking Brake Is Applied	• Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the parking brake is applied.	• ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➡ **Parking Brake** P. 549

* Not available on all models

Continued

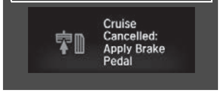
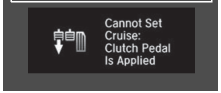
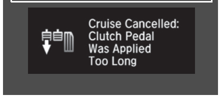
Message	Condition	Explanation
2.0 L engine models  Cannot Set Cruise: Unsupported Driving Mode	- Appears when pressing the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button while the VSA® is completely disabled. ➡ **When the drive mode is in +R mode** P. 477	- ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518
 Cruise Cancelled: Loss Of Traction	- Appears if the VSA® or traction control function operates while ACC is in operation.	- ACC has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518

* Not available on all models

Message	Condition	Explanation
Continuously variable transmission models  Cruise Cancelled: Shift To Drive	- Appears when the shift lever is moved into any position other than D or S while ACC is in operation.	- ACC has been automatically canceled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501
Continuously variable transmission models  Cannot Set Cruise: Shift To Drive	- Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the shift lever is in any position other than D or S.	- ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501
Continuously variable transmission models  Cannot Set Cruise: Brake Pedal Is Applied Manual transmission models  Cannot Set Cruise: Brake Pedal Is Applied	- Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed.	- ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 501 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518

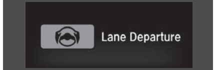
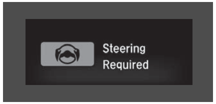
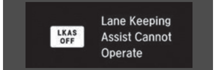
* Not available on all models

Continued

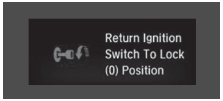
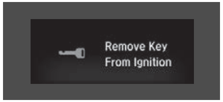
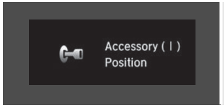
Message	Condition	Explanation
Continuously variable transmission models  Cruise Cancelled: Apply Brake Pedal	• Appears if ACC is canceled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC.	• Immediately depress the brake pedal.
Manual transmission models  Cannot Set Cruise: Clutch Pedal Is Applied	• Appears when pressing the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button while the vehicle is moving and the clutch pedal is depressed.	• ACC cannot be set. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518
Manual transmission models  Cruise Cancelled: Clutch Pedal Was Applied Too Long	• Appears when the clutch pedal is depressed while ACC is in operation.	• ACC has been automatically canceled. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 518

---

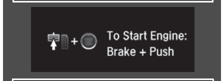
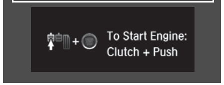
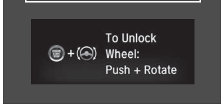
* Not available on all models

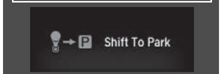
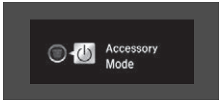
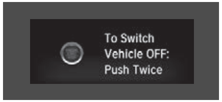
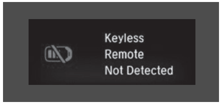
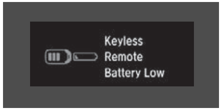
Message	Condition	Explanation
 Lane Departure	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) • Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.	• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. ➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 533
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System • Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. When you selected **Warning Only** - The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. When you selected **Normal** or **Wide** - The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.	• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. ➔ **Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System** P. 541 • You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. **Normal**, **Wide**, and **Warning Only** can be selected. ➔ **Customized Features** P. 134, 350
 Steering Required	• Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.
 LKAS OFF Lane Keeping Assist Cannot Operate	• Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA®, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action. ➔ **Indicators** P. 82

Models without smart entry system

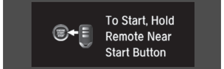
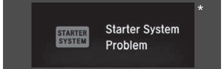
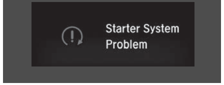
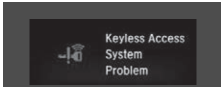
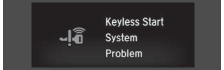
Message	Condition	Explanation
 Return Ignition Switch To Lock (0) Position	• Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY $\boxed{\text{I}}$.	• Turn the ignition switch to LOCK $\boxed{0}$, then remove the key.
 Remove Key From Ignition	• Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK $\boxed{0}$.	• Remove the key from the ignition switch.
 Accessory (I) Position	• Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY $\boxed{\text{I}}$ from ON $\boxed{\text{II}}$. (The driver's door is closed.)	—

Models with smart entry system

Message	Condition	Explanation
Continuously variable transmission models To Start Engine: Brake + Push Manual transmission models To Start Engine: Clutch + Push	- Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. Canadian models - Appears after you unlock and open the driver’s door.	➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 454
Canadian models To Unlock Wheel: Push + Rotate	- Appears when the steering wheel is locked.	- Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Message	Condition	Explanation
Continuously variable transmission models  Shift To Park	• Appears if you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P.	U.S. models • Move the shift lever to P. The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF. Canadian models • Move the shift lever to P, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice.
 Accessory Mode	• Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	—
 To Switch Vehicle OFF: Push Twice	• Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	• Change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. ➡ **ENGINE START/STOP Button*** P. 172
 Keyless Remote Not Detected	• Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the smart entry remote inside the vehicle.	• Disappears when you bring the smart entry remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. ➡ **Smart Entry Remote Reminder** P. 174
 Keyless Remote Battery Low	• Appears when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak.	➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 622

* Not available on all models

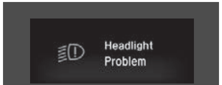
Message	Condition	Explanation
 To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button	• Appears if the smart entry remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times.	• Bring the back of the smart entry remote into contact with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 660
U.S.  STARTER SYSTEM Starter System Problem * Canada  Starter System Problem	• Appears when the starter system has a problem.	• As a temporary measure, press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and clutch pedal (manual transmission only), manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
 Keyless Access System Problem  Keyless Start System Problem	• Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the smart entry system or push button starting system.	• **Appears constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

---

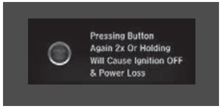
* Not available on all models

Continued

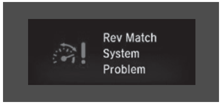
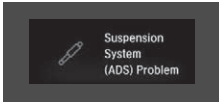
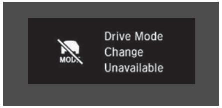
Models with LED headlight

Message	Condition	Explanation
 Headlight Problem	• Appears if there is a problem with the headlights.	• **Appears while driving** - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

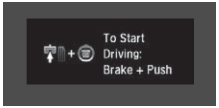
1.5 L engine models

Message	Condition	Explanation
 Pressing Button Again 2x Or Holding Will Cause Ignition OFF & Power Loss	• Appears if you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while the vehicle is moving.	➡ **Emergency Engine Stop** P. 661

2.0 L engine models

Message	Condition	Explanation
 Rev Match System Problem	• Appears if there is a problem with a system related to Rev Match System while the system is activated by customization.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Rev Match System** P. 469
 Suspension System (ADS) Problem	• Appears if there is a problem with the adaptive damper system.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Your vehicle will have normal damping ability without the adaptive damper feature.
 Drive Mode Change Unavailable	• Appears if the drive mode cannot be changed due to certain situations, such as a system error or adverse driving conditions.	➡ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 473

Models with remote engine starter

Message	Condition	Explanation
 To Start Driving: Brake + Push	• Appears when you unlock and open the driver's door while the engine is running by one-way smart entry remote.	⮕ **Remote Engine Start*** P. 456

---

* Not available on all models

Gauges and Driver Information Interface

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON [II]*1.

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph or km/h.

Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

»Gauges

Press the ℹ (display/information) button repeatedly until the [mph km/h] icon is shown on the driver information interface. Press **ENTER**, then press and hold it again. The speedometer reading and the displayed measurements will switch between mph and km/h.

»Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches [E]. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

»Temperature Gauge

NOTICE

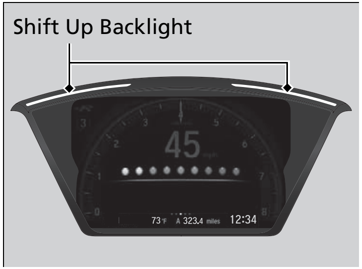
Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

➔ **Overheating** P. 666

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Shift Up Backlight*/Shift Up Alarm*



The shift up backlight blinks and the alarm sounds when the tachometer reading approaches the red zone.

Shift Up Backlight*/Shift Up Alarm*

You can use the customized features to turn the shift up backlight feature and the shift up alarm feature on and off.

Customized Features P. 350

* Not available on all models

Driver Information Interface

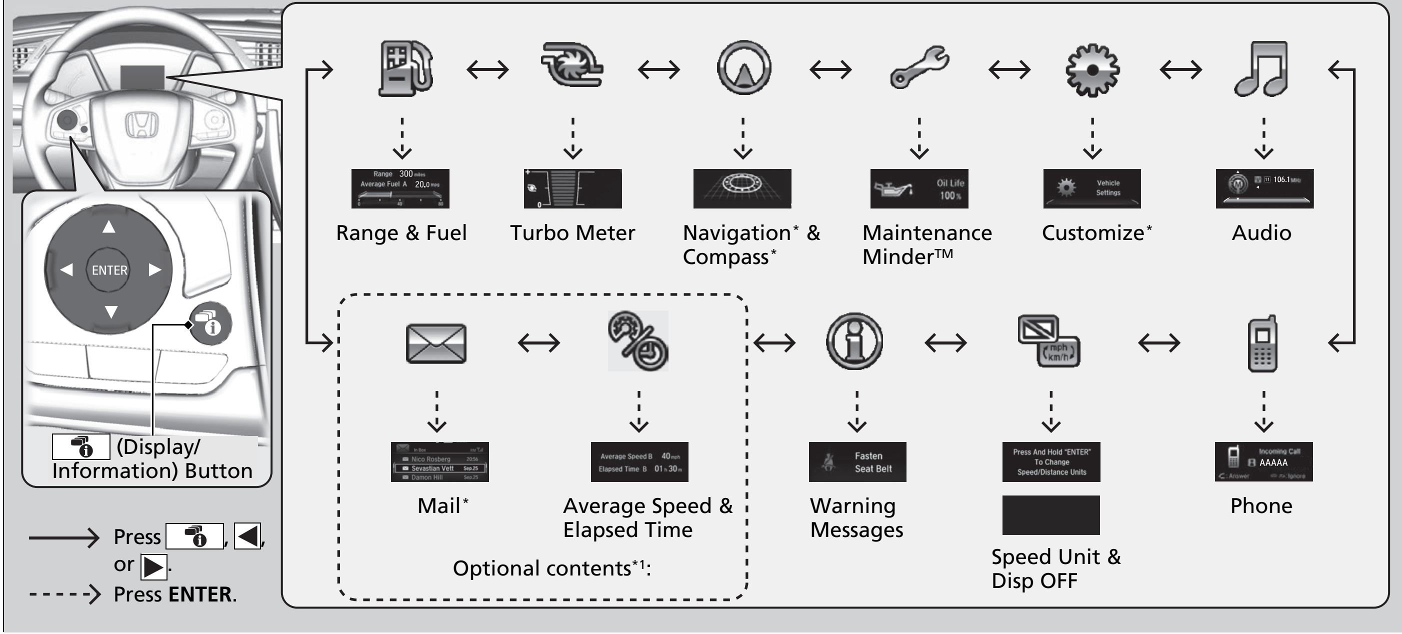
The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.
It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

Switching the Display

Main displays

Press the ℹ (display/information) button and press ◀ or ▶ to change the display. Press **ENTER** to see detailed information.

1.5 L engine models


ENTER
ℹ (Display/ Information) Button
Press ℹ, ◀, or ▶.
Press **ENTER**.
Range 300 miles
Average Fuel A 20.0 mpg
Range & Fuel
Turbo Meter
Navigation* & Compass*
Oil Life 100 %
Maintenance Minder™
Vehicle Settings
Customize*
106.1 MHz
Audio
In Box
Nico Rosberg
Sevastian Vett
Damon Hill
Mail*
Average Speed B 40 mph
Elapsed Time B 01 h 30 m
Average Speed & Elapsed Time
Optional contents*1:
Fasten Seat Belt
Warning Messages
mph km/h
Press And Hold "ENTER" To Change Speed/Distance Units
Speed Unit & Disp OFF
Incoming Call
AAAAA
Answer
Ignore
Phone

*1:You can add the contents using the audio/information screen.

Switching the Display

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents using the audio/information screen.

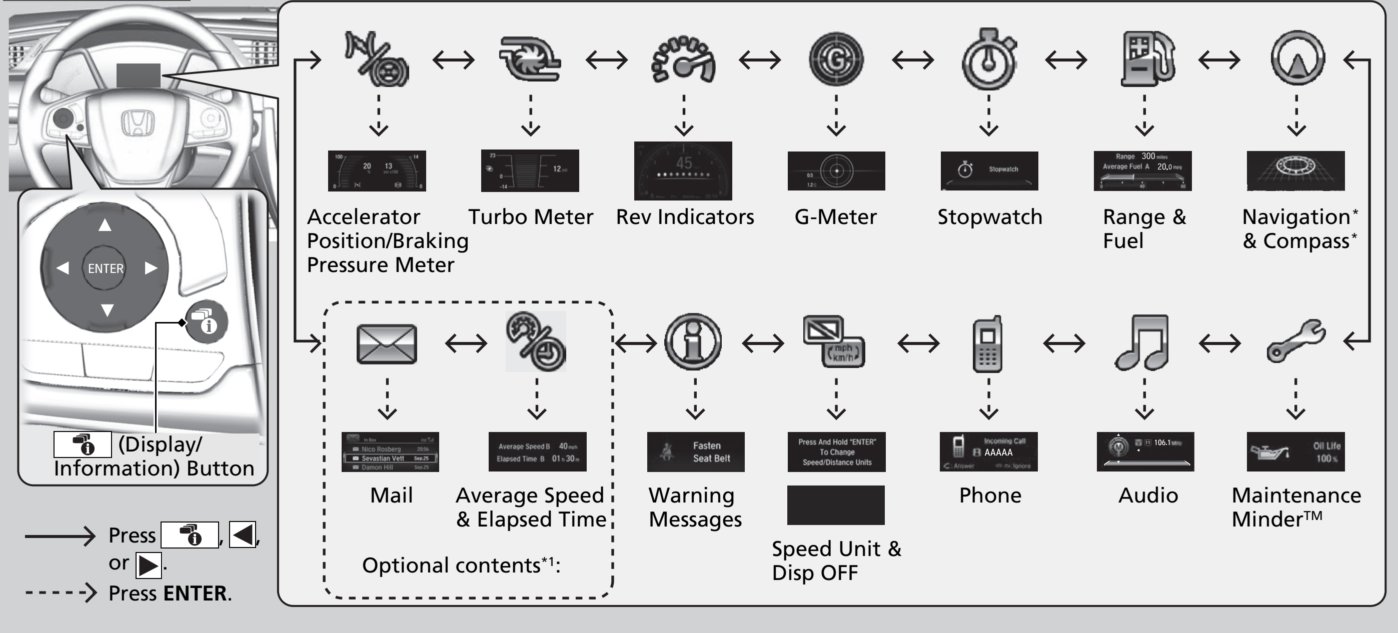
Customizing the Meter P. 256

---

* Not available on all models

Continued

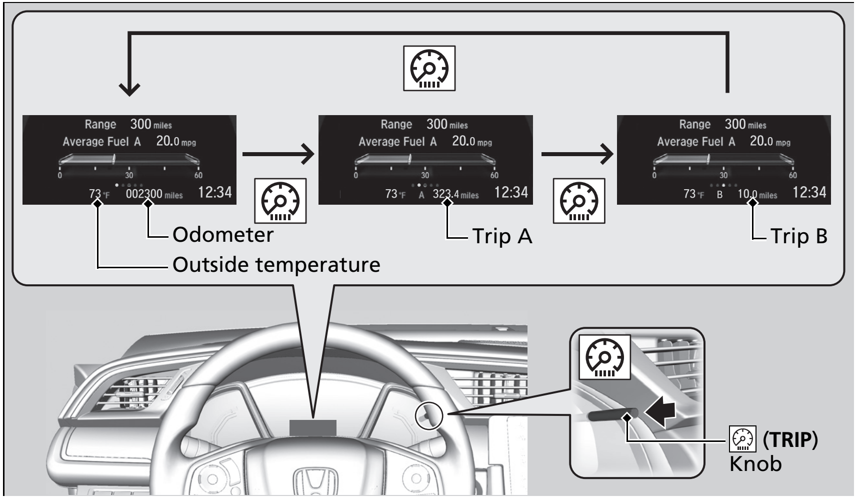
2.0 L engine models


ENTER
(Display/ Information) Button
Press , , or .
Press ENTER.
Accelerator Position/Braking Pressure Meter
Turbo Meter
Rev Indicators
G-Meter
Stopwatch
Range & Fuel
Navigation* & Compass*
Mail
Average Speed & Elapsed Time
Optional contents*1:
Warning Messages
Fasten Seat Belt
Press And Hold "ENTER" To Change Speed/Distance Units
Speed Unit & Disp OFF
Phone
Incoming Call AAAAA
Audio
Maintenance Minder™
Oil Life 100%

*1:You can add the contents using the audio/information screen.

Trip computer

Press the (**TRIP**) knob to change the display.


Range 300 miles
Average Fuel A 20.0 mpg
0
30
60
73 °F
002300 miles
12:34
Odometer
Outside temperature
Range 300 miles
Average Fuel A 20.0 mpg
73 °F
A
323.4 miles
12:34
Trip A
Range 300 miles
Average Fuel A 20.0 mpg
73 °F
B
10.0 miles
12:34
Trip B
(TRIP)
Knob

Odometer

Shows the total number of miles or kilometers that your vehicle has accumulated.

Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles or kilometers driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

≫Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the knob.

Continued

Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle’s current fuel economy.

Elapsed Time*

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Average Speed*

Shows the average speed in mph or km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

Maintenance Minder™ P. 573

Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

Customized Features P. 134, 350

Elapsed Time*

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

Customized Features P. 134, 350

Average Speed*

You can change when to reset the average speed.

Customized Features P. 134, 350

---

* Not available on all models

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to ±5°F or ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.
Use the driver information interface’s customized features to correct the temperature.

Customized Features P. 134, 350

Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg or l/100 km.

Turbo Meter

When the turbo is producing boost, this meter indicates boost pressure is building.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Continued

Navigation*

Compass*

Shows the compass screen.

Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system* or Android Auto, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Android Auto P. 316

Audio

Shows the current audio information.

Audio System Basic Operation P. 233, 251

Mail*

Shows the current mail information.

***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 410

Phone

Shows the current phone information.

***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 383, 410

Navigation*

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on or not during the route guidance.

Customized Features P. 350

---

* Not available on all models

G-Meter*

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.

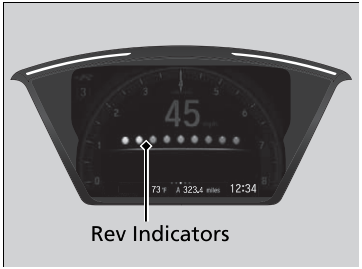
Braking Pressure Meter*

Displays the brake pressure in PSI when the brake is applied.

Accelerator Position Meter*

Displays the accelerator position in degrees of %.

Rev Indicators*



Light up from left to right according to engine speed.

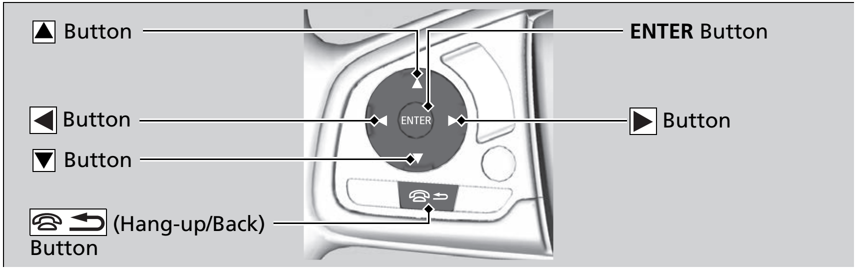
---

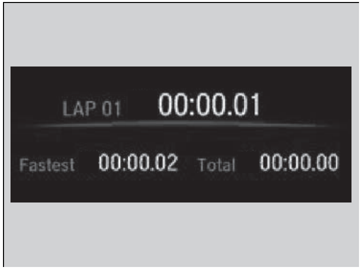
* Not available on all models

Continued

Stopwatch*

Measures the lap time, and displays the previously measured times, split time and the fastest lap time.





LAP 01 00:00.01

Fastest 00:00.02 Total 00:00.00

Measuring LAP Time

1. Press the **ENTER** button to display the lap time measurement screen.
2. Press the **ENTER** button to start measurement.
3. Press the **ENTER** button again to stop measurement.
   - ▶ To measure the time per lap, press the ▲/▼ button at the completion of each lap.
   - ▶ To return to the **Stopwatch** screen, press the ☎ ↩ (Hang-up/back) button.

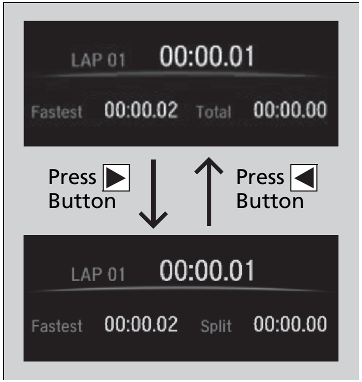
≫Stopwatch*

Be sure to use this measurement function only where and when it is safe to do so.

Lap time is displayed from 00:00.00 to 9:59:59.99.

---

* Not available on all models


LAP 01
00:00.01
Fastest
00:00.02
Total
00:00.00
Press ▶ Button
Press ◀ Button
LAP 01
00:00.01
Fastest
00:00.02
Split
00:00.00

■ Checking/Clearing history

- To check history, press the ▶ button (when lap time is not running) to change the display, then press the ▲/▼ button to scroll through lap times.
  ▶ A maximum of 20 lap times can be stored at a time.
- To clear the history, press and hold the ▲/▼ button when lap time is not running.
- To return to the lap time measurement screen, press the ◀ button.
- To return to the **Stopwatch** screen, press the ☎ ↩ (Hang-up/back) button.

Continued

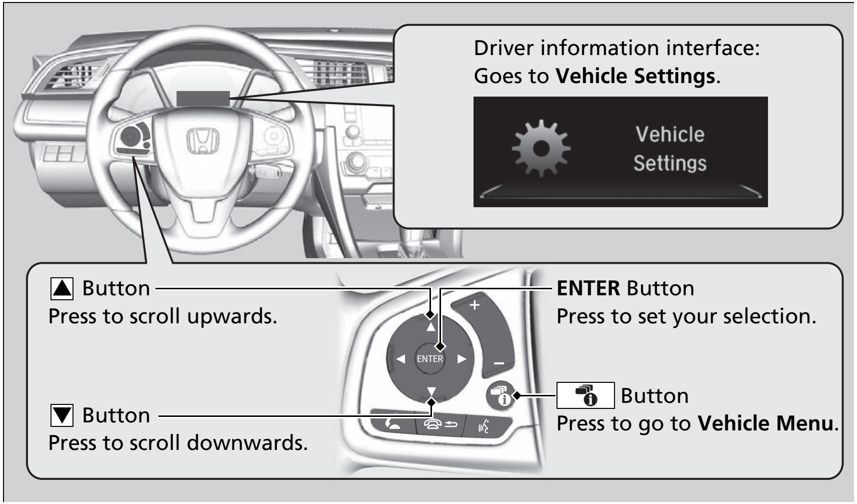
Models with color audio system

Customized Features

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Select the **Vehicle Settings** screen by pressing the ℹ button while the ignition switch is in ON II, and the vehicle is at a complete stop. Select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **ENTER** button.



Driver information interface:
Goes to **Vehicle Settings**.

▲ Button
Press to scroll upwards.

▼ Button
Press to scroll downwards.

ENTER Button
Press to set your selection.

ℹ Button
Press to go to **Vehicle Menu**.

≫Customized Features

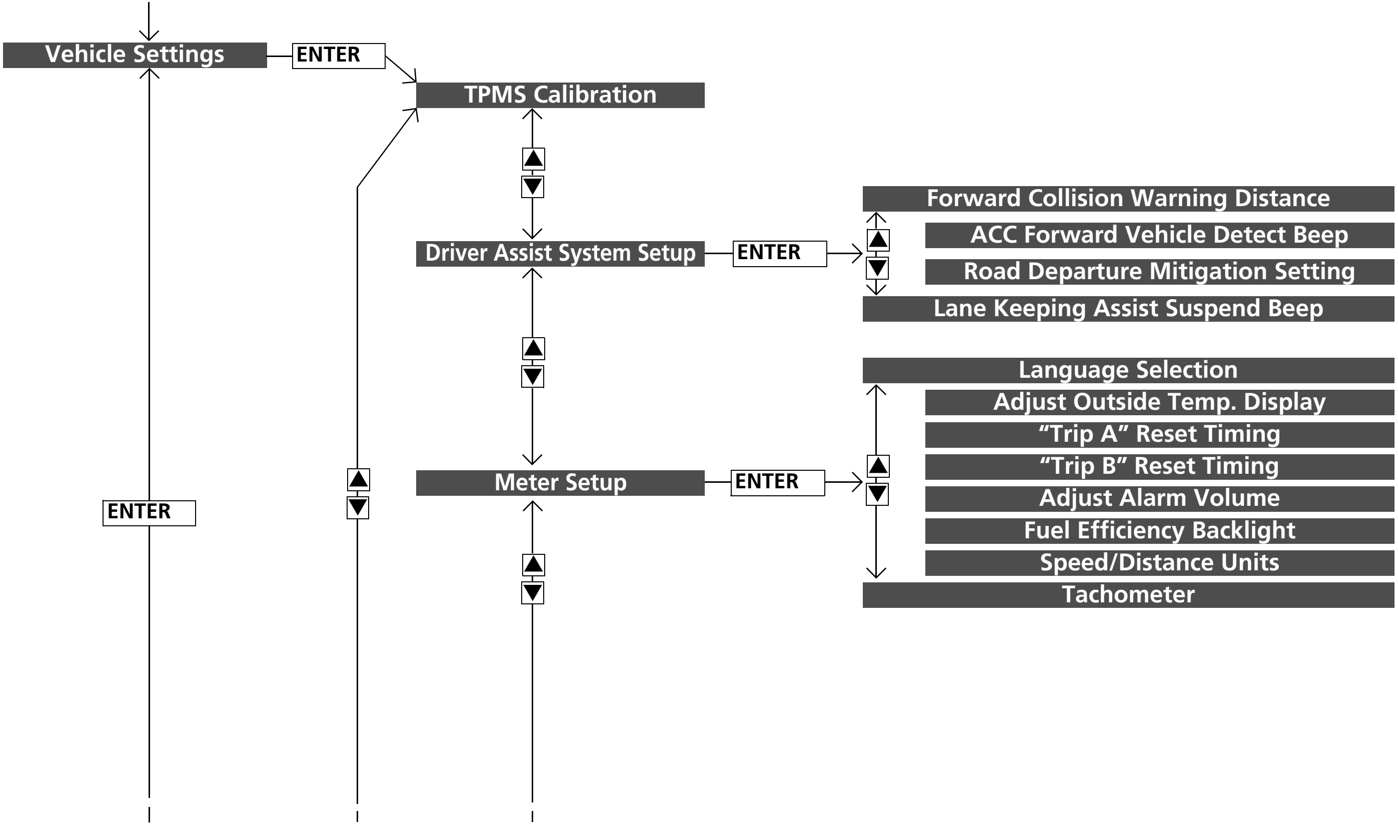
To customize other features, press the ▲ / ▼ button.

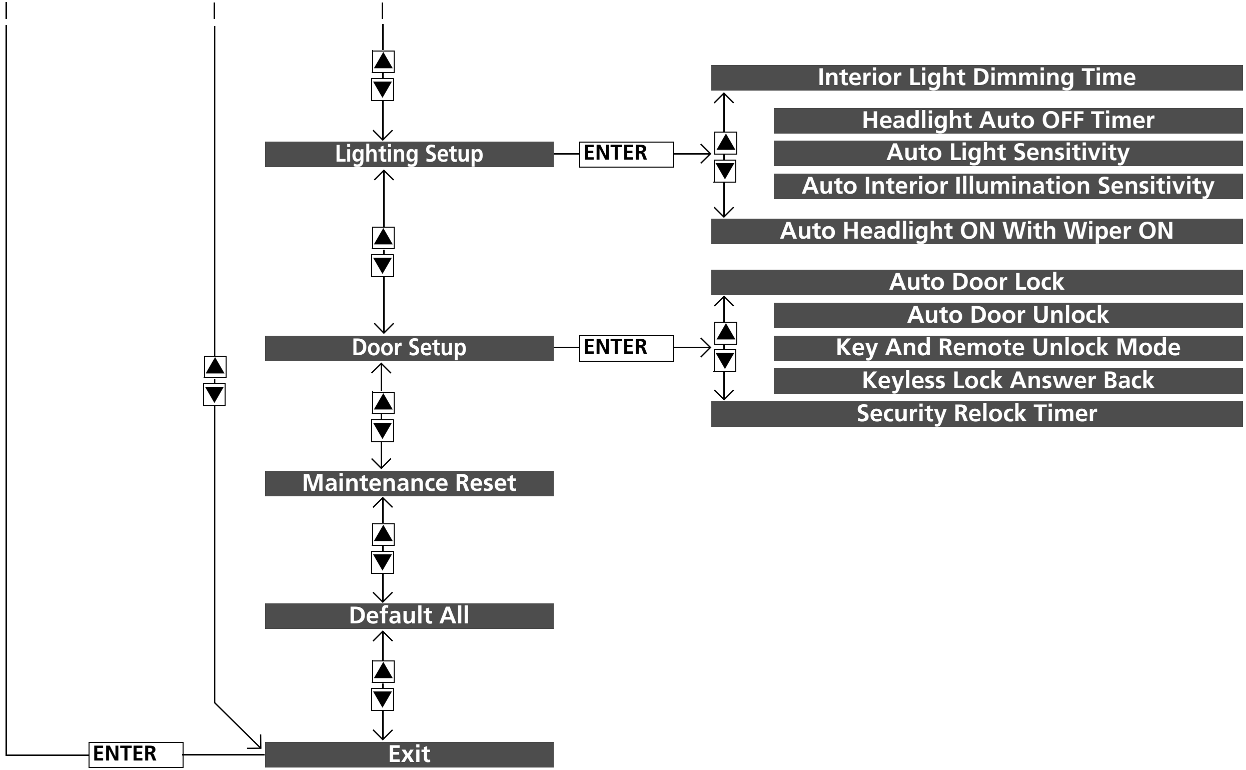
- **List of customizable options** P. 137
- **Example of customization settings** P. 141

Put the transmission into P before you attempt to change any customized setting.

■ Customization flow

Press the ⓘ button.


Vehicle Settings
ENTER
TPMS Calibration
▲
▼
Driver Assist System Setup
ENTER
▲
▼
Forward Collision Warning Distance
ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep
Road Departure Mitigation Setting
Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep
▲
▼
Meter Setup
ENTER
▲
▼
Language Selection
Adjust Outside Temp. Display
"Trip A" Reset Timing
"Trip B" Reset Timing
Adjust Alarm Volume
Fuel Efficiency Backlight
Speed/Distance Units
Tachometer
ENTER
▲
▼
▲
▼


Lighting Setup
ENTER
Interior Light Dimming Time
Headlight Auto OFF Timer
Auto Light Sensitivity
Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity
Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON
Door Setup
ENTER
Auto Door Lock
Auto Door Unlock
Key And Remote Unlock Mode
Keyless Lock Answer Back
Security Relock Timer
Maintenance Reset
Default All
ENTER
Exit

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
TPMS Calibration	—	Calibrates the TPMS.	**Cancel**/**Calibrate**
Driver Assist System Setup	**Forward Collision Warning Distance**	Changes the distance at which CMBS™ alerts.	**Long**/**Normal**[*1]/**Short**
	ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range.	**ON**/**OFF**[*1]
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	**Normal**[*1]/**Wide**/**Warning Only**
	Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**ON**/**OFF**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	**Language Selection**	Changes the displayed language.	**English***1/**Français**/**Español**
	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-5°F** ~ **±0°F***1 ~ **+5°F**
	“Trip A” Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	**When Refueled**/**IGN OFF**/**Manually Reset***1
	“Trip B” Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	**When Refueled**/**IGN OFF**/**Manually Reset***1
	Adjust Alarm Volume	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	**High**/**Mid***1/**Low**
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON***1/**OFF**
	Speed/Distance Units	Selects the trip computer units.	**mph·miles***1/**km/h·km**
	Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer is displayed on the driver information interface.	**ON***1/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Lighting Setup	**Interior Light Dimming Time**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec**/**30sec**[*1]/**15sec**
	Headlight Auto OFF Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec**/**30sec**/**15sec**[*1]/**0sec**
	Auto Light Sensitivity	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	**Max**/**High**/**Mid**[*1]/**Low**/**Min**
	Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**Max**/**High**/**Mid**[*1]/**Low**/**Min**
	Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**

*1: Default Setting

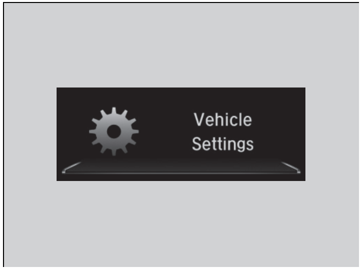
Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	**Auto Door Lock**	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift from P/OFF**
	Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	**When Driver's Door Opens**[*1]**/ When Shifting Into Park/ When Ignition Switched OFF/OFF**
	Key And Remote Unlock Mode	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote or ignition key.	**Driver Door**[*1]**/ All Doors**
	Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90sec/60sec/30sec**[*1]
Maintenance Reset	—	Cancels/Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service.	**Cancel/All Due Items**
Default All	—	Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	**Cancel/Set**

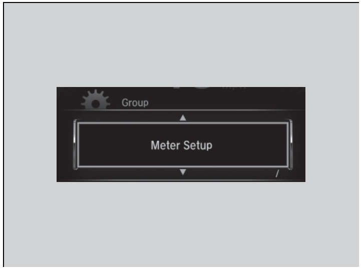
*1: Default Setting

■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the **“Trip A” Reset Timing** setting to **When Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **“Trip A” Reset Timing** is **Manually Reset**.

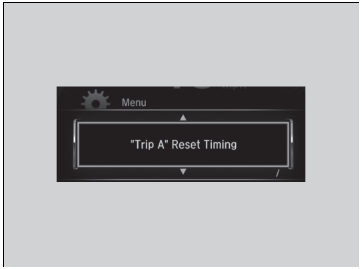


1. Press the ℹ button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **ENTER** button.

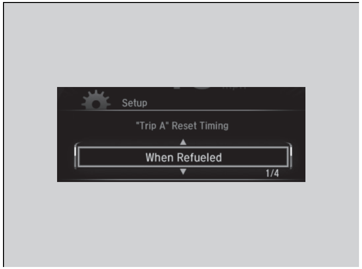


2. Press the ▲ / ▼ button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the **ENTER** button.
   ▶ **Language Selection** appears first in the display.

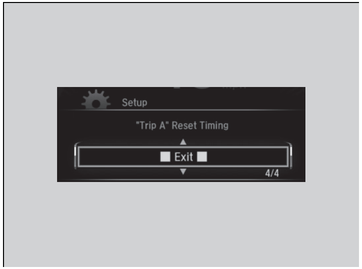
Continued


Menu
▲
"Trip A" Reset Timing
▼

4. Press the ▲ / ▼ button until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **ENTER** button.
   ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Refueled**, **IGN OFF**, **Manually Reset**, or **Exit**.


Setup
"Trip A" Reset Timing
▲
When Refueled
▼
1/4

5. Press the ▲ / ▼ button and select **When Refueled**, then press the **ENTER** button.
   ▶ The **When Refueled Setup** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.


Setup
"Trip A" Reset Timing
▲
■ Exit ■
▼
4/4

6. Press the ▲ / ▼ button until **Exit** appears on the display, then press the **ENTER** button.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock 144

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Key Types and Functions 145
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength* .. 146
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 147
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 156
Childproof Door Locks 158
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 159
Hatch 160

Security System

Immobilizer System 163
Security System Alarm...................... 164
Opening and Closing the Windows ... 167
Moonroof* 170

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

Ignition Switch* 171
ENGINE START/STOP Button* 172
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison 175
Turn Signals 176
Light Switches................................. 177
Fog Lights* 180
Daytime Running Lights 180
Auto High-Beam 181
Wipers and Washers 184
Brightness Control 187
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button 188
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 189

Adjusting the Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror 190
Power Door Mirrors 192
Adjusting the Seats 193
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items 201

Climate Control System

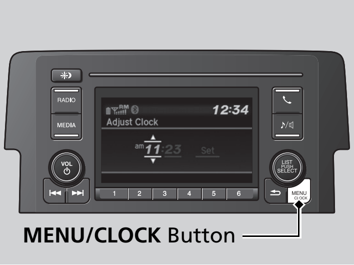
Using Automatic Climate Control 217
Automatic Climate Control Sensors......224

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON **II***1.

Adjusting the Time

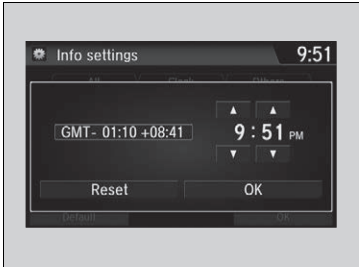


MENU/CLOCK Button

Models with color audio system

Using the MENU/CLOCK button

1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
   ▶ **Adjust Clock** is selected.
2. Rotate ⟲ to change hour, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to change minute, then press ⊙.
4. To enter the selection, rotate ⟲ and select **Set**, then press ⊙.



Models with Display Audio

Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
4. Select ▲ or ▼ to change hour.
5. Select ▲ or ▼ to change minute, then select **OK**.

≫Adjusting the Clock

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

All models

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 343, 350

≫Using the MENU/CLOCK button

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate ⟲ to select.
Press ⊙ to enter.

≫Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

You can turn the clock display on and off.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 350

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display.

1. Touch the clock on the display for a few seconds.
2. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Select ▲ or ▼ to change hour.
4. Select ▲ or ▼ to change minute, then select **OK**.

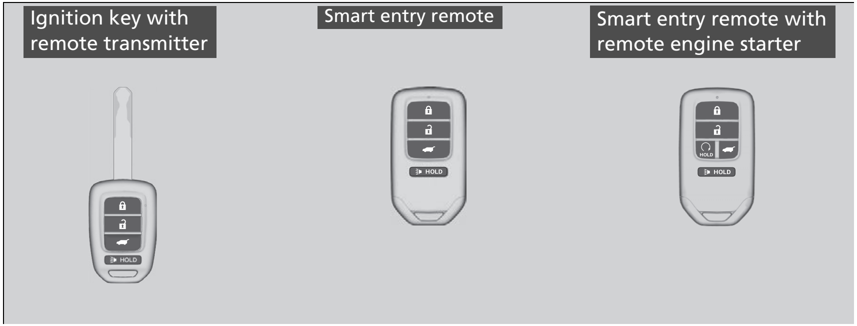
You cannot adjust the time while the vehicle is moving.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

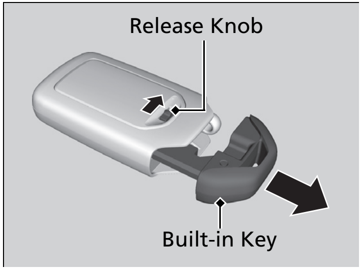
Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:


Ignition key with remote transmitter
Smart entry remote
Smart entry remote with remote engine starter
HOLD
HOLD
HOLD
HOLD

Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock the doors and hatch. You can also use the remote transmitter to lock and unlock the doors and hatch.

Built-in Key*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/ unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the smart entry remote until it clicks.

≫Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➲ **Immobilizer System** P. 163

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:
- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

Models with remote engine starter

You can remotely start the engine using the smart entry remote with remote engine starter.

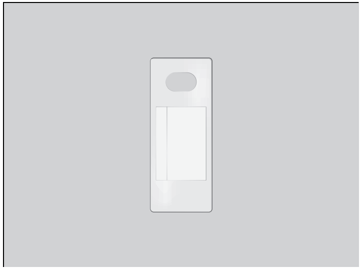
➲ **Remote Engine Start*** P. 456

---

* Not available on all models

Continued

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the smart entry remote when locking/unlocking the doors and hatch, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and hatch, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the smart entry remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the smart entry remote.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

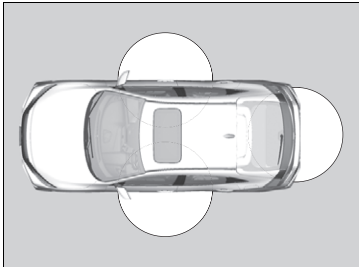
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength*

Communication between the smart entry remote and the vehicle consumes the smart entry remote's battery.
Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the smart entry remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

* Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*



When you carry the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and hatch.
You can lock/unlock the doors and hatch within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle or hatch release button.

≫Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➲ **Interior Lights** P. 201

≫Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

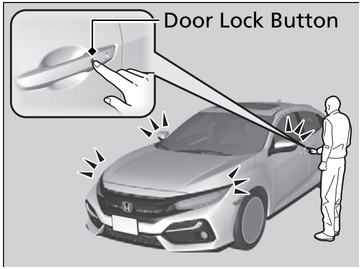
If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the smart entry system, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.

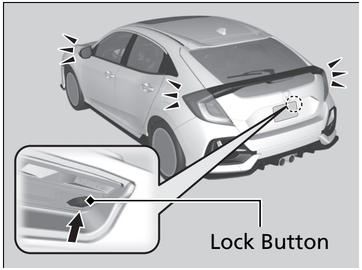
You can lock or unlock doors using the smart entry system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Locking the doors and hatch





Press the door lock button on the front door or on the hatch.

▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and hatch lock; and the security system sets.

»Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

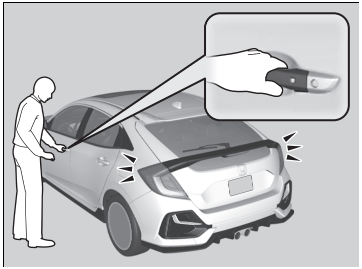
- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and hatch while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the smart entry remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to two seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least two seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and hatch with the smart entry remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The smart entry remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

The light flash, beep and door unlock mode settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

» **Customized Features** P. 350

* Not available on all models

■Unlocking the doors and hatch



Grab the driver's door handle:

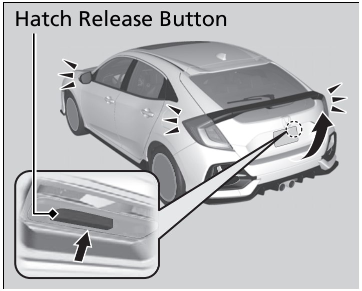
▶ The driver's door unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

▶ All doors and the hatch unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

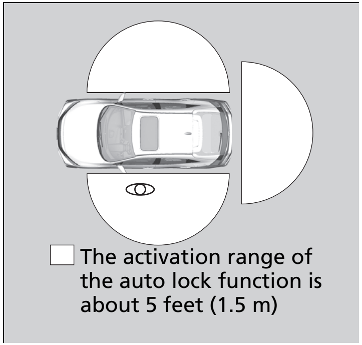


Press the hatch release button.

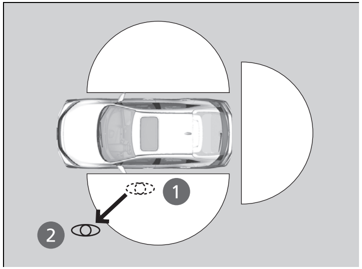
▶ The hatch unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

➲ **Opening/Closing the Hatch** P. 161



☐ The activation range of the auto lock function is about 5 feet (1.5 m)



■ Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock®)

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the smart entry remote, the doors and hatch will automatically lock.
The auto lock function activates when all doors and hatch are closed, and the smart entry remote is within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the outside door handle.
Exit vehicle while carrying smart entry remote and close door(s).

1. While within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the vehicle.
   ▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.
2. Carry the smart entry remote beyond about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
   ▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and hatch will then lock.

≫Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock®)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen.
If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

Customized Features P. 350

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the smart entry remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors and hatch will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door or the hatch after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be delayed until all doors and hatch are closed.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the smart entry remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

»Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock®)

Under the following circumstances, the auto lock function will not activate:

- The smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.
  ▶The beeper will not sound.
- The smart entry remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors and hatch are closed.
  ▶The beeper will sound.

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door, hatch or the hood is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The smart entry remote is not located within a radius of about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

Continued

>>Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock®)

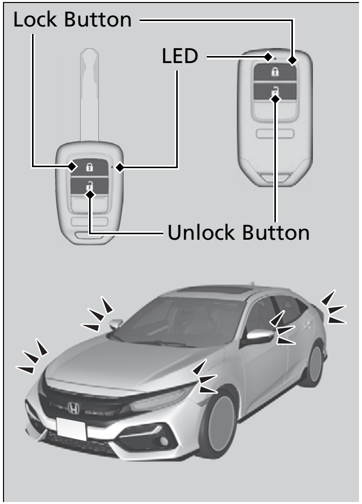
Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The smart entry remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The smart entry remote is put inside the hatch.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the smart entry remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors and hatch

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and hatch lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors and hatch

Press the unlock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

Twice:

▶ The remaining doors and hatch unlock.

Continued

≫Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.
You can change the relock timer setting.

Customized Features P. 134, 350

Models without smart entry system

The remote transmitter will not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

All models

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

Replacing the Button Battery P. 622

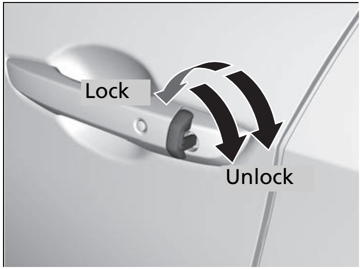
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

Customized Features P. 134, 350

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the remote transmitter does not work, use the key instead.

➲ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 622



Fully insert the key and turn it.

>Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

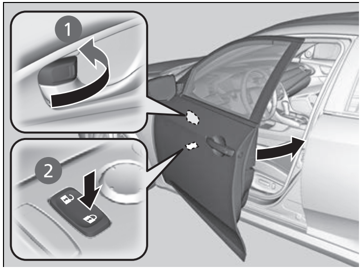
When you lock the driver's door with a key, all the other doors and hatch lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors and the hatch.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➲ **Customized Features** P. 134, 350

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■Locking the front doors

Push the lock tab forward ❶ or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ❷, and close the door.

■Locking the rear doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■Lockout prevention system

Models without smart entry system

The doors and hatch cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

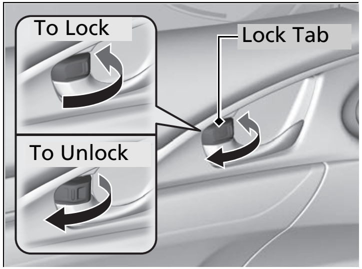
The doors and hatch cannot be locked when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.

»Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and hatch lock at the same time.
Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

Using the Lock Tab



■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

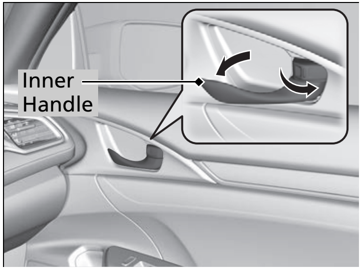
■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver’s door, all of the other doors and the hatch lock at the same time.
When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver’s door, only the driver’s door will unlock.

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.

▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

To avoid all the doors to be unlocked, use the lock tab on the driver's door to unlock, then lock again before opening the door.

▶ This setting works for one time only.

Models with color audio system

If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the **Auto Door Unlock** setting to **OFF** using the driver information interface.

Customized Features P. 134

Models with Display Audio

If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the **Auto Door Unlock** setting to **Off** using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 350

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

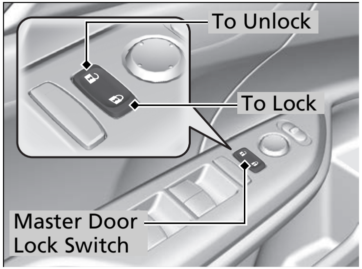
The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

Childproof Door Locks P. 158

Continued

Using the Master Door Lock Switch

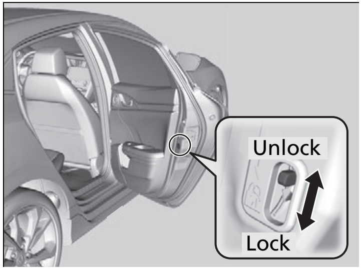


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the hatch.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

»Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock either of the front doors using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the hatch lock/unlock at the same time.

»Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors and the hatch lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

Auto Door Unlocking

■ Driver's door open mode

All doors and the hatch unlock when the driver's door is opened.

»Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Models with color audio system

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface.

Customized Features P. 134

Models with Display Audio

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 350

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

- Open the hatch all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the hatch may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the hatch to close.

Keep the hatch closed while driving to:

▶ Avoid possible damage.

▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

⮕ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 79

≫Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

⚠WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a hatch that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

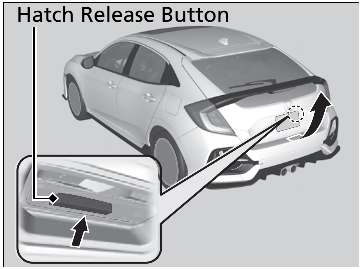
Make sure that all people are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

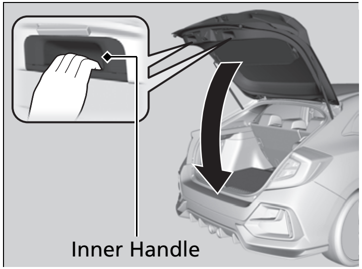
Be careful not to hit your head on the hatch or to put your hands between the hatch and the cargo area when closing the hatch.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the cargo area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the cargo space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Opening/Closing the Hatch





When all the doors are unlocked or press the hatch unlock button on the remote transmitter, the hatch is unlocked. Press the hatch release button and lift open the hatch.

Models with smart entry system

If you are carrying the smart entry remote, you do not have to unlock the hatch before opening it.

All models

To close the hatch, grab the inner handle, pull the hatch down, and push it closed from outside.

If you close the hatch when the driver's door is locked, the hatch locks automatically.

▶ Some exterior lights flash.

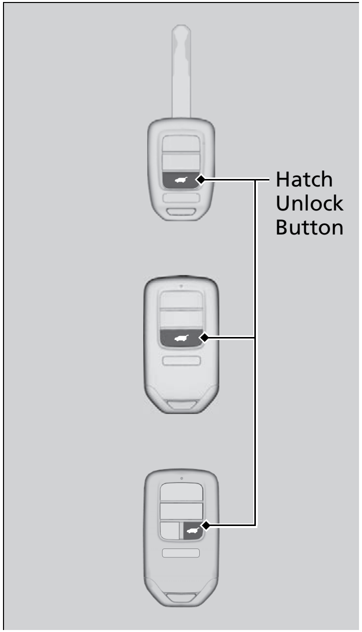
≫Opening/Closing the Hatch

Models with smart entry system

- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can unlock the hatch while someone else with the remote is within range.
- Do not leave the smart entry remote inside the cargo area and close the hatch when all the doors are locked. The beeper sounds and the hatch cannot be locked.

Continued

Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the hatch unlock button to unlock the hatch.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you have unlocked and opened the hatch using the remote transmitter, when closing, the hatch locks automatically.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch* or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

»Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the battery has been disconnected.

---

* Not available on all models

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the hatch, hood or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the hatch or doors are opened with the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system*.

However, the alarm activates if a door is opened with the key and then the transmission is taken out of (P) (continuously variable transmission models) or the hood is opened before the ignition switch is turned to ON (II)*1.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system*, or turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

»Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system alarm deactivates.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK [0]*1, and the key has been removed from the ignition switch.
- The hood is closed.
- All doors and the hatch are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or smart entry system*.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or smart entry system*, or when the ignition switch is turned to ON [II]*1. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

»Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the hood with the hood release.

Continuously variable transmission models

- Taking the transmission out of [P].

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system*.

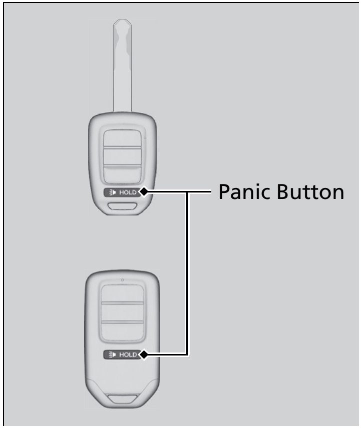
---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Panic Mode



The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

Canceling panic mode

- Press any button on the remote transmitter.
- Turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

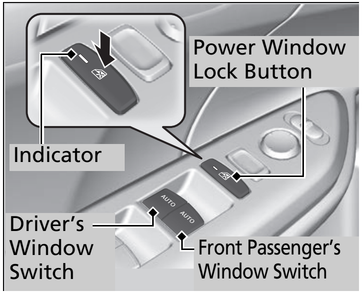
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON II*1, using the switches on the doors.

The driver’s side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver’s side must be switched off (indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver’s seat.

When the power window lock button is pressed, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver’s window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

» Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

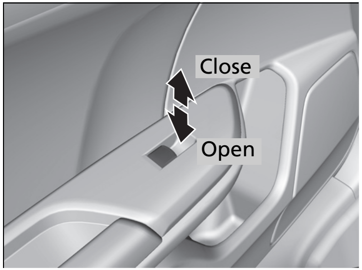
The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1.
Opening either front door cancels this function.

Auto Reverse
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver’s window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

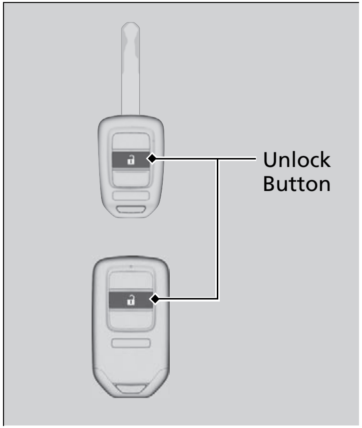
Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function



To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Opening the Windows with the Remote



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

≫Opening/Closing the Power Windows

While driving with any of the windows open, you may hear a booming, throbbing, or helicopter-type noise or pressure. This is called wind buffeting. This is a normal occurrence that can be minimized.

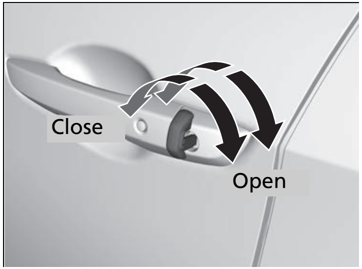
If you hear a wind buffeting noise with any of the windows open, lower all of the other windows slightly or open the moonroof*.

≫Opening the Windows with the Remote

If you open the windows with the remote, the moonroof* will open automatically along with them.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Key



To open: Unlock the driver’s door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.
To close: Lock the driver’s door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

>Opening/Closing the Windows with the Key

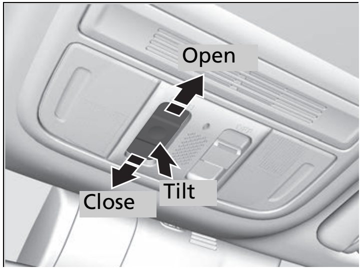
If you open/close the windows with the key, the moonroof* will open/close automatically along with them.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Moonroof

You can operate the moonroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the moonroof.

Using the Moonroof Switch



■Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The moonroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the moonroof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

■Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■Tilting the moonroof up

To tilt: Push on the center of the moonroof switch.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

Moonroof*

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

NOTICE

Opening the moonroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the moonroof panel or motor.

The moonroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Opening either front door cancels this function.

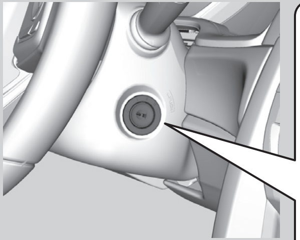
When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the moonroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the moonroof.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the moonroof.

Opening the Windows with the Remote P. 168
Opening/Closing the Windows with the Key P. 169

* Not available on all models

Ignition Switch*



[0] LOCK: Insert and remove the key in this position.

[I] ACCESSORY: Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

[II] ON: This is the position when driving.

[III] START: This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON [II] when you let go of the key.

»Ignition Switch*

Manual transmission models

⚠WARNING

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

Continuously variable transmission models

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in [P].

All models

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK [0] or ACCESSORY [I], a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.
When the warning buzzer sounds, the following messages appear on the driver information interface:

- In LOCK [0]: **Remove Key From Ignition**.
- In ACCESSORY [I]: **Return Ignition Switch To Lock (0) Position**.

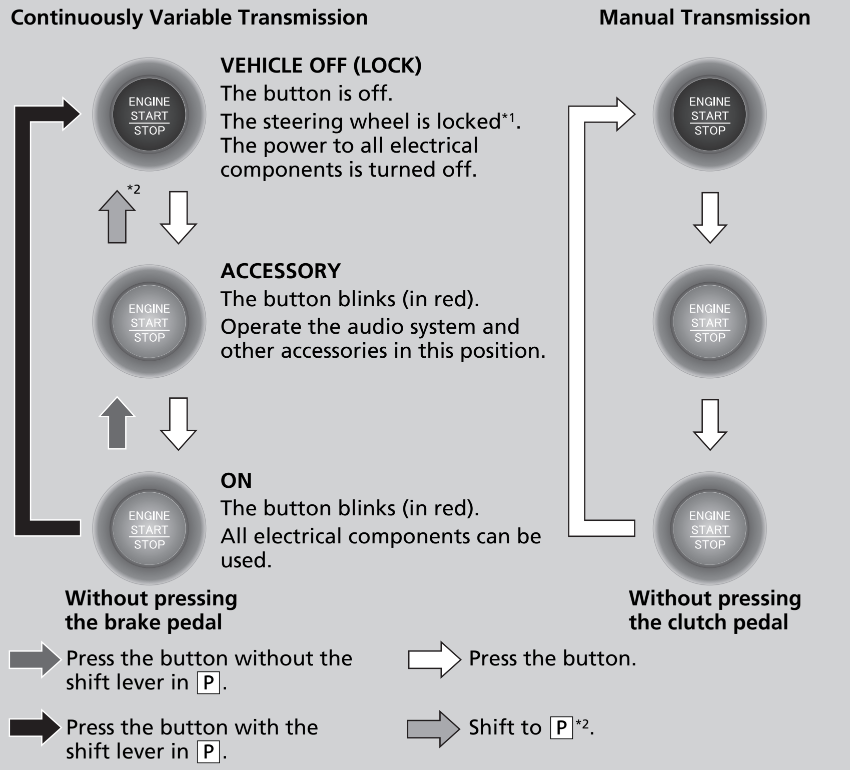
If the key won't turn from LOCK [0] to ACCESSORY [I], turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

---

* Not available on all models

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

Changing the Power Mode



Continuously Variable Transmission

Manual Transmission

VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)
The button is off.
The steering wheel is locked*1.
The power to all electrical components is turned off.

ACCESSORY
The button blinks (in red).
Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

ON
The button blinks (in red).
All electrical components can be used.

Without pressing the brake pedal

Without pressing the clutch pedal

➡ Press the button without the shift lever in P.

➡ Press the button with the shift lever in P.

⇨ Press the button.

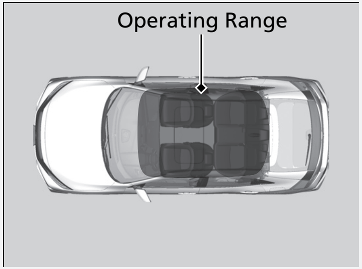
⇨ Shift to P*2.

---

*1:U.S. models with manual transmission and Canadian models
*2:U.S. models with continuously variable transmission
* Not available on all models

»ENGINE START/STOP Button*

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.
The engine may also run if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:
The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on (in red), if the engine is running.

If the battery of the smart entry remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak P. 660

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P[*1] and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

U.S. models with manual transmission and Canadian models

When in this mode:
The steering wheel does not lock.
You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the smart entry system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

---

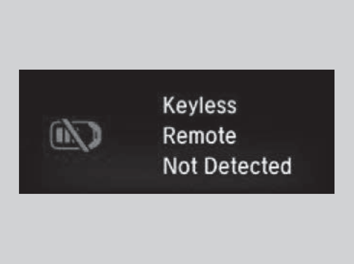
*1: Continuously variable transmission models

Continued

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

Smart Entry Remote Reminder



Keyless
Remote
Not Detected

Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/or outside the vehicle to remind you that the smart entry remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

■ When the power mode is in ON

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the driver information interface notifies the driver inside that the remote is outside of the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

» Smart Entry Remote Reminder

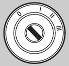
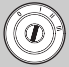
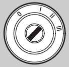
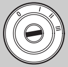
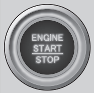
When the smart entry remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the smart entry remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

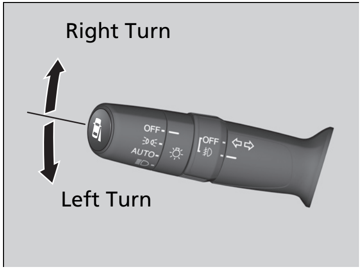
Do not put the smart entry remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK $\boxed{0}$ (with/without the key) 	ACCESSORY $\boxed{\text{I}}$ 	ON $\boxed{\text{II}}$ 	START $\boxed{\text{III}}$ 
Without Smart Entry System	• Engine is turned off and power is shut down. • The steering wheel is locked. • No electrical components can be used.	• Engine is turned off. • Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	• Normal key position while driving. • All electrical components can be used.	• Use this position to start the engine. • The ignition switch returns to the ON $\boxed{\text{II}}$ position when you release the key.
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) ENGINE START STOP	ACCESSORY 	ON ENGINE START STOP ENGINE START STOP Button is: Blinking On	START ENGINE START STOP
With Smart Entry System and **ENGINE START/STOP** Button	Button-Off • Engine is turned off and power is shut down. • The steering wheel is locked*1. • No electrical components can be used.	Button-Blinking • Engine is turned off. • Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	Button- Blinking (engine is turned off) On (engine is running) • All electrical components can be used.	Button-On • The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.

*1:U.S. models with manual transmission and Canadian models

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II[*1].

■ One-touch turn signal

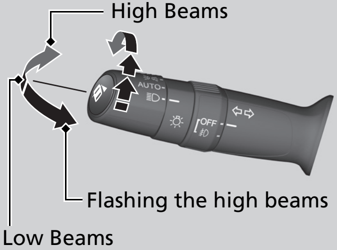
When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times. This feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Light Switches

Manual Operation



Turns on parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Turns on headlights, parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting or position of the ignition switch.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

Canadian models

■ Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in P. (Continuously Variable Transmission models)
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of P (Continuously Variable Transmission models) and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

≫Light Switches

Models with smart entry system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

Models without smart entry system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

All models

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

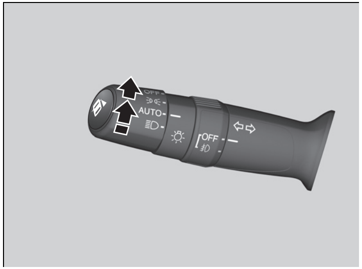
➲ **Lights On Indicator** P. 92

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Continued

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)


OFF
AUTO
OFF

Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON (II)*1.

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

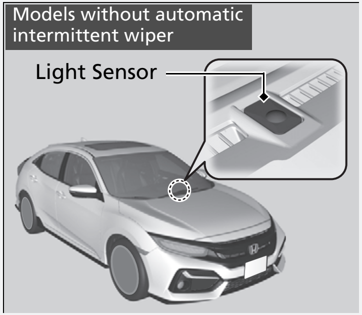
The headlights come on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

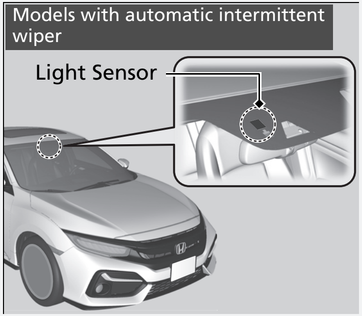
- ▶ Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

》Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.


Models without automatic intermittent wiper
Light Sensor


Models with automatic intermittent wiper
Light Sensor

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you remove the key or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK $\boxed{0}$[*1] with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

[*1] Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

U.S. models

You can adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
Max	Bright
High	
Mid	
Low	Dark
Min	

➜ **Customized Features** P. 134, 350

Headlight Integration with Wipers

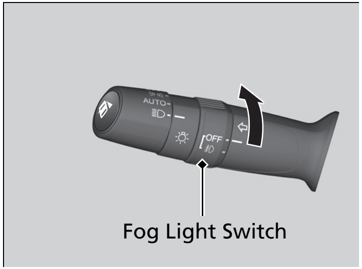
This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.
The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.
➜ **Customized Features** P. 134, 350

Fog Lights*



When the low beam headlights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.

Daytime Running Lights

The parking/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON [II]*1.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO** or **OFF**.
- The parking brake is released.

The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

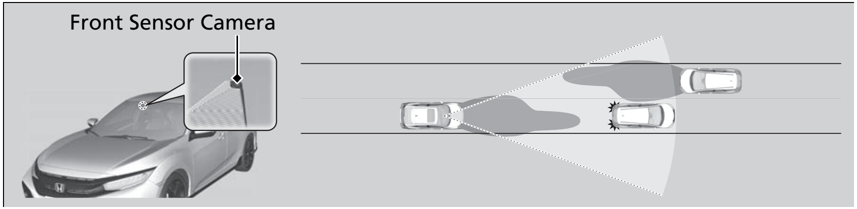
---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

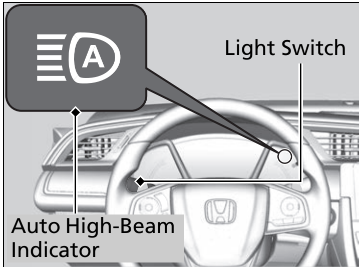
Auto High-Beam

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.



How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.



- The ignition switch is in ON II*1.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out the following procedure and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it while driving.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

»Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognize varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windshield, refer to the following.

➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windshield around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windshield, be careful not to apply the windshield cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto-high beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

Switching to high beam:	⇔	Switching to low beam:
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 25 mph (40 km/h) or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.		One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 15 mph (24 km/h) or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it within about one second while driving.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it while driving. The auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to ≣D.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

≫How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

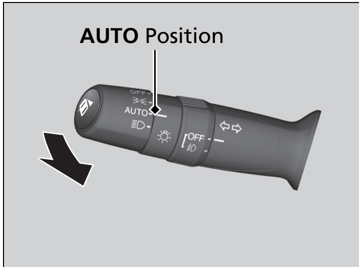
- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windshield frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light toward the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windshield wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

You can turn the auto high-beam system off. If you want to turn the system off or on, turn the ignition switch to ON $\boxed{II}$*1, then carry out the following procedures while the vehicle is stationary.



To turn the system off:

With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever toward you and hold it for at least 40 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks twice, release the lever.

To turn the system on:

With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever toward you and hold it for at least 30 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks once, release the lever.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

≫How to Use the Auto High-Beam

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed toward the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

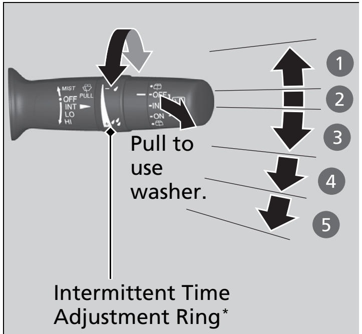
≫How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

If you turn the auto high-beam system off, the system does not operate until you turn the system on.

Park in a safe place before turning the system off or on.

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers/Washers



Pull to use washer.

Intermittent Time Adjustment Ring*

① **MIST**
② **OFF**
③ **INT*2/AUTO*3**
④ **LO**: Low speed wipe
⑤ **HI**: High speed wipe

The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON $\boxed{II}$*1.

MIST

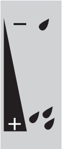
The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

Wiper switch (OFF, INT*2/AUTO*3, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, then stop.

»Wipers and Washers

NOTICE
Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring
If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation’s shortest delay setting (💧) and the **LO** setting become the same.

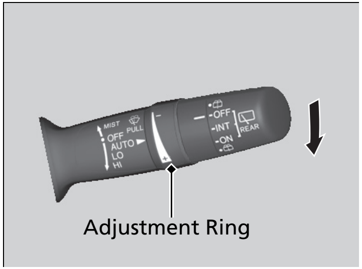
NOTICE
In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defroster to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2: Models with manual intermittent operation
*3: Models with automatic intermittent operation

* Not available on all models

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity

Low sensitivity

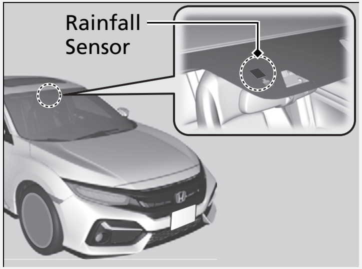
High sensitivity

»Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.
Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY [I] or LOCK [0]*1, then remove the obstacle.

»Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

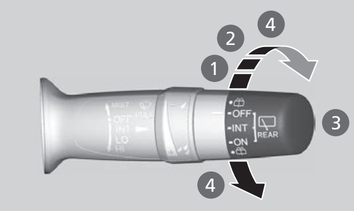
---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Rear Wiper/Washer*



1. **INT**: Intermittent
2. **ON**: Continuous wipe
3. **OFF**
4. Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the ignition switch is in ON $\boxed{\text{II}}$*1.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer (⌸)

Sprays on the rear window while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse

When you put the transmission into $\boxed{\text{R}}$ with the windshield wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

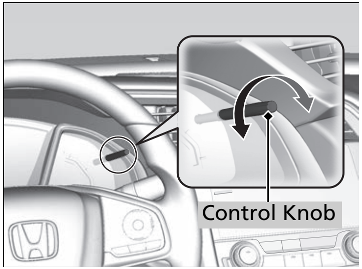
Windshield Wiper Operation	Rear Wiper Operation
Intermittent	Intermittent
Low speed wipe High speed wipe	Continuous

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Brightness Control

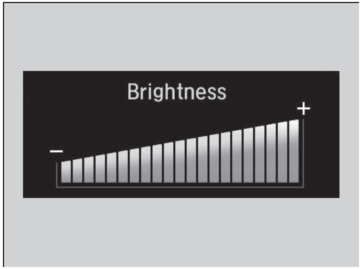


When the brightness of the meter will be reduced, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

Brighten: Turn the knob to the right.

Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous display.



■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:

- The ignition switch is in ON II*1.
- The light switch is in any position other than **OFF** and it is dark outside.

To cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

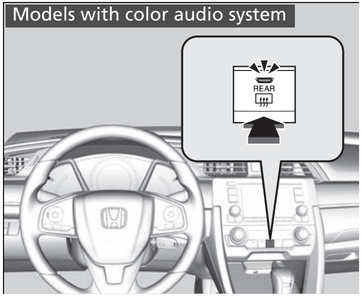
---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

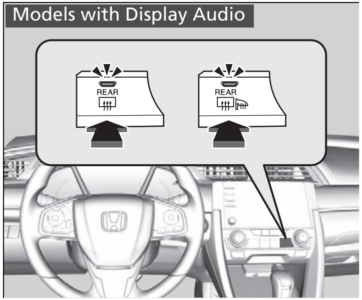
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button

Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON [II]*1.

Models with color audio system



Models with Display Audio



The rear defogger and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, it does not automatically switch off.

▶▶Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged.
Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When the ignition switch is turned to ON [II]*1 and the outside temperature is below 41°F (5°C), the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

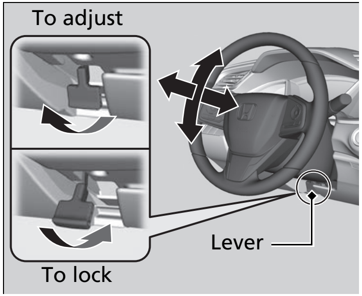
---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
   ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
   ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
   ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

»Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

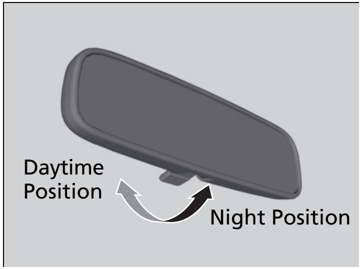
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

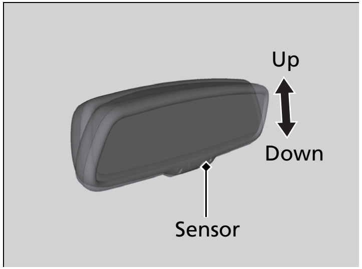
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



2.0 L engine models

When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

»Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

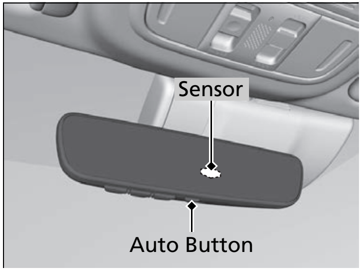
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

» **Front Seats** P. 193

»Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in R.

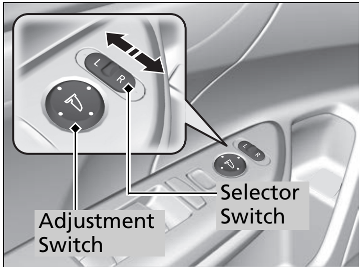
* Not available on all models



1.5 L engine models

When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. Press the auto button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the auto indicator comes on.

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON II[*1].

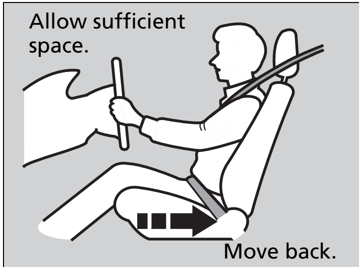
■ Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

[*1]: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

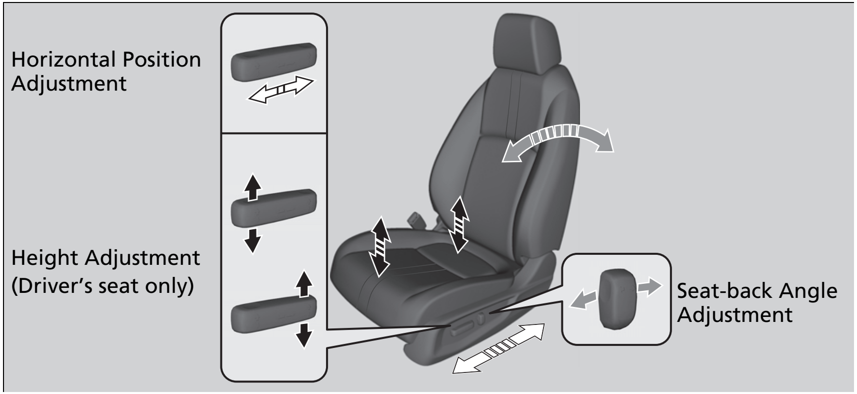
Front Seats


Allow sufficient space.
Move back.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front power seat(s)*


Horizontal Position Adjustment
Height Adjustment (Driver's seat only)
Seat-back Angle Adjustment

»Adjusting the Seats

⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

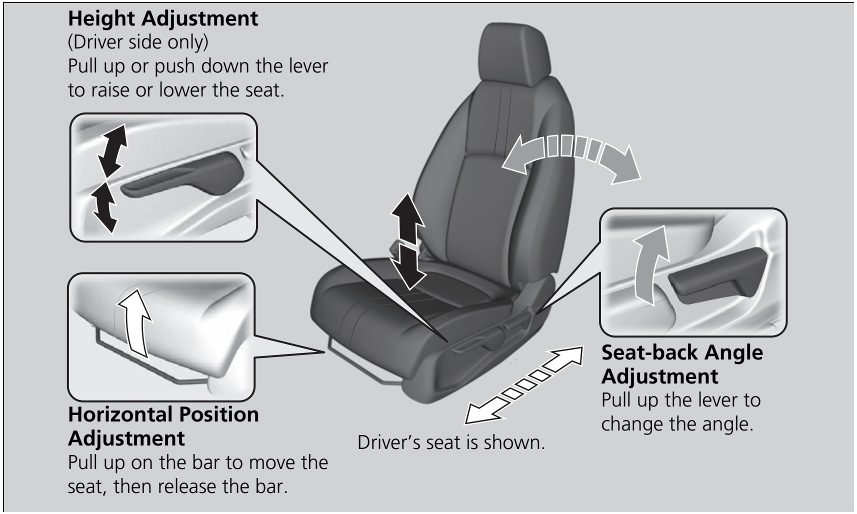
Always make seat adjustments before driving.

---

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*



Height Adjustment
(Driver side only)
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

Horizontal Position Adjustment
Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

Driver’s seat is shown.

Seat-back Angle Adjustment
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

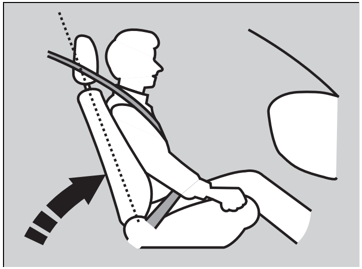
≫Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

---

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

»Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

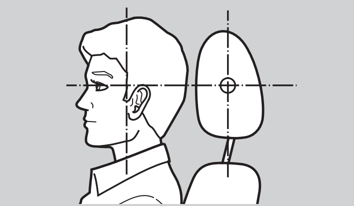
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

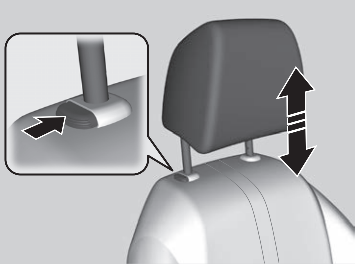
1.5 L engine models

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions



Position head in the center of the head restraint.

Front head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

≫Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

1.5 L engine models

Removing and Reinstalling the Front Head Restraints

Front head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Front Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints*, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

≫Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

⚠WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

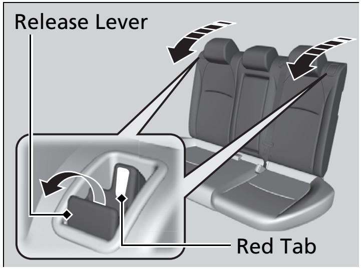
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

* Not available on all models

Rear Seats

■ Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.



Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.

»Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seat-back(s) can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the cargo area.

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks, so that the red tabs in the release lever go down.
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back.

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the weight sensors in the front passenger seat to work improperly.

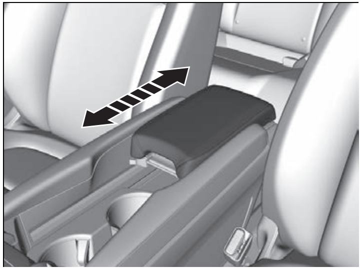
➔ **Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator** P. 61

Make sure all items in the cargo area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

Armrest

Using the Front Seat Armrest

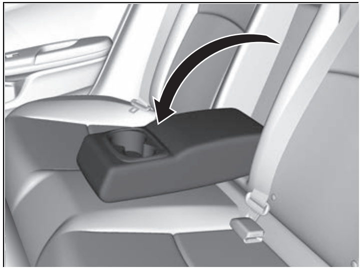


The console lid can be used as an armrest.

To adjust:

Slide the armrest to desired position.

Using the Rear Seat Armrest*

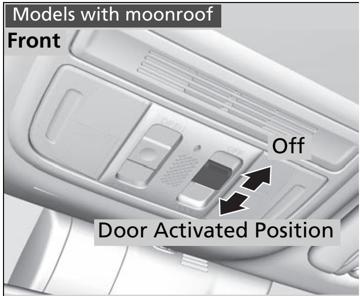


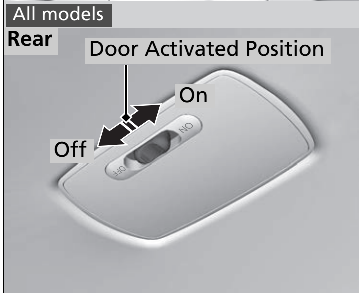
Pull down the armrest in the center backrest.

* Not available on all models

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches





ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

Models without smart entry system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

» Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.
The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

Models without smart entry system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

Models with smart entry system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.
» **Customized Features** P. 134, 350

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.

Models without smart entry system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON II.

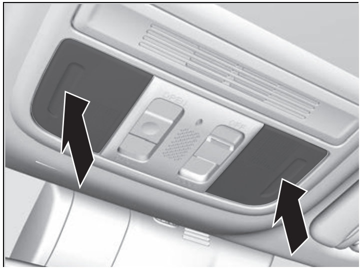
Models with smart entry system

- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

Continued

Map Lights



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

Interior Light Switches

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

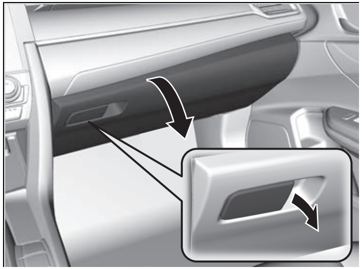
Map Lights

Models with moonroof

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

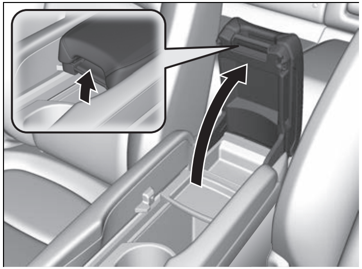
Glove Box

⚠WARNING

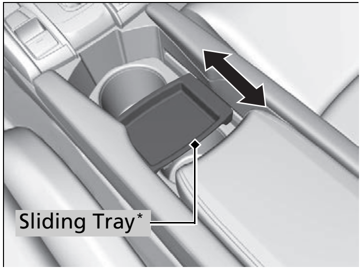
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

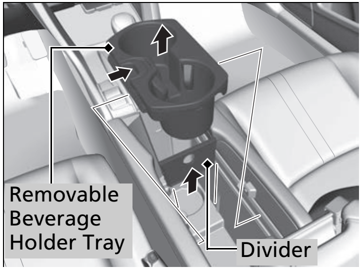
Console Compartment



Your vehicle has a multi-function center console. It includes a storage compartment, an armrest, and a sliding tray*.
Slide the armrest to the rearmost position. Pull the handle to open the console compartment.



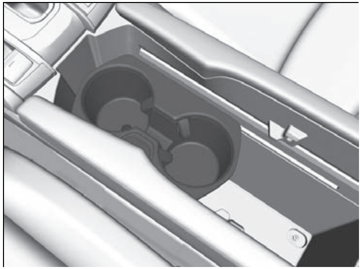
You can put small items in the sliding tray* located in the console compartment lid. Slide the sliding tray forward or rearward.



You can create more storage space by removing the removable beverage holder tray and a divider.

* Not available on all models

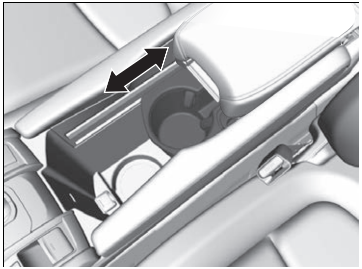
Beverage Holders



■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.

▶ Move the armrest rearward to use the beverage holders.



To place a short beverage container: Move the removable beverage holder tray forward.

To place a tall beverage container: Move the removable beverage holder tray rearward.

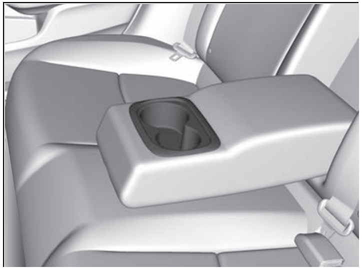
≫Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

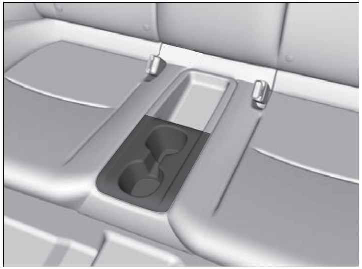
Continued



■Rear seat beverage holders*

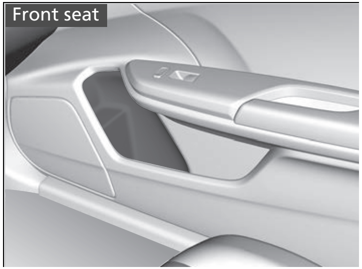
1.5 L engine models

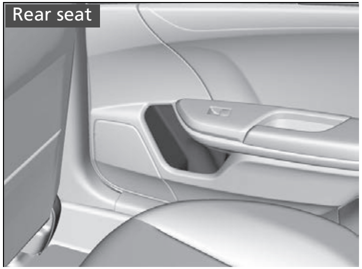
Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.



2.0 L engine models

Are located on the rear seat.


Front seat

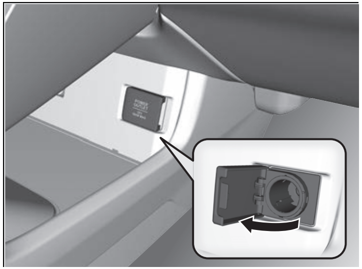

Rear seat

■ Door beverage holders

Continued

Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**[*1].



Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

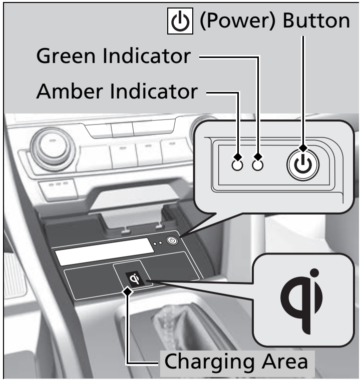
---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Canadian models

Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge a compatible device on the area indicated by the ⓠ mark as follows:



1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the ⏻ (power) button.
   - ▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
   - ▶ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
   - ▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the center of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
   - ▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

▷▷Wireless Charger*

⚠CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- **Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.**
- **Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.**
- **Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.**
- **Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.**
- **Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.**
- **Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.**

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simultaneously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Move the device to the center of the charging area where is located.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

≫Wireless Charger*

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging.
The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches can go wrong.

“Qi” and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:
- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as TV station, electric power plant, or gas station.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

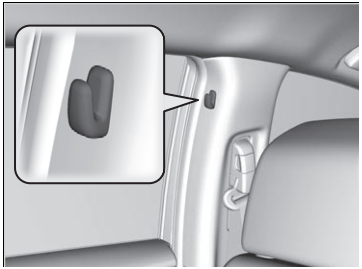
Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All the doors and the hatch are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the smart entry system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

---

* Not available on all models

Coat Hooks



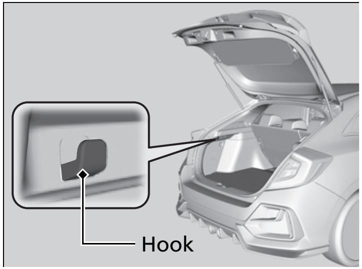
There are coat hooks on the left and right door pillars.

Coat Hooks

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

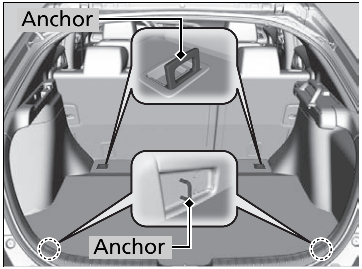
Continued

Cargo Hook



The cargo hook in the cargo area can be used to hang a light items.

Tie-down Anchors



The tie-down anchors on the cargo area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

Cargo Hook

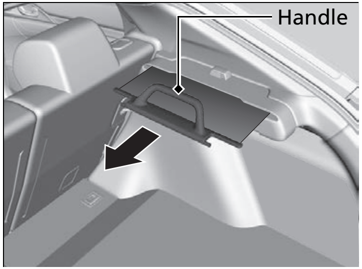
NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 6 lbs (3 kg) on the cargo hook.
Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the cargo area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

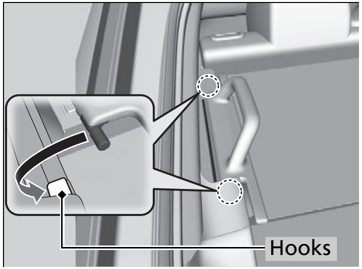
Cargo Area Cover*



The cargo area cover can be used to conceal your parcels and protect them from direct sunlight.

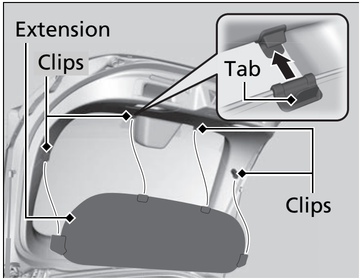
To extend:

Pull the handle fully toward the hook on the other side and let the hook catch hold of the handle.



To retract:

Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.



Cargo area cover extension

The extension is attached at the back of the hatch by four clips. It extends the covering area when you close the hatch. To remove, unclip the extension from the hatch. When reinstalling the extension, make sure that the tabs come to the near side.

Cargo Area Cover*

Do not access parcels in the cargo area while driving. This may cause injury if you have to brake hard.

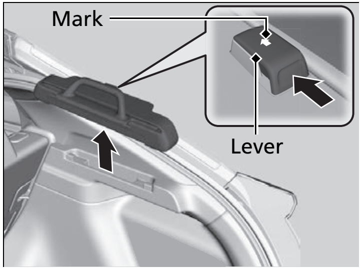
Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the cargo area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent cargo area cover damage:
- Do not place items on the cargo area cover.
- Do not put weight on the cargo area cover.

---

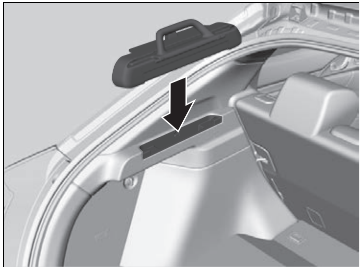
* Not available on all models

Continued



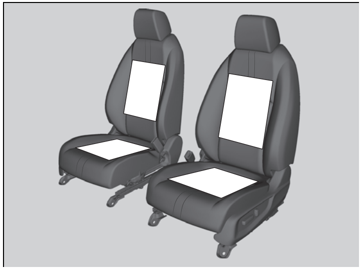
■ To remove:

Push and hold the lever in the direction of the arrow mark on the housing and lift the housing out of its position.

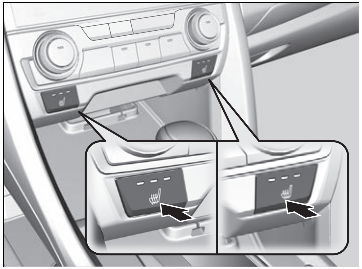


The housing can be installed on either side of the cargo area.

Front Seat Heaters*



The ignition switch must be in ON [II]*1 to use the seat heaters.



Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

»Front Seat Heaters*

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

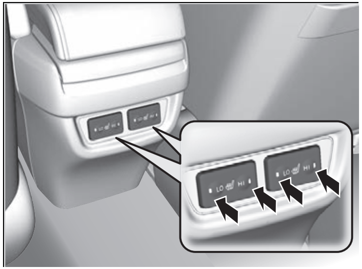
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Rear Seat Heaters*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.

There is no heater in the rear center seating position.

While in **HI**, the heater cycles on and off.

▶ The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. Briefly press the switch on the opposite side to turn the heater off. The indicator will be off.

Rear Seat Heaters*

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

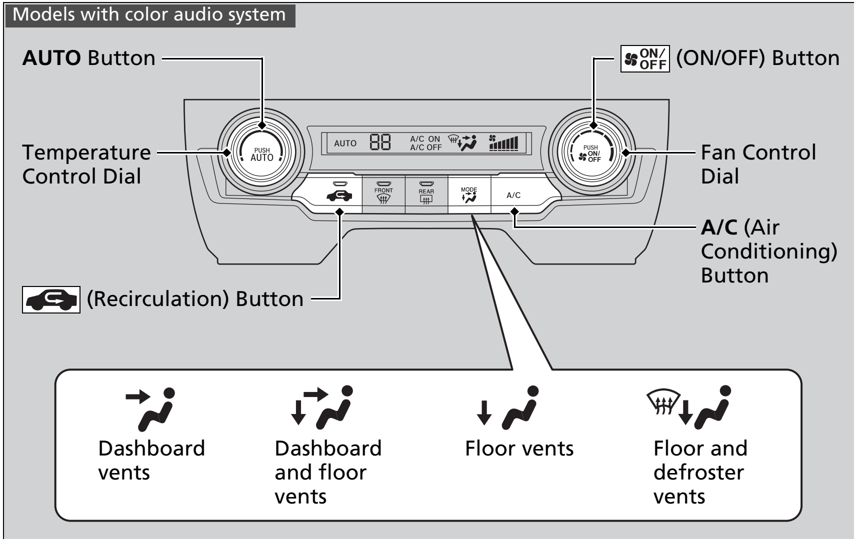
In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

---

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.


Models with color audio system
AUTO Button
ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button
Temperature Control Dial
Fan Control Dial
A/C (Air Conditioning) Button
(Recirculation) Button
PUSH AUTO
PUSH ON/OFF
AUTO
A/C ON
A/C OFF
FRONT
REAR
MODE
A/C
Dashboard vents
Dashboard and floor vents
Floor vents
Floor and defroster vents

Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.

3. Press the ON/OFF (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

▶▶Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons/icons* are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button/icon* that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button/icon* that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

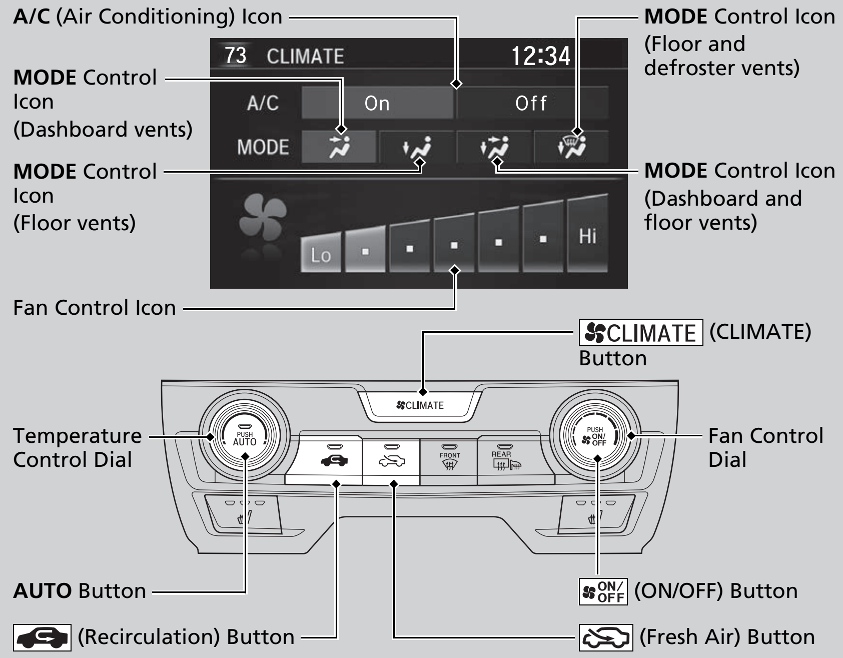
---

* Not available on all models

Continued

Models with Display Audio

Models without SYNC button


A/C (Air Conditioning) Icon
MODE Control Icon (Dashboard vents)
MODE Control Icon (Floor vents)
Fan Control Icon
MODE Control Icon (Floor and defroster vents)
MODE Control Icon (Dashboard and floor vents)
73 CLIMATE 12:34
A/C
On
Off
MODE
Lo
Hi
CLIMATE (CLIMATE) Button
CLIMATE
Temperature Control Dial
PUSH AUTO
PUSH ON/OFF
FRONT
REAR
Fan Control Dial
AUTO Button
ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button
(Recirculation) Button
(Fresh Air) Button

Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the ON/OFF (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

≫Using Automatic Climate Control

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

Models with ECON button

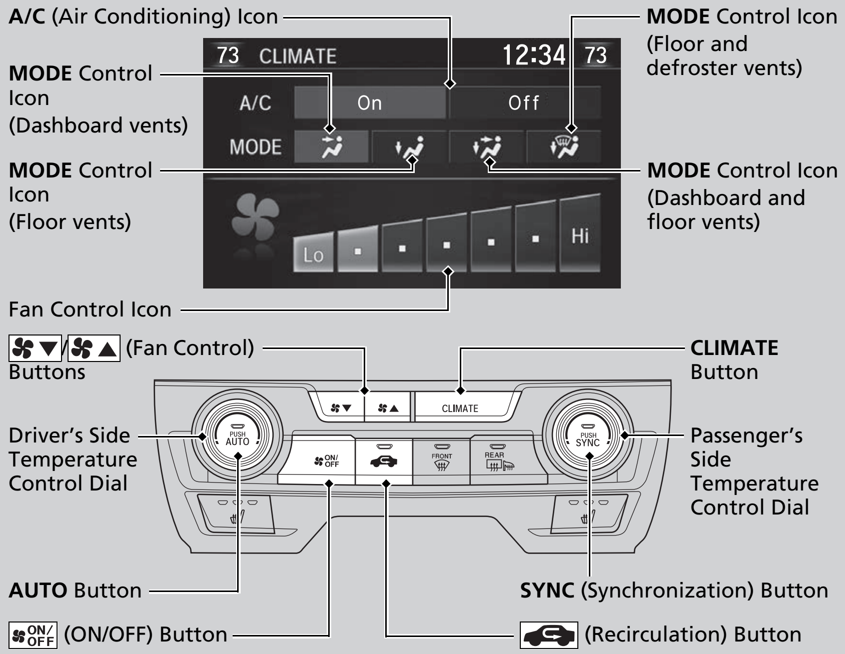
While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

Models with Display Audio

Press the **CLIMATE** button to display **A/C**, **MODE**, fan control information on the audio/information screen to operate manually. Select icon to turn on or off **A/C**, change the vent mode, or change the fan speed.

Models with Display Audio

Models with SYNC button


A/C (Air Conditioning) Icon
MODE Control Icon (Floor and defroster vents)
MODE Control Icon (Dashboard vents)
MODE Control Icon (Floor vents)
MODE Control Icon (Dashboard and floor vents)
73 CLIMATE
12:34
73
A/C
On
Off
MODE
Lo
Hi
Fan Control Icon
🞂▼/🞂▲ (Fan Control) Buttons
CLIMATE Button
CLIMATE
Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
PUSH AUTO
ON/OFF
FRONT
REAR
PUSH SYNC
Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
AUTO Button
SYNC (Synchronization) Button
ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button
(Recirculation) Button

Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.
3. Press the ON/OFF (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

Continued

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Models without fresh air button

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle’s interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

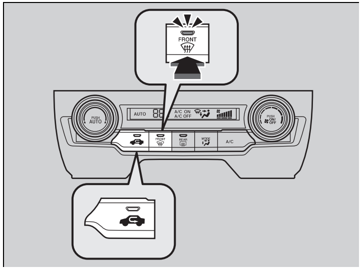
Models with fresh air button

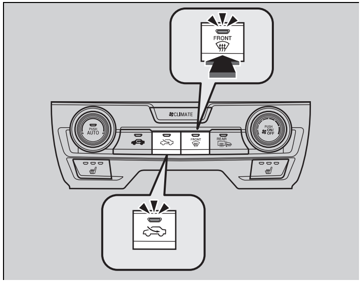
Press the (recirculation) or (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

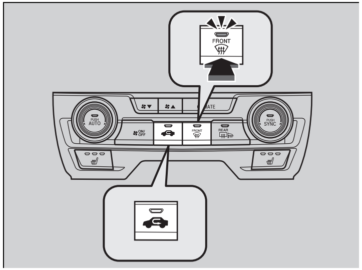
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle’s interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Defrosting the Windshield and Windows


FRONT
PUSH AUTO
AUTO
A/C ON
A/C OFF
FRONT
REAR
MODE
A/C
PUSH ON/OFF


FRONT
CLIMATE
PUSH AUTO
FRONT
REAR
PUSH ON/OFF


FRONT
PUSH AUTO
ON/OFF
FRONT
REAR
PUSH SYNC

Pressing the FRONT (windshield defroster) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Continued

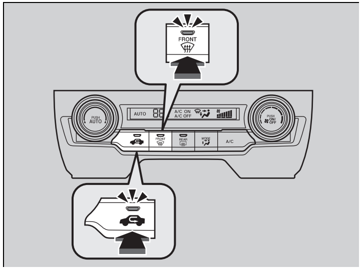
≫Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

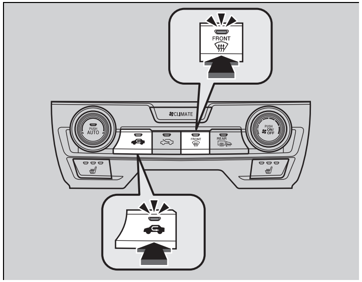
For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

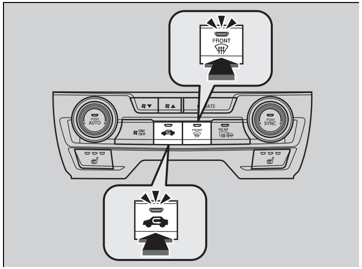
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows


FRONT
PUSH
AUTO
A/C ON
A/C OFF
FRONT
REAR
MODE
A/C
PUSH
ON/OFF


FRONT
CLIMATE
PUSH
AUTO
FRONT
REAR
PUSH
ON/OFF

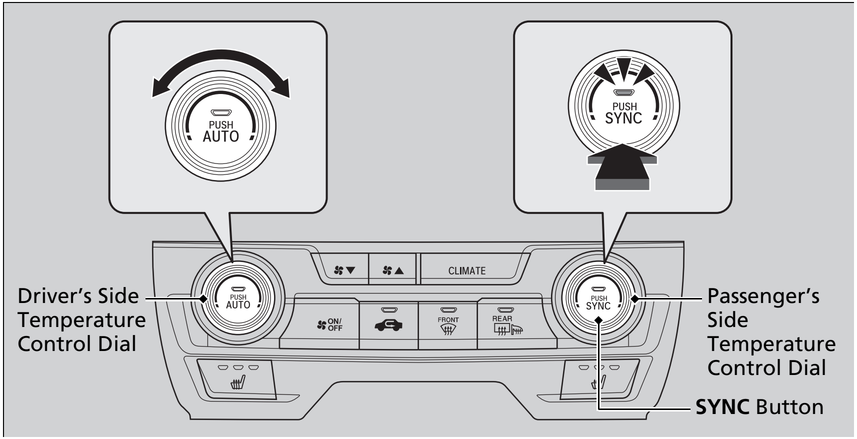

FRONT
PUSH
AUTO
ON/OFF
FRONT
REAR
PUSH
SYNC

1. Press the FRONT button.
2. Press the ↺ button.

»To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Synchronization Mode*


PUSH
AUTO
PUSH
SYNC
CLIMATE
ON/
OFF
FRONT
REAR
Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
SYNC Button

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
   ▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.

2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button or change the passenger's side temperature setting to return to dual mode.

≫Synchronization Mode*

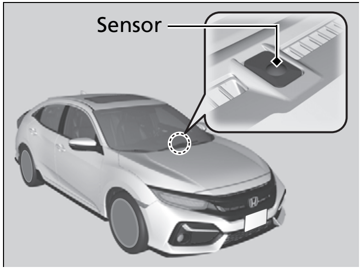
When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

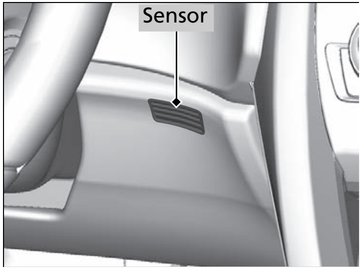
When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

---

* Not available on all models

Automatic Climate Control Sensors





The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System

About Your Audio System................226
USB Port(s).......................................227
Audio System Theft Protection 229
Audio Remote Controls....................230

Models with color audio system

Audio System Basic Operation 233
Audio/Information Screen 234
Adjusting the Sound 238
Display Setup 239
Playing the AM/FM Radio.................240
Playing an iPod 242
Playing a USB Flash Drive 245
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio.................248

Models with Display Audio

Audio System Basic Operation 251
Audio/Information Screen 252
Adjusting the Sound 273
Display Setup 274
Voice Control Operation 276
Playing AM/FM Radio.......................280
Playing SiriusXM® Radio* 283
Playing an iPod 291
Song By Voice™ (SBV)......................294
Playing Pandora®*1...........................298
Playing a USB Flash Drive 300
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 303
HondaLink® 305
Wi-Fi Connection............................310
Siri Eyes Free...................................312
Apple CarPlay 313
Android Auto 316

Audio Error Messages......................320
General Information on the Audio System..324
Customized Features................343, 350
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*.. 380
***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®**..... 383, 410

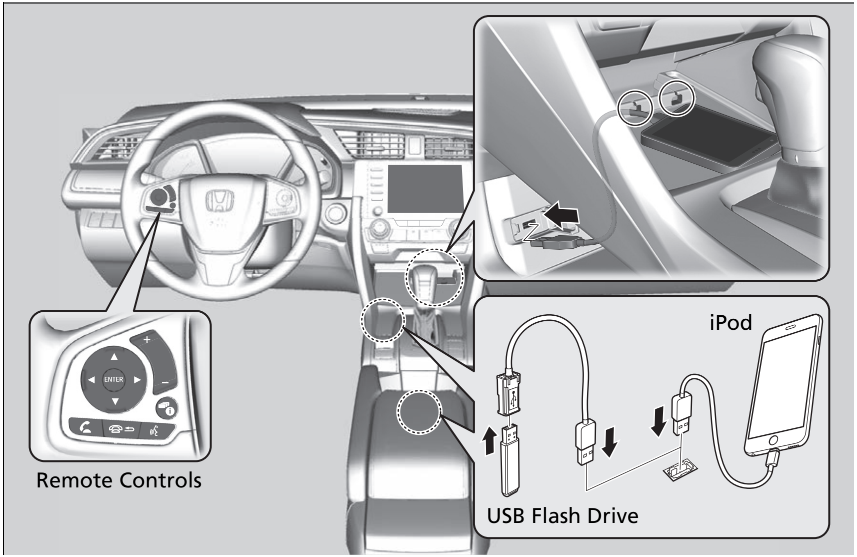
*1: Available only on U.S. models.

* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio and SiriusXM® Radio service*. It can also play USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface*.



About Your Audio System

SiriusXM® Radio* is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on SiriusXM® Radio*, contact a dealer.

General Information on the Audio System P. 324

SiriusXM® Radio* is available in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

SiriusXM®* is a registered trademark of SiriusXM Radio, Inc.

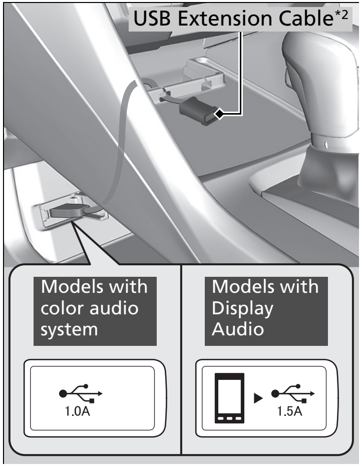
iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

---

* Not available on all models

USB Port(s)



Models with color audio system

▶ The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive and connecting a cellular phone and charging device.

Models with Display Audio

▶ The USB port (1.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

U.S. models

Your vehicle comes supplied with a USB extension cable that runs from the USB port up through to the front console.

≫USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- You may also use your own USB cable.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 1.5A of power. It does not output 1.5A unless requested by the device. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

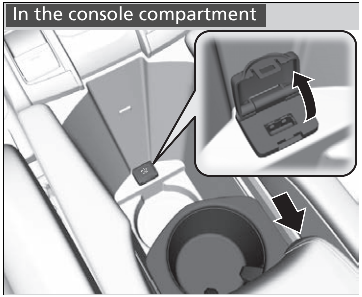
Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Pre-installed on U.S. models only.

Continued



■In the console compartment*

The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on the USB flash drive and connecting a cellular phone and charging device.

▶ Move the removable beverage holder tray rearward.

* Not available on all models

Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

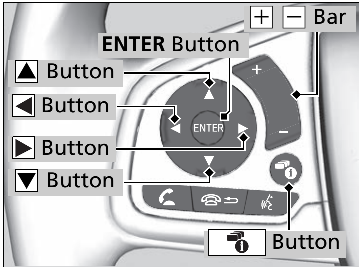
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
  ▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.



▲ ▼ Buttons

Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:
FM→AM→SiriusXM®*→USB→iPod→*Bluetooth*® Audio→Pandora®*→Apple CarPlay/Android Auto*→Audio Apps*

Models with Display Audio

ENTER Button

- When listening to the radio and SiriusXM®*

1. Press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to a USB flash drive

1. Press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of files in that folder.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a file, then press **ENTER**.

»Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the ☎↩ (Hang-up/back) button to go back to the previous command or cancel a command.

Press the ℹ button to switch display.

➔ **Switching the Display** P. 252

* Not available on all models

- When listening to an iPod

1. Press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.
3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
   ▶ Press **ENTER** and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until the desired mode you want to listen to is displayed.

- When listening to Pandora®*

1. Press **ENTER** to display the station list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio

1. Press **ENTER** to display the track list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

* Not available on all models

Continued

⊞ ⊟ (Volume) Bar

Press ⊞: To increase the volume.
Press ⊟: To decrease the volume.

◀ ▶ Buttons

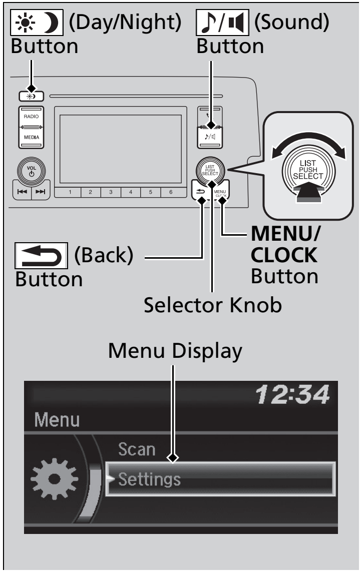
- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press ◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press ▶: To skip to the next song.
  Press ◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold ▶: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold ◀: To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to Pandora®*
  Press ▶: To skip to the next track.
  Press and hold ▶: To select the next station.
  Press and hold ◀: To select the previous station.

* Not available on all models

Audio System Basic Operation

Models with color audio system

To use the audio system, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II.


☼☽ (Day/Night) Button
♪/🔈 (Sound) Button
↩ (Back) Button
MENU/ CLOCK Button
Selector Knob
Menu Display
RADIO
MEDIA
VOL
LIST PUSH SELECT
MENU CLOCK
12:34
Menu
Scan
Settings

Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press ⊙ to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

Selector Knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press ⊙ to set your selection.

MENU/CLOCK button: Press to select any mode.

The available modes include wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

↩ **(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

♪/🔈 **button:** Press to select the sound setting mode.

☼☽ **(Day/Night) button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press ☼☽, then adjust the brightness using ⟲.

- ▶ Each time you press ☼☽, the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.

≫Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate ⟲ to select.

Press ⊙ to enter.

Menu Items

- ➡ **Adjust Clock** P. 144
- ➡ **Wallpaper Setup** P. 236
- ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 238
- ➡ **Display Setup** P. 239
- ➡ **Customized Features** P. 343

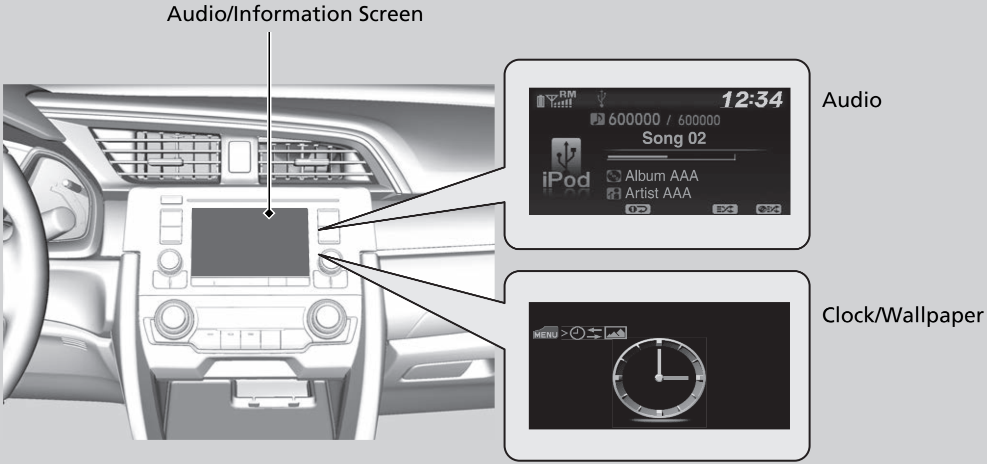
Press the button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

- ➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 230

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display


Audio/Information Screen
12:34
600000 / 600000
Song 02
iPod
Album AAA
Artist AAA
Audio
MENU
Clock/Wallpaper

■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

■ Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

■ Change display

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ↻ to select **Display Change**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ↻ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ⊙.
   - ▶ If you want to return to the audio display, select **Audio**.

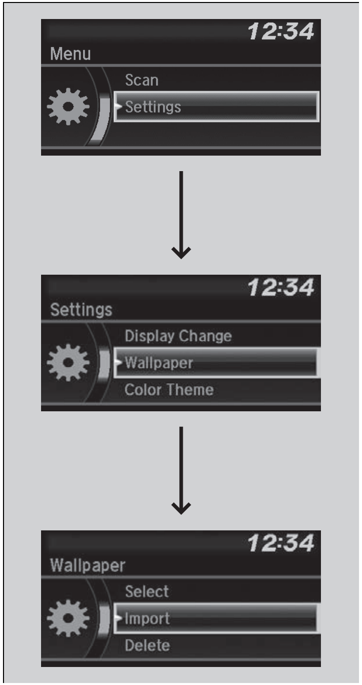
Continued

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   USB Port(s) P. 227
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate ⟳ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟳ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ⊙.
5. Rotate ⟳ to select **Import**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate ⟳ to select a desired picture, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press ⊙ to save the picture.
8. Press ⊙ to select **OK**.
9. Rotate ⟳ to select a location to save the picture, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive’s root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 × 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, a message appears.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ↻ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ↻ to select **Select**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate ↻ to select a desired wallpaper, then press ⊙.

■ Delete wallpaper

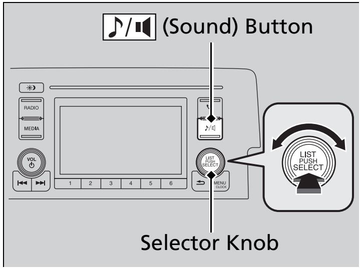
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ↻ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ↻ to select **Delete**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate ↻ to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press ⊙.
6. Rotate ↻ to select **Yes**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

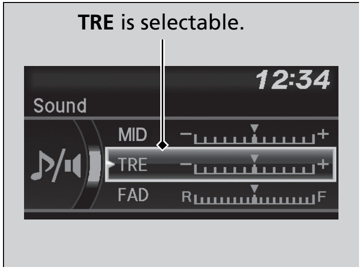
≫Wallpaper Setup

To go back to the previous screen, press the ↩ (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound


♪/🔈 (Sound) Button
RADIO
MEDIA
VOL
LIST PUSH SELECT
MENU CLOCK
1
2
3
4
5
6
Selector Knob


TRE is selectable.
12:34
Sound
MID
TRE
FAD
−
+
R
F

Press the ♪/🔈 (Sound) button, and rotate ⟳ to scroll through the following choices:

BAS	Bass
↕	
MID	Middle
↕	
TRE	Treble
↕	
FAD	Fader
↕	
BAL	Balance
↕	
SVC	Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation

Rotate ⟳ to adjust the sound setting, then press ⊙.

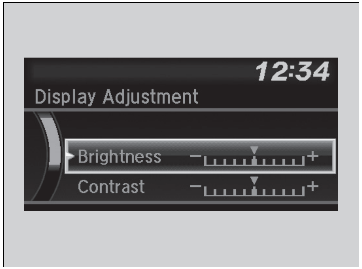
≫Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

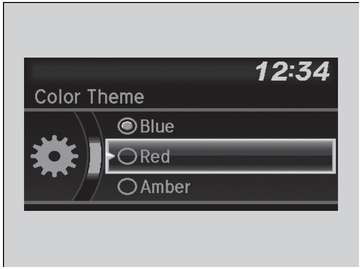
You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness


12:34
Display Adjustment
Brightness
Contrast

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟳ to select **Display Adjustment**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟳ to select **Brightness**, then press ⊙.
5. Rotate ⟳ to adjust the setting, then press ⊙.

Changing the Screen's Color Theme

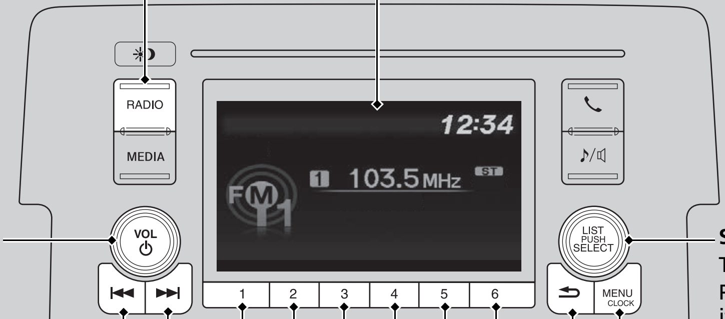

12:34
Color Theme
Blue
Red
Amber

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟳ to select **Color Theme**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟳ to select the setting you want, then press ⊙.

»Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Playing the AM/FM Radio



RADIO Button
Press to select a band.

Audio/Information Screen

VOL/⏻ (Volume/power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

Preset Buttons (1-6)
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.

To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

Selector Knob
Turn to tune the radio frequency.
Press, and then turn to select an item. After that, press again to make your selection.

MENU/CLOCK Button
Press to display the menu items.

⮌ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.

Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press ⊙ while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate ↻ to select the station, then press ⊙.

■ Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press ⊙ while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Update List**, then press ⊙.

■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ↻ to select **RDS Settings**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ↻ to select **Radio Text**, then press ⊙.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Scan**, then press ⊙.

To turn off scan, press ⊙.

≫Playing the AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the audio source selecting button on the steering wheel.
➔ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 230

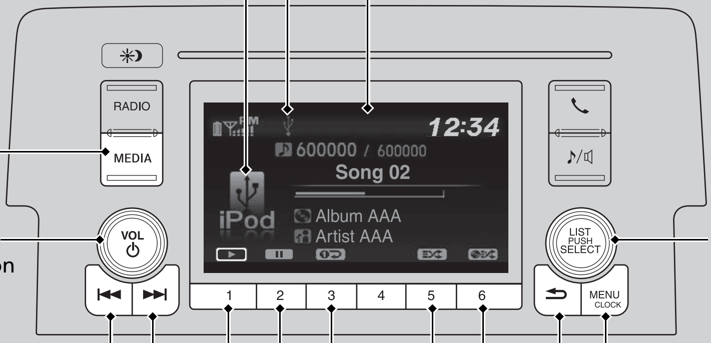
≫Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

USB Port(s) P. 227


RADIO
MEDIA
12:34
600000 / 600000
Song 02
iPod
Album AAA
Artist AAA
VOL
1
2
3
4
5
6
LIST
PUSH
SELECT
MENU
CLOCK

USB Indicator
Appears when an iPod is connected.

Audio/Information Screen

Album Art

MEDIA Button
Press to select iPod (if connected).

VOL/⏻ (Volume/power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to change songs.
Press and hold to move rapidly within a song.

Play Button
Press to resume a song.

Pause Button
Press to pause a song.

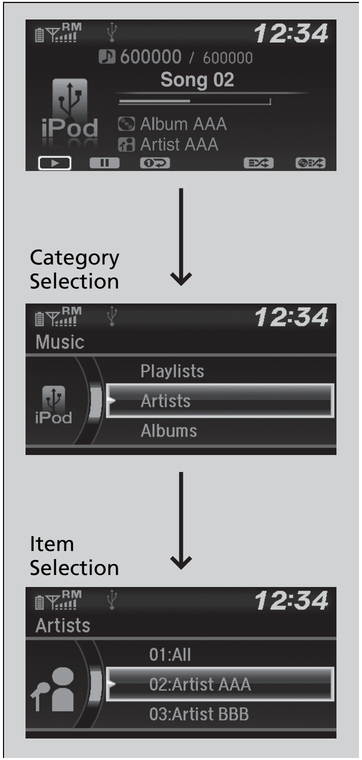
Play Mode Buttons
Press to select a play mode.

Selector Knob
Turn to change songs.
Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

MENU/CLOCK Button
Press to display the menu items.

↩ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.

How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob


12:34
600000 / 600000
Song 02
iPod
Album AAA
Artist AAA
Category Selection
12:34
Music
Playlists
Artists
Albums
iPod
Item Selection
12:34
Artists
01:All
02:Artist AAA
03:Artist BBB

1. Press ↓ to display the iPod music list.
2. Rotate ↻ to select a category.
3. Press ↓ to display a list of items in the category.
4. Rotate ↻ to select an item, then press ↓.
   ▶ Press ↓ and rotate ↻ repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

Continued

»Playing an iPod

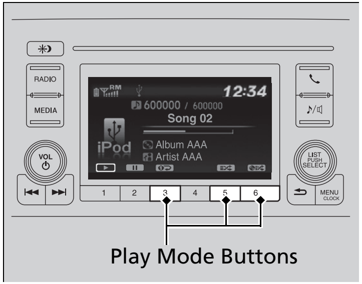
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle’s audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 320

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.


RADIO
MEDIA
VOL
12:34
600000 / 600000
Song 02
iPod
Album AAA
Artist AAA
LIST PUSH SELECT
MENU CLOCK
1
2
3
4
5
6
Play Mode Buttons

Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.
Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

■ To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

≫How to Select a Play Mode

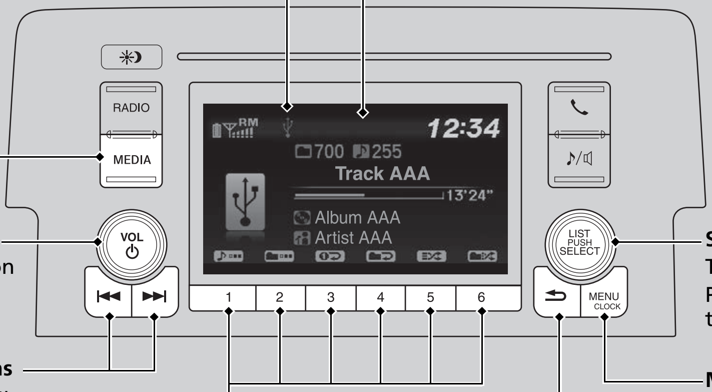
Play Mode Menu Items
🔀 **Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.
🔀 **Shuffle:** Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.
🔂 **Repeat One Track:** Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
Rotate ↻ to select **Play Mode**, then press ⊙.
Rotate ↻ to select a mode, then press ⊙.
To turn it off, rotate ↻ to select **Normal Play**, then press ⊙.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC[*1] format.
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

➔ **USB Port(s)** P. 227



USB Indicator
Appears when a USB flash drive is connected.

Audio/Information Screen

MEDIA Button
Press to select USB flash drive (if connected).

VOL/⏻ (Volume/power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to change files.
Press and hold to move rapidly within a file.

Play Mode Buttons (1-6)
Press to select a play mode.

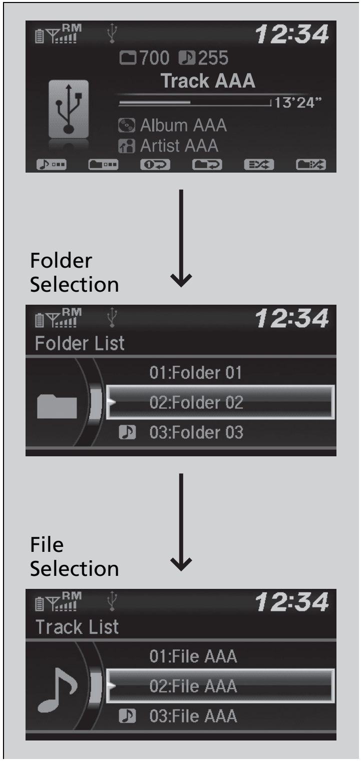
Selector Knob
Turn to change files.
Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

MENU/CLOCK Button
Press to display the menu items.

↩ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

[*1] Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob


12:34
700 255
Track AAA
13'24"
Album AAA
Artist AAA
Folder Selection
12:34
Folder List
01:Folder 01
02:Folder 02
03:Folder 03
File Selection
12:34
Track List
01:File AAA
02:File AAA
03:File AAA

1. Press ⊚ to display a folder list.
2. Rotate ⊚ to select a folder.
3. Press ⊚ to display a list of files in that folder.
4. Rotate ⊚ to select a file, then press ⊚.

≫Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➡ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 324

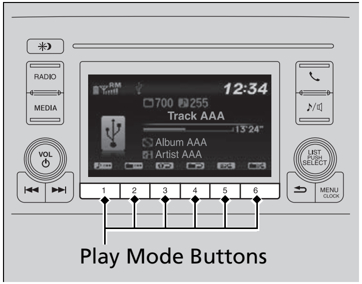
Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 320

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



Play Mode Buttons

Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.
Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

≫How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat

Repeat One Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.
Repeat One Track: Repeats the current file.

Random

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.
Random All: Plays all files in random order.

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.
Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
Rotate ⟲ to select **Play Mode**, then press ⊙.
Rotate ⟲ to select a mode, then press ⊙.
To turn it off, rotate ⟲ to select **Normal Play**, then press ⊙.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

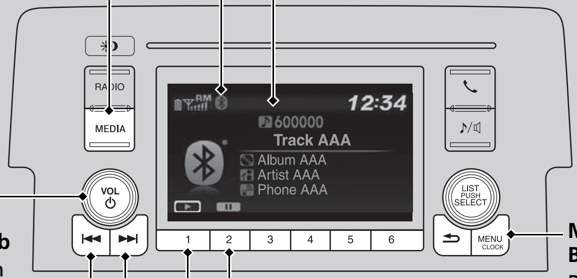
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

➲ **Phone Setup** P. 390

MEDIA Button
Press to select *Bluetooth*® Audio.

***Bluetooth* Indicator**
Appears when your phone is connected to HFL.

Audio/Information Screen



VOL/⏻ (Volume/ Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

MENU/CLOCK Button
Press to display the menu items.

Pause Button (Preset 2)
Press to pause a file.

Play Button (Preset 1)
Press to resume a file.

⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to change files.

≫Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones, visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

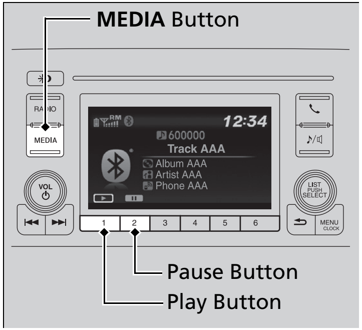
Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files


MEDIA Button
RADIO
MEDIA
12:34
600000
Track AAA
Album AAA
Artist AAA
Phone AAA
VOL
LIST
PUSH
SELECT
1
2
3
4
5
6
MENU
CLOCK
Pause Button
Play Button

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFL.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*® Audio Source is selected.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

To pause or resume a file

Press a **Play** or **Pause** button to select a mode.

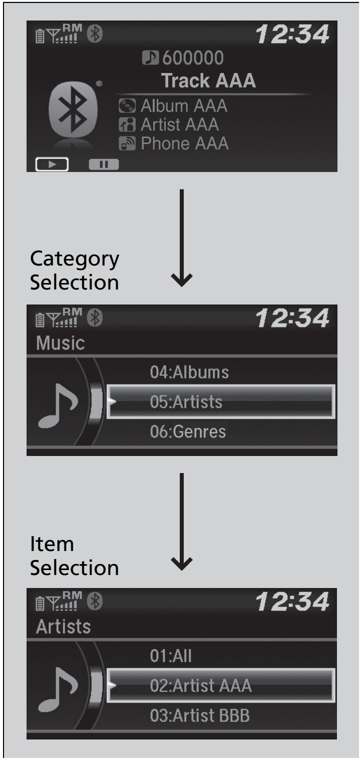
▶▶To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

If any audio device is connected to the USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob


12:34
600000
Track AAA
Album AAA
Artist AAA
Phone AAA
Category Selection
12:34
Music
04:Albums
05:Artists
06:Genres
Item Selection
12:34
Artists
01:All
02:Artist AAA
03:Artist BBB

1. Press ⊙ to display the music search list.

2. Rotate ↻ to select a category.

3. Press ⊙ to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate ↻ to select an item, then press ⊙.

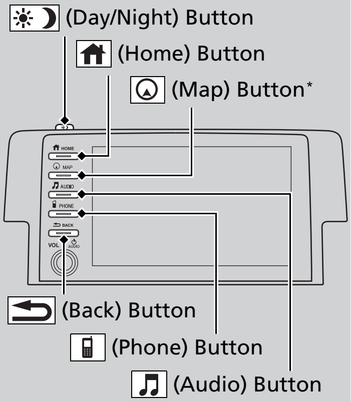
▶ Press ⊙ and rotate ↻ repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

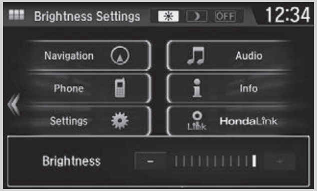
≫How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

Models with Display Audio

To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY [I] or ON [II]*1.


☀☽ (Day/Night) Button
⌂ (Home) Button
◎ (Map) Button*
HOME
MAP
AUDIO
PHONE
BACK
VOL
AUDIO
↩ (Back) Button
📱 (Phone) Button
♫ (Audio) Button


Brightness Settings
OFF
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Brightness
-
+

⌂ **(Home) button**: Press to go to the home screen.

➡ **Using the audio/information screen** P. 253

◎ **(Map) button***: Press to display the map screen.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

♫ **(Audio) button**: Press to display the audio screen.

📱 **(Phone) button**: Press to display the phone screen.

↩ **(Back) button**: Press to go back to the previous screen.

☀☽ **(Day/Night) button**: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness. Press ☀☽ once and select [–] or [+] to make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you press ☀☽, the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

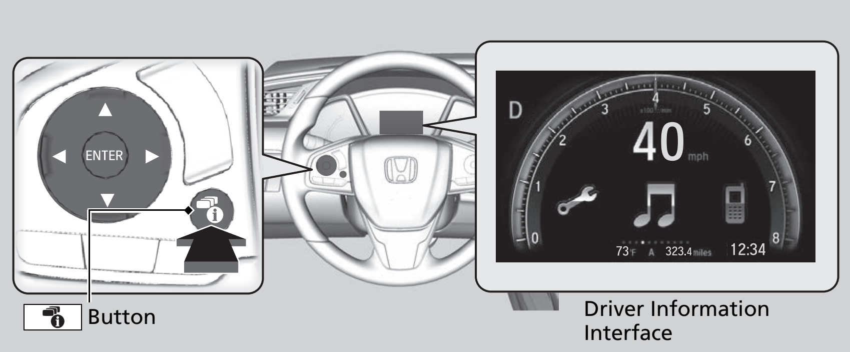
Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display

■ Using the ℹ button

Press the ℹ button to change the display.

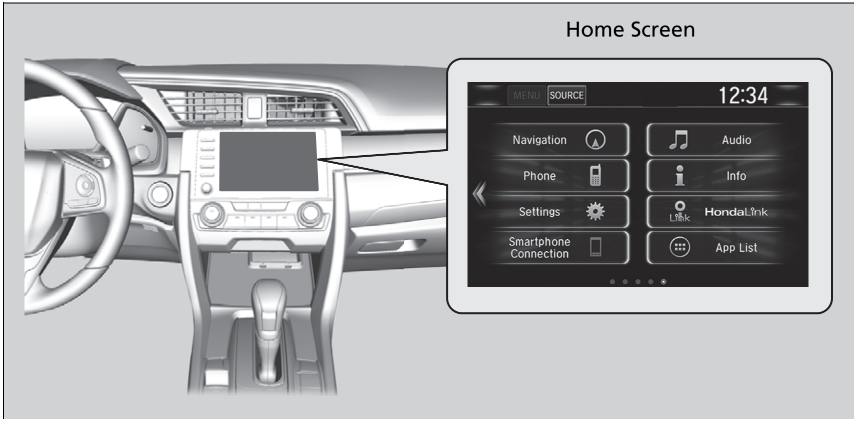

ENTER
D
40
mph
73°F
A
323.4 miles
12:34
ℹ Button
Driver Information Interface

Using the ℹ button

You can edit, add, and delete the contents shown on the driver information interface.

Customizing the Meter P. 256

■Using the audio/information screen


Home Screen
MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List

Press the 🏠 button to go to the home screen.
Select the following icons on the home screen.

■Phone

Displays the HFL information.

➲ ***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 410

»Using the audio/information screen

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

➲ **Customized Features** P. 350

Continued

■Info

Displays **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info**, **Clock/Wallpaper**, or **System/Device Information**. Select **MENU** on the **Info Menu** screen to see all available options: **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info**, **Clock/Wallpaper** and **System/Device Information**.

Trip Computer:
- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.
  To delete the history manually, select **Delete history** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

Voice Info: Displays a list of all voice commands.

Clock/Wallpaper: Displays the clock and wallpaper.

System/Device Information:
- **System Info**: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB Info**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

■Audio

Displays the current audio information.

■Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

⮚ **Customized Features** P. 350

■ Navigation*

Displays the navigation screen.

➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ HondaLink®

Displays the HondaLink® screen.

➔ **HondaLink®** P. 305

■ Smartphone Connection

Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

➔ **Apple CarPlay** P. 313

➔ **Android Auto** P. 316

■ App List (⊞)

Adds or removes apps or widgets on the Home screen.

➔ **Home Screen** P. 262

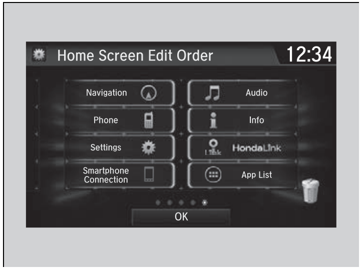
■ Instrument Panel

Selects from three customizable settings for the driver information interface.

* Not available on all models

Continued

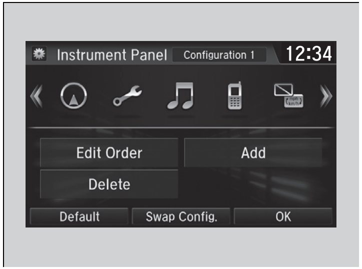
Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout


Home Screen Edit Order
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List
OK

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

Customizing the Meter

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents on the driver information interface.


Instrument Panel
Configuration 1
12:34
Edit Order
Add
Delete
Default
Swap Config.
OK

1. ⌂ button
2. **Settings**
3. **System**
4. **Configuration of Instrument Panel**

≫Customizing the Meter

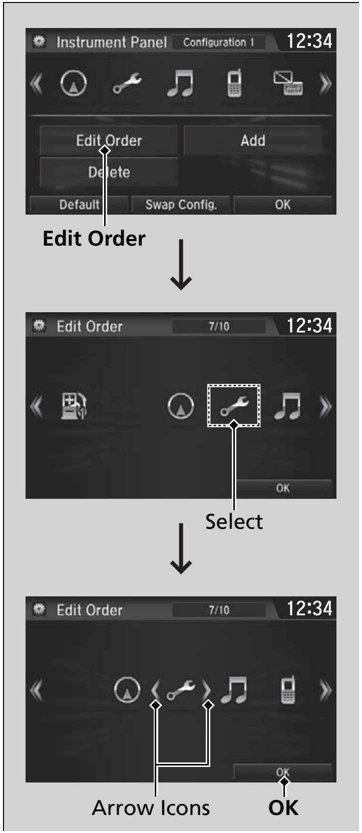
You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, press **Swap Config.**.

When you select **Swap Config.** during customization, the settings you changed will be saved.

When you press the ↩ button during customization, the settings you changed will not be saved and you will be returned to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

■ Editing order

To change the order of the icons on the driver information interface, first select:


Instrument Panel
Configuration 1
12:34
Edit Order
Add
Delete
Default
Swap Config.
OK
Edit Order
Edit Order
7/10
12:34
OK
Select
Edit Order
7/10
12:34
OK
Arrow Icons
OK

1. Edit Order

2. Select the icon you want to move.

▶ You will see arrows on both sides of the selected icon.

3. Select the left or right arrow repeatedly to move the icon to your desired position.

4. Select **OK**.

▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

⯮Editing order

You can use an alternative method to change the order of the icons. First select:

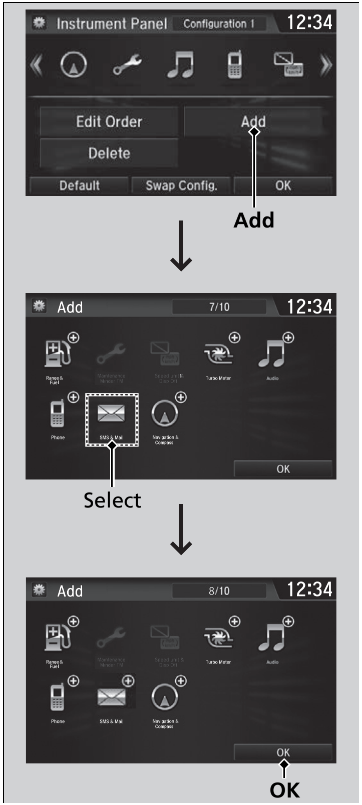
1. **Edit Order**
2. Select and hold the icon you want to move.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.

▶The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Continued

■ Adding contents

You can add icons to the driver information interface. To add icons, first select:


Instrument Panel
Configuration 1
12:34
Edit Order
Add
Delete
Default
Swap Config.
OK
Add
Add
7/10
12:34
Range & Fuel
Turbo Meter
Audio
Phone
SMS & Mail
Navigation & Compass
OK
Select
Add
8/10
12:34
Range & Fuel
Turbo Meter
Audio
Phone
SMS & Mail
Navigation & Compass
OK
OK

1. Add

2. Select an icon you want to add.
▶ You will see a plus mark on the upper right hand corner of the selected icon.

3. Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

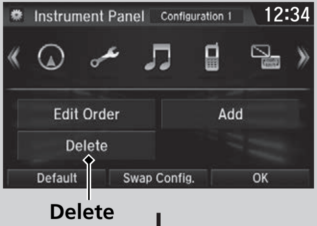
》Adding contents

Icons that are grayed out cannot be selected.

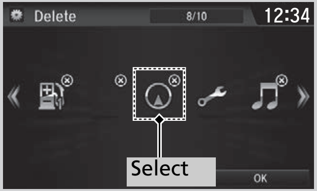
If an icon has a plus mark in the upper-right corner, it means that the icon has already been added.

■ Deleting contents

To delete contents on the driver information interface, first select:

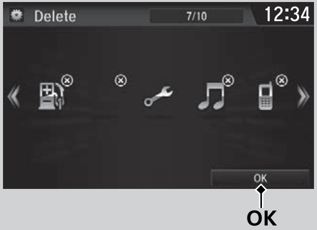

Instrument Panel
Configuration 1
12:34
Edit Order
Add
Delete
Default
Swap Config.
OK
Delete

1. Delete


Delete
8/10
12:34
OK
Select

2. Select an icon you want to delete.

▶ The icon with an X on the upper right hand corner can be deleted.


Delete
7/10
12:34
OK
OK

3. Select **OK**.

▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

≫Deleting contents

You can also delete contents by selecting:

1. **Delete** or **Edit Order**
2. Select and hold an icon you want to delete.
3. Drag and drop the icon to the trash icon.
4. Select **OK**.

▶The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

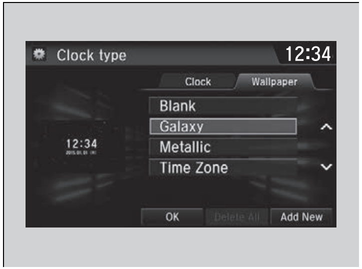
Continued

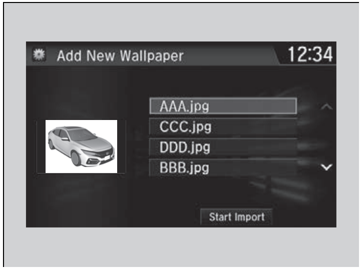
Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.





1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   ➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 227
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
   ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

≫Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock/Wallpaper Type** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory.
  Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

1. Press the 🏠 button.
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Change wallpaper**.
4. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set

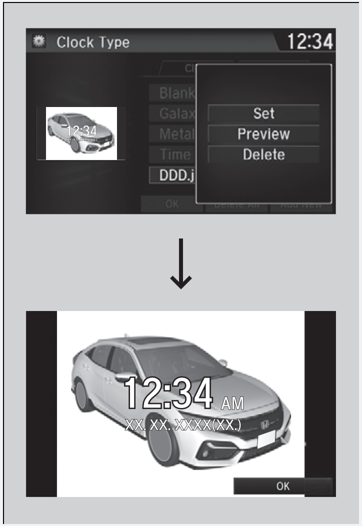
1. Press the 🏠 button.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **MENU**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper**.

■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

≫Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or press the ↩ button.

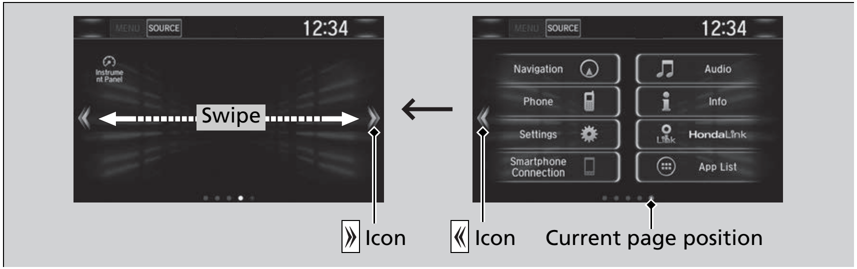
When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

Continued

Home Screen

To change to a next screen


MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Instrument Panel
Swipe
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List
» Icon
« Icon
Current page position

Selecting « or », or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

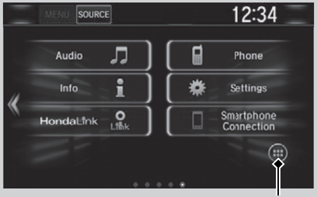
Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

Press the 🏠 button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

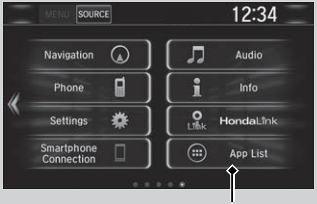
■ To use apps or widgets

Models without navigation system

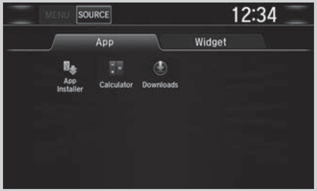

MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Link
Smartphone Connection

⊞ (App list) Icon

Models with navigation system


MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
Link
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List

App List Icon


MENU
SOURCE
12:34
App
Widget
App Installer
Calculator
Downloads

1. Press the 🏠 button.
2. Select **App List** or ⊞ icon.
   ▶ The **App** screen appears.
3. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- **Calculator**: Displays Calculator.
- **Downloads**[*1]: Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- **App Installer**: Check with a Honda dealer for apps that are available for installation.

[*1] Downloads app cannot be used because there is no Browser function in this system.

≫To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.
  ⮊ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 379
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.
  ⮊ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 379
In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

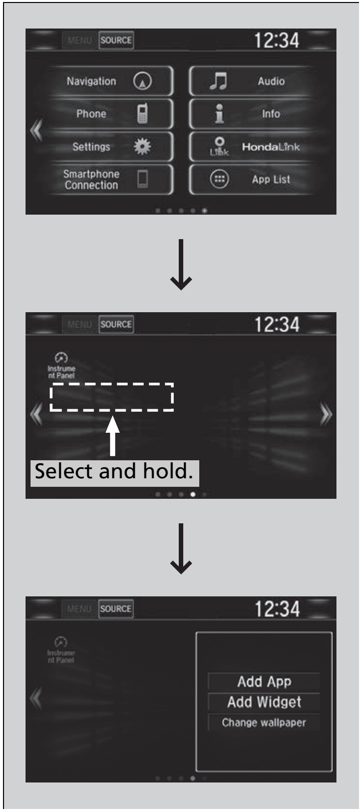
Do not install apps other than those confirmed by a Honda dealer. Installation of unauthorized apps may introduce data corruption risks to your vehicle's information and your privacy.

You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.
1. Press the 🏠 button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detail Information**.
6. Select **Apps**.
7. Select an app that you want to delete.
8. Select **Delete**.
Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

Continued

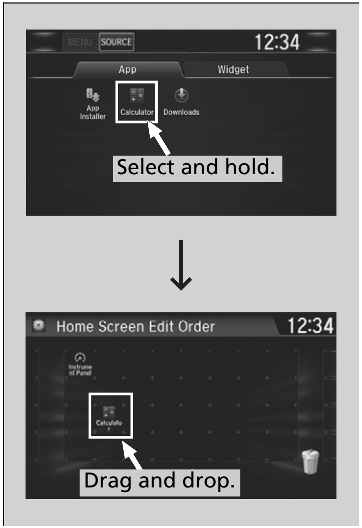
■To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.


MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List
Instrument Panel
Add App
Add Widget
Change wallpaper

Select and hold.

1. Press the 🏠 button.
2. Select «.
3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.
   ▶ The **App/Widget** screen appears.


MENU
SOURCE
12:34
App
Widget
App Installer
Calculator
Downloads
Select and hold.
Home Screen Edit Order
12:34
Instrument Panel
Calculator
Drag and drop.

5. Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

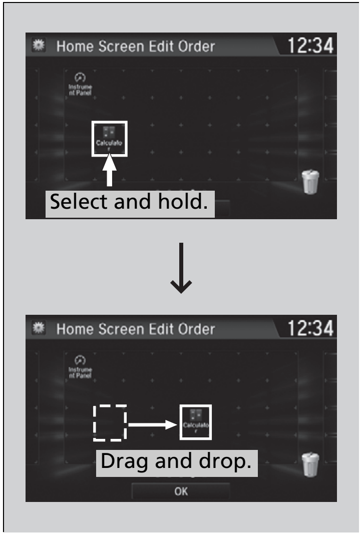
6. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.

7. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

Continued

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.


Home Screen Edit Order
12:34
Instrument Panel
Calculator
Select and hold.
Home Screen Edit Order
12:34
Instrument Panel
Calculator
Drag and drop.
OK

1. Select and hold an icon.
 ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.

3. Select **OK**.
 ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

≫To move icons on the home screen

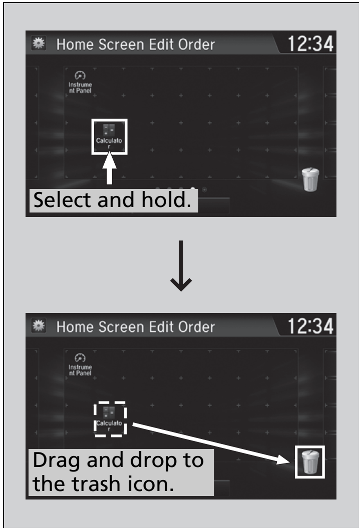
You can also move the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **HondaLink**, **Smartphone Connection**, **App List** (⊞), and **Instrument Panel** icons in the same manner.

---

* Not available on all models

■To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.


Home Screen Edit Order
12:34
Instrument Panel
Calculator
Select and hold.
Home Screen Edit Order
12:34
Instrument Panel
Calculator
Drag and drop to the trash icon.

1. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
   ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.

3. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

≫To remove icons on the home screen

You cannot delete the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **HondaLink**, **Smartphone Connection**, **App List** (⊞), and **Instrument Panel** icons.

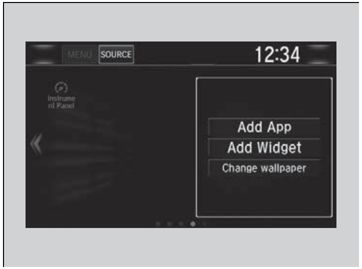
Deleting an app or widget from the home screen does not delete the app or widget itself.

* Not available on all models

Continued

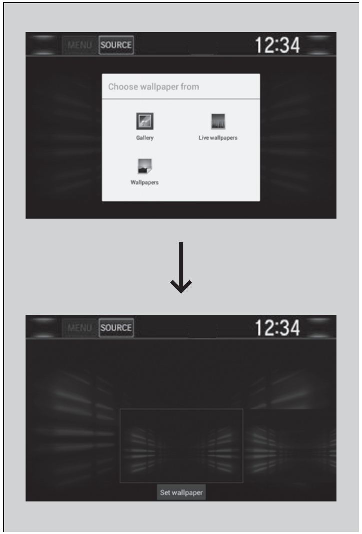
■ To change the home screen wallpaper

You can change a wallpaper of the home screen.


MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Instrument Panel
Add App
Add Widget
Change wallpaper

1. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
  ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

2. Select **Change wallpaper**.
  ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

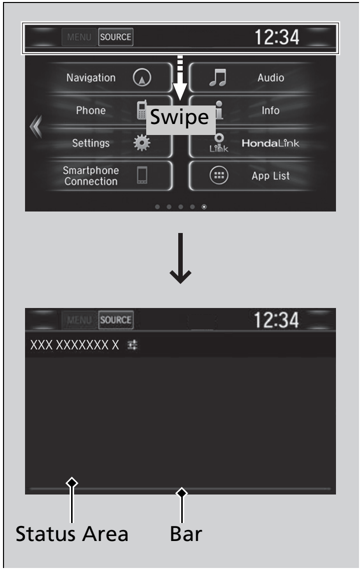

MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Choose wallpaper from
Gallery
Live wallpapers
Wallpapers
MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Set wallpaper

3. Select an app for selecting wallpapers.

4. Select your desired wallpaper.

5. Select **Set wallpaper**.
  ▶ The wallpaper is changed, then the screen will return to the home screen.

Status Area

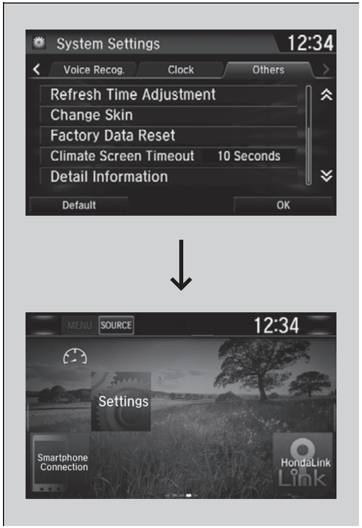

MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Swipe
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List
MENU
SOURCE
12:34
XXX XXXXXXX X
Status Area
Bar

1. Swipe down from the top of the screen.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the ↩ button or swipe up from the bottom bar to close the area.

Continued

Changing the Screen Interface

You can change the screen interface design.


System Settings
12:34
Voice Recog.
Clock
Others
Refresh Time Adjustment
Change Skin
Factory Data Reset
Climate Screen Timeout
10 Seconds
Detail Information
Default
OK
MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Settings
Smartphone Connection
HondaLink
Link

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Change Skin**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

≫Changing the Screen Interface

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

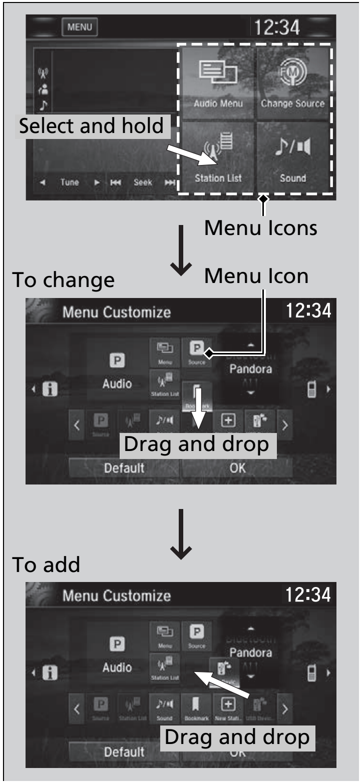
1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Change wallpaper**.
4. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

If you change the screen interface, some of the setting items will change.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 350

Menu Customize

You can change menu icons on the right side of **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen.


MENU
12:34
Audio Menu
Change Source
Station List
Sound
Tune
Seek
Select and hold
Menu Icons
To change
Menu Icon
Menu Customize
12:34
Audio
Pandora
Drag and drop
Default
OK
To add
Menu Customize
12:34
Audio
Pandora
Drag and drop
Default
OK

1. Select and hold menu icon.
2. Select ◀ or ▶ icon, then **Audio**, **Phone**, or **Info** from **Menu Customize**.
3. Select and hold the menu icon you want to change, then drag and drop the icon to the bottom.
4. Select and hold the menu icon you want to add, then drag and drop the icon to above.
5. Select **OK**.

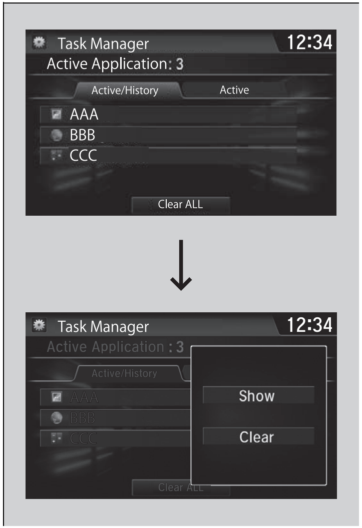
≫Menu Customize

You can also use the method below to change menu icon:
Select **Settings**→**System**→**Home** tab→**Menu Icon Position**

Continued

Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.


Task Manager
12:34
Active Application: 3
Active/History
Active
AAA
BBB
CCC
Clear ALL
Task Manager
12:34
Active Application : 3
Active/History
AAA
BBB
CCC
Show
Clear
Clear ALL

1. Press and hold the ⌂ button.

2. Select the **Active** tab.

▶ If you select the **Active/History** tab, you can close the apps that are currently running and delete the app activity history simultaneously.

3. Select an app you want to close.

4. Select **Clear**.

▶ The display will return to the app list.

≫Closing Apps

If you have a number of apps running in the background and something goes wrong with the audio system, some of those apps may not work properly. If this happens, close all the apps and re-launch the app/apps that you want to use.

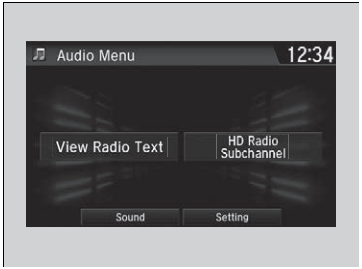
To close all apps on the system, select **Clear All**, then **Yes**.

You cannot close the HondaLink® and Garmin* apps.

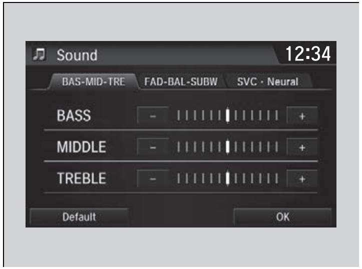
---

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Sound


Audio Menu
12:34
View Radio Text
HD Radio Subchannel
Sound
Setting

1. Press the ♫ button.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Sound**.


Sound
12:34
BAS-MID-TRE
FAD-BAL-SUBW
SVC · Neural
BASS
MIDDLE
TREBLE
-
+
Default
OK

Select a tab from the following choices:

- **BAS-MID-TRE:** Bass, Middle, Treble
- **FAD-BAL*/FAD-BAL-SUBW*:** Fader, Balance, Subwoofer*
- **SVC*/SVC·Neural*:** Speed Volume Compensation, DTS Neural Surround™*

≫Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also turn on and off the DTS Neural Surround™ setting* by selecting **Neural** on the audio/information screen.

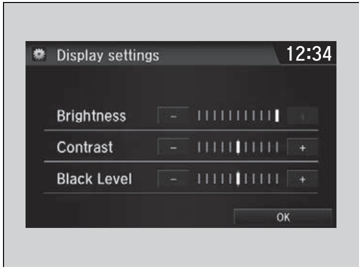
---

* Not available on all models

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness

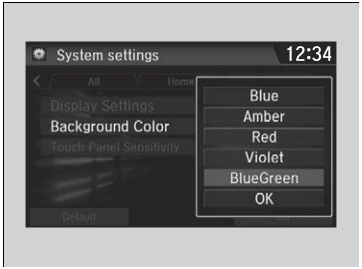

Display settings
12:34
Brightness
Contrast
Black Level
–
+
OK

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

≫Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Changing the Screen's Color Theme

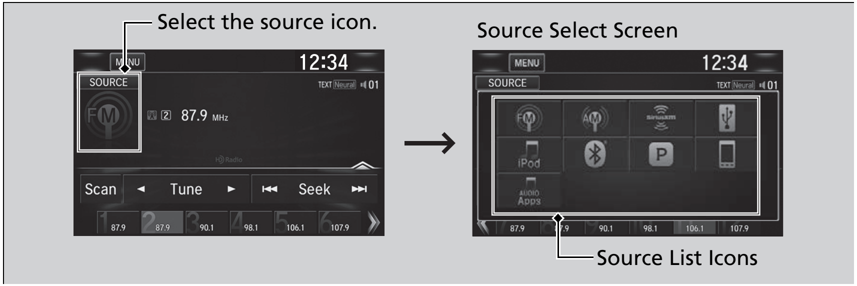

System settings
12:34
All
Home
Display Settings
Background Color
Touch Panel Sensitivity
Default
Blue
Amber
Red
Violet
BlueGreen
OK

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Color**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

≫Changing the Screen's Color Theme

You cannot change the **Background Color** if you change the screen interface design.

Selecting an Audio Source


Select the source icon.

Source Select Screen

Source List Icons

MENU
12:34
SOURCE
TEXT Neural 01
FM
87.9 MHz
HD Radio
Scan
Tune
Seek
87.9
87.9
90.1
98.1
106.1
107.9
FM
AM
SiriusXM
iPod
P
AUDIO Apps

Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Voice Control Operation

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.
The voice control system uses the 🗣 (Talk) and ☎ ↩ (hang-up/back) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights in the ceiling.

Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
  The system recognizes only certain commands.
  Available voice command P. 277
- Close the windows and moonroof*.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone in the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

Voice Control Operation

When you press the 🗣 button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the 🗣 button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

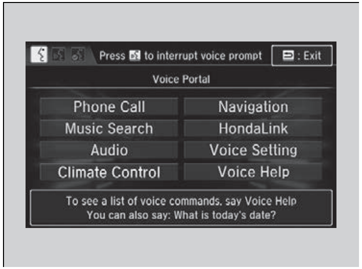
Voice Recognition

The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

---

* Not available on all models

Voice Portal Screen



To see a list of voice commands, say Voice Help
You can also say: What is today's date?

When the (Talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.
For a complete list of commands, say "*Voice Help*" after the beep or select **Voice Help**.

You can see the list of commands in **Voice Info** on the **Info Menu** screen. Select **Info**, then select **MENU**.

The system only recognizes the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free form voice commands are not recognized.

■ Phone Call

This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognizes the *Phone call* command, the screen will change to the voice recognition screen for phone commands.

- *Dial by number*
- *Call history*
- *Redial*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call Nine one one*
- *Call Police*

Phone Call commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

■ Music Search

This can be only used when the iPod or USB device is connected.

■ Climate Control*1

When the system recognizes the *Climate Control* command, the screen will change the dedicated screen to the climate control voice recognition screen.

➡ **Climate Control Commands*1** P. 279

■ Audio*1

When the system recognizes the *Audio* command, the screen will change to the audio voice recognition screen.

- *Audio On**2
- *Audio Off**2
- *Radio FM*
- *Radio AM*
- *Radio SXM**
- *Pandora**
- *iPod*
- *USB*
- *Other Sources*

Pandora® cannot be used while Android Auto is active.

■ Navigation*1

The screen changes to the navigation screen.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ HondaLink®

This can be only used when the phone is connected.

---

*1: Models with navigation system

*2: These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

* Not available on all models

Voice Setting

The screen changes to the **Voice Recog.** tab on the **System Settings** screen.

Voice Help

You can see a list of the available commands on the screen.

- *Useful Commands**1
- *Phone Commands*
- *Audio Commands**1
- *On Screen Commands*
- *Music Search Commands*
- *General Commands**1
- *Climate Control Commands**1

Useful Commands*1

The system accepts these commands on the voice portal top screen.

- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*
- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

Phone Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

- *Call by number*
- *Call by name*
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*

Audio Commands*1

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

Radio FM Commands

- *Radio tune to <87.7-107.9> FM*
- *Radio tune to <87.7 -107.9> HD <1-8> FM*
- *Radio FM preset <1-12>*

Radio AM Commands

- *Radio tune to <530-1710> AM*
- *Radio AM preset <1-6>*

Radio SXM Commands*

- *SXM channel <1-999>*
- *SXM channel <station name>*
- *Radio SXM preset <1-12>*

Pandora® Commands*

- *PANDORA play*

iPod Commands

- *iPod play*
- *iPod play track <1-30>*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

USB Commands

- *USB play*
- *USB play track <1-30>*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

Bluetooth® audio Commands

- *Bluetooth® audio play*

NOTE:
Bluetooth® Audio commands may not work on some phones or *Bluetooth*® Audio devices.

*1: Models with navigation system

* Not available on all models

On Screen Commands

When **On Screen Commands** is selected, the explanation screen is displayed.

Music Search Commands

The system accepts these commands on the **Music Search** screen.

Using Song By Voice

Song By Voice™ is a feature that allows you to select music from your iPod or USB device using Voice Commands. To activate this mode, you must push the talk switch and say: "*Music Search*".

Song By Voice Commands

- *What am I listening to?*
- *Who am I listening to?*
- *Who is this?*
- *What's playing?*
- *Who's playing?*
- *What album is this?*

Play Commands

- *Play artist <Name>*
- *Play track/song <Name>*
- *Play album <Name>*
- *Play genre/category <Name>*
- *Play playlist <Name>*
- *Play composer <Name>*

List Commands

- *List artist <Name>*
- *List album <Name>*
- *List genre/category <Name>*
- *List playlist <Name>*
- *List composer <Name>*

General Commands*1

- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

Climate Control Commands*1

- *Climate control on**2
- *Climate control off**2
- *Fan speed <1-7>*
- *Temperature max heat*
- *Temperature max cool*
- *Temperature <57-87> degrees**3
- *Temperature <15-29> degrees**4
- *Defrost On**2
- *Defrost Off**2
- *Air Conditioner On**2
- *Air Conditioner Off**2
- *More*
- *Climate Control Automatic*
- *Vent*
- *Dash and floor*
- *Fan speed Up*
- *Fan speed Down*
- *Floor vents*
- *Floor and Defrost*
- *Temperature up*
- *Temperature down*

---

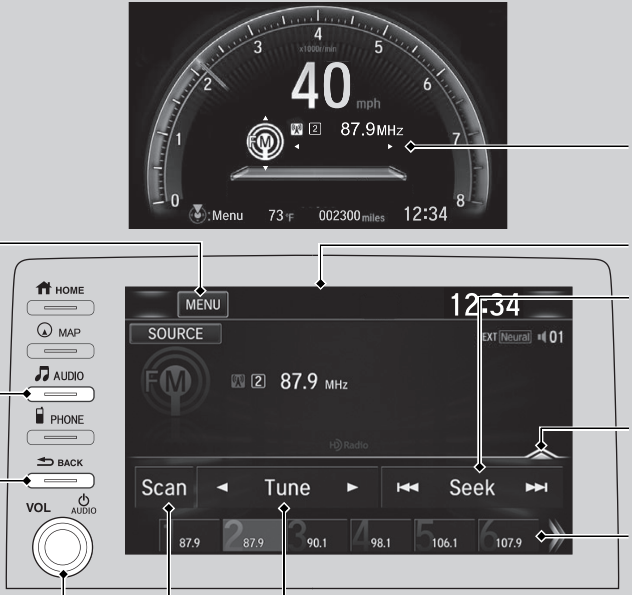
*1: Models with navigation system

*2: These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

*3: U.S. models

*4: Canadian models

Playing AM/FM Radio


40 mph
87.9MHz
Menu
73°F
002300 miles
12:34
HOME
MAP
AUDIO
PHONE
BACK
VOL
AUDIO
MENU
SOURCE
FM
87.9 MHz
Scan
Tune
Seek
87.9
87.9
90.1
98.1
106.1
107.9

MENU
Select to display the menu items.

♫ (Audio) Button
Press to display the audio screen.

↩ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

VOL/⏻ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

Scan Icon
Select to scan each station with a strong signal.

Driver Information Interface

Audio/Information Screen

Seek Icons
Select ⏭ or ⏮ to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

Open/Close Icon[*1]
Displays/hides the detailed information.

Preset Icons
Tune the preset radio frequency. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

Tune Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Preset Memory

To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or press the ↩ button.

≫Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.
➔ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 230

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory.

Models with HD Radio™ feature

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. For patents see *http://dts.com/patents*. HD Radio, Artist Experience, and the HD, HD Radio, and "ARC" logos are registered trademarks or trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

HD Radio™ stations not available in all locations in Canada.

Continued

Models with HD Radio™ feature

HD Subchannel

Displays the subchannel list when an HD Radio™ station is selected while listening to an FM station.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **HD Radio Subchannel**.
3. Select the channel number.

Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

■ Radio text

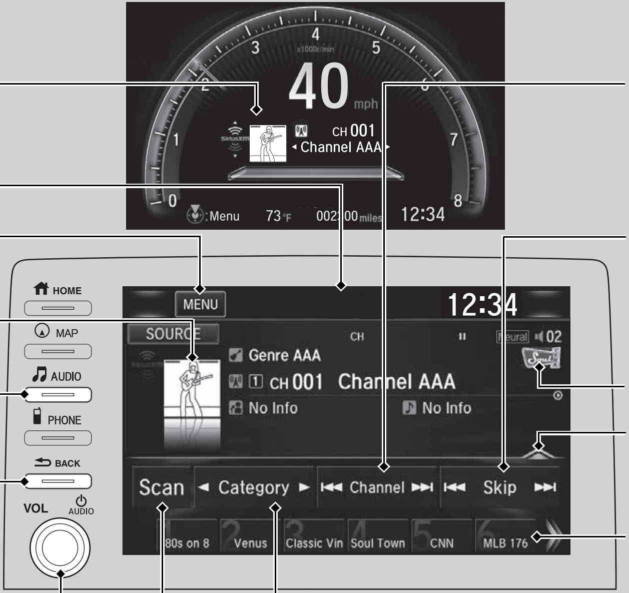
Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

»Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*


3
4
5
x1000r/min
40
mph
2
6
1
7
0
8
CH 001
◂ Channel AAA ▸
:Menu
73°F
002100 miles
12:34
HOME
MAP
AUDIO
PHONE
BACK
VOL
AUDIO
MENU
12:34
SOURCE
CH
Genre AAA
CH 001 Channel AAA
No Info
No Info
02
Scan
◂ Category ▸
⏮ Channel ⏭
⏮ Skip ⏭
80s on 8
Venus
Classic Vin
Soul Town
CNN
MLB 176

Driver Information Interface

Audio/Information Screen

MENU
Select to display the menu items.

Album Art

♫ (Audio) Button
Press to display the audio screen.

⮌ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

VOL/⏻ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

Scan Icon
Select to scan each channel.

Channel Icons
Select ⏮ or ⏭ to the previous or next channel.
Select and hold to rapidly skip 10 channels at a time.

Skip Icons
Select ⏮ or ⏭ to change section in the channel.
Select and hold to move rapidly within the section.

Station Art

Open/Close Icon[*1]
Displays/hides the detailed information.

Preset Icons
Tune the preset radio station. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

Category Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to display and select a SiriusXM® Radio category.

---

*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

* Not available on all models

■ To Change the Tune Mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Tune Mode**.
3. Select **Channel Mode** or **Category Mode**.

≫Playing SiriusXM® Radio*

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

There may be instances when SiriusXM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.

SiriusXM® Radio stations load in ascending order, which can take about a minute. Once they have loaded you will be able to scroll up or down to make your selections.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

➔ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 230

Tune Start:
When you change to a preset channel, a song being played on that channel restarts from the beginning with this function. This can be turned on or off from the **Audio Settings** screen.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 350

* Not available on all models

Preset Memory

To store a channel:

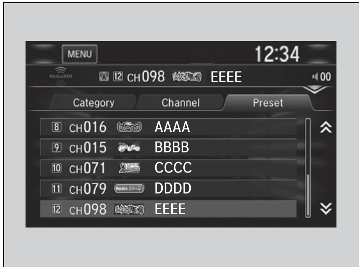
1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Press and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.
   ▶ If **Multiple Channel Mix Preset** setting to **On**, then select **Replace**.

You can also store a channel by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

■ Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

You can store up to five of your preferred music channels to preset numbers.


MENU
12:34
SiriusXM
12 CH098 EEEE
00
Category
Channel
Preset
8 CH016 AAAA
9 CH015 BBBB
10 CH071 CCCC
11 CH079 DDDD
12 CH098 EEEE

1. Tune a station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number you want to add a music channel.
   ▶ A message appears if there are no available presets.
5. Select **Combine**.

≫Playing SiriusXM® Radio*

You can store 12 SiriusXM® channels into the preset memory.

≫Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

To store a multi-channel preset, you need to setup the **Multiple Channel Mix Preset** setting to **On**.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 350

* Not available on all models

Continued

Listening to Featured Channels

Suggested channel listing received from SiriusXM® can be displayed and selected.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a channel list.
2. Select the **Channel** tab.
3. Select the featured channel list title you want to listen to.
  ▶ The selected channel list of the title is displayed.
4. Select the channel.

Listening to Featured Channels

Up to three featured channels by SiriusXM® can be displayed.

Featured channel lists are at the top of the channel list.

Replay Function

The system can record up to the last 60 minutes of your currently tuned channel's broadcast, as well as the last 30 minutes of your preset channel's broadcast, starting from the moment you turn the vehicle on. If you tuned to a preset channel, the system records up to 60 minutes of a broadcast instead of up to 30 minutes. You can rewind and replay the last 30 or 60 minutes of a broadcast.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Playback**.
3. Move the time marker to the position you want to replay.

The following items are available on the pop-up screen:

⏮ (Skip Down): Skips to the previously stored channel. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current selection.

⏭ (Skip Up): Skips to the next channel. Select and hold to fast-forward the current selection.

↺15 (15sec Back): Select to skip back 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current selection.

↻15 (15sec Skip): Select to skip forward 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-forward the current selection.

▶ Select **OK** to close the pop-up menu. Replay in playback mode continues.

To play or pause on playback mode:

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Play/Pause**.

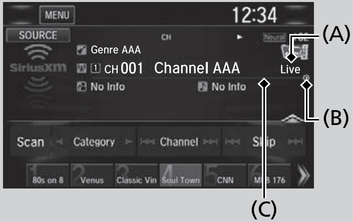
≫Replay Function

The system starts storing broadcast in memory when the power mode is turned ON. You can go back to the program from that point.

You can no longer replay any program once the power mode is turned off as it erases memory.
You can check how long the program has been stored in memory from the audio/information screen.

After 30 or 60 minutes of recording the system will automatically start deleting the oldest data.

Audio/Information Screen



(A): Shows how much time the replayed segment is behind the real-time broadcast
(B): Replayed segment
(C): Length stored in memory

When you listen a multi-channel preset while at the playback mode, the replayed segment is not displayed.

Continued

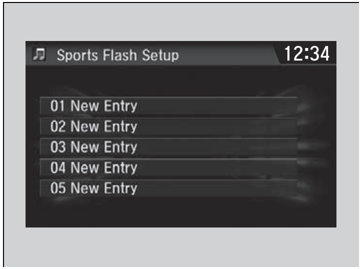
■ Returning to real-time broadcast

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Go to Live**.

Live Sports Alert

While listening to other channels, you can receive sports alerts such as scores from the games of your favorite teams.

■ To set up a favorite team



Sports Flash Setup 12:34

01 New Entry
02 New Entry
03 New Entry
04 New Entry
05 New Entry

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.
5. Select **Favorite Team**.
6. Select a team.

■ To set up an alert message

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.
5. Select **Interrupt**.
6. Select **On(One Time)** or **On(Continue)**.

≫Live Sports Alert

The sports alert function is available in SiriusXM® mode only.

≫To set up a favorite team

Sports alerts cut in only when SiriusXM® mode is on. Selecting **On(One Time)** from the customized settings disables the alert feature next time you turn the power mode to ON.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 350

You can also set up a favorite team by the following procedure.

1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.

■ To set up an alert beep

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.
5. Select **Interrupt Beep**.
6. Select **On**.

■ Receiving a sports alert

1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a sports alert.
2. Select **Listen**.
   ▶ You can use the same items as the playback mode pop-up screen.
   ➲ **Replay Function** P. 287

   To go back to the previous screen, select **Back**.

■ Listening to a missed sports alert

If you have missed a sports alert:

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **SportsFlash List**.
3. Select alert.

≫To set up an alert beep

You can also set up a alert beep by the following procedure.

1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.

Continued

Traffic and Weather Information

You can receive traffic and weather information.

To set up a traffic & weather information

1. Press the 🏠 button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Traffic & Weather Setup**.
5. Select the region.
   ▶ When you do not want to receive the information, select **Unregistered**.

Listening a traffic and weather information

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Traffic & Weather**.
   ▶ Play mode can also use the any items same as playback mode.
   Replay Function P. 287

To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**.

Traffic and Weather Information

The traffic and weather information function at SiriusXM® mode only.

You can also set up the traffic and weather information by the following procedure.

1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select **Traffic & Weather Setup**.

Traffic & Weather Now are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

Scan

Sample each channel on the selected mode for 10 seconds.

1. Select **Scan**.
2. Select **Scan Channels**.
   ▶ You can select the desired channel by songs using **Scan Song in Preset**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel Scan**.

Scan

The “Scan Songs in Preset” function is based on TuneScan™ technology of SiriusXM®.

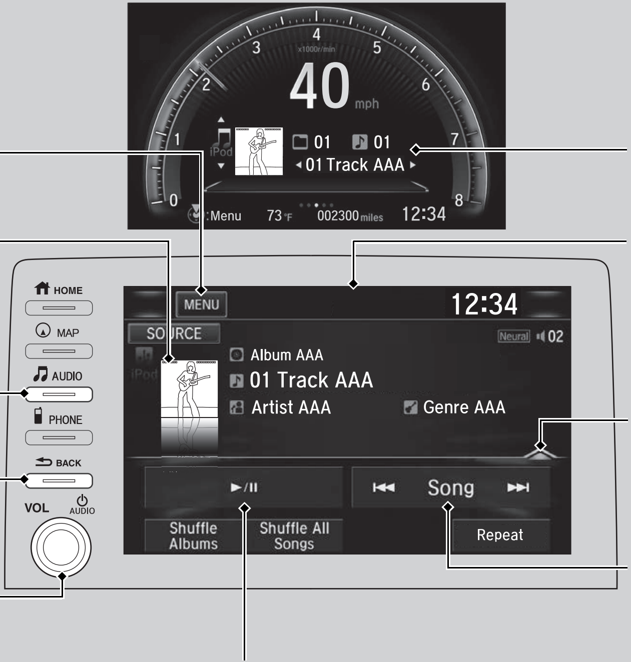
The “Featured Channels” function is based on Featured Favorites™ technology of SiriusXM®.

TuneScan™ and Featured Favorites™ are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

➔ **USB Port(s)** P. 227


4
3
5
2
6
1
7
0
8
x1000r/min
40
mph
iPod
01
01
01 Track AAA
:Menu
73 °F
002300 miles
12:34
HOME
MAP
AUDIO
PHONE
BACK
VOL
AUDIO
MENU
12:34
SOURCE
Neural
02
iPod
Album AAA
01 Track AAA
Artist AAA
Genre AAA
►/II
Song
Shuffle Albums
Shuffle All Songs
Repeat

MENU
Select to display the menu items.

Cover Art

♫ (Audio) Button
Press to display the audio screen.

⮌ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

VOL/⏻ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

Play/Pause Icon

Driver Information Interface

Audio/Information Screen

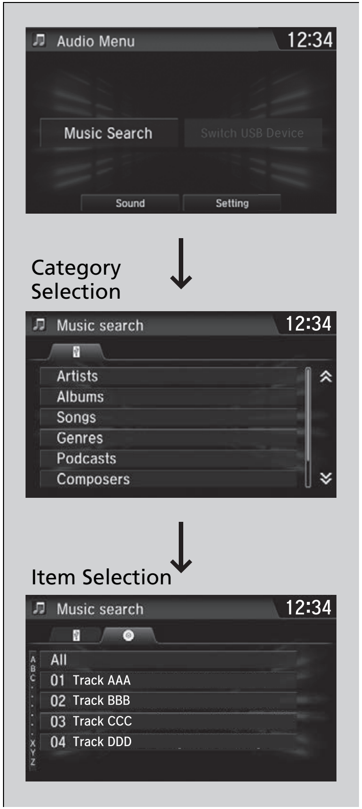
Open/Close Icon[*1]
Displays/hides the detailed information.

Song Icons
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change songs.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

---

*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List


Audio Menu
12:34
Music Search
Switch USB Device
Sound
Setting
Category Selection
Music search
12:34
Artists
Albums
Songs
Genres
Podcasts
Composers
Item Selection
Music search
12:34
All
01 Track AAA
02 Track BBB
03 Track CCC
04 Track DDD

1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

≫Playing an iPod

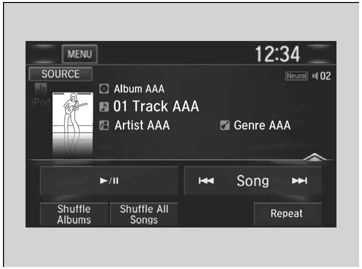
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
➔ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 320

If you operate any music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.


MENU
12:34
SOURCE
iPod
Neural 02
Album AAA
01 Track AAA
Artist AAA
Genre AAA
►/II
Song
Shuffle Albums
Shuffle All Songs
Repeat

Select a play mode.

To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

≫How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle Albums*1: Plays all available albums in a selected list in random order.

Shuffle All Songs/Shuffle: Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

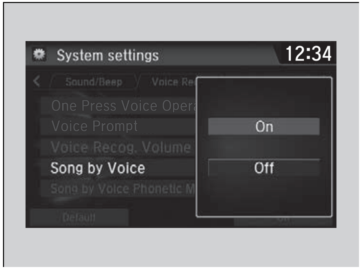
Repeat: Repeats the song.

*1: This function is not available if your iPod is not supported.

Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Use SBV to search for and play music from your USB flash drive or iPod using voice commands.

■ To enable SBV


System settings
12:34
Sound/Beep
Voice Re
One Press Voice Opera
Voice Prompt
Voice Recog. Volume
Song by Voice
Song by Voice Phonetic M
Default
On
Off

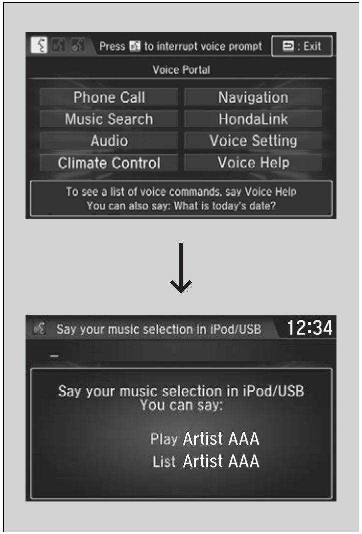
1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice**.
6. Select **On** or **Off**.

⏩Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Setting options:

- **On** (factory default): Song By Voice™ commands are available.
- **Off**: Disable the feature.

■Searching for music using SBV


Press 🗣 to interrupt voice prompt
: Exit
Voice Portal
Phone Call
Navigation
Music Search
HondaLink
Audio
Voice Setting
Climate Control
Voice Help

To see a list of voice commands, say Voice Help
You can also say: What is today's date?

12:34

Say your music selection in iPod/USB

Say your music selection in iPod/USB
You can say:
Play Artist AAA
List Artist AAA

1. Set the **Song by Voice** setting to **On**.
2. Press the 🗣 (Talk) button and say *"Music Search"* to activate the SBV feature for the USB flash drive and iPod.
3. Then, say a next command.
   - ▶ Example 1: Say *"(List) 'Artist A'"* to view a list of songs by that artist. Select the desired song to start playing.
   - ▶ Example 2: Say *"Play 'Artist A'"* to start playing songs by that artist.
4. To cancel SBV, press the ☎ ⮌ (hang-up/back) button on the steering wheel. The selected song continues playing.

Once you have canceled this mode, you need to press the 🗣 button and say *"Music Search"* again to re-activate this mode.

》Searching for music using SBV

Song By Voice™ Commands List
➔ **Song By Voice Commands** P. 279

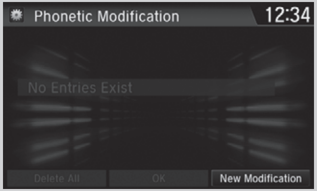
NOTE:
Song By Voice™ commands are available for files or songs stored on the USB flash drive or iPod.

You can add phonetic modifications of difficult words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands.
➔ **Phonetic Modification** P. 296

Continued

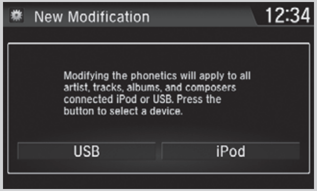
Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications of difficult or foreign words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands when searching for music on the USB flash drive or iPod.


Phonetic Modification
12:34
Delete All
OK
New Modification

No Entries Exist

↓


New Modification
12:34
USB
iPod

Modifying the phonetics will apply to all artist, tracks, albums, and composers connected iPod or USB. Press the button to select a device.

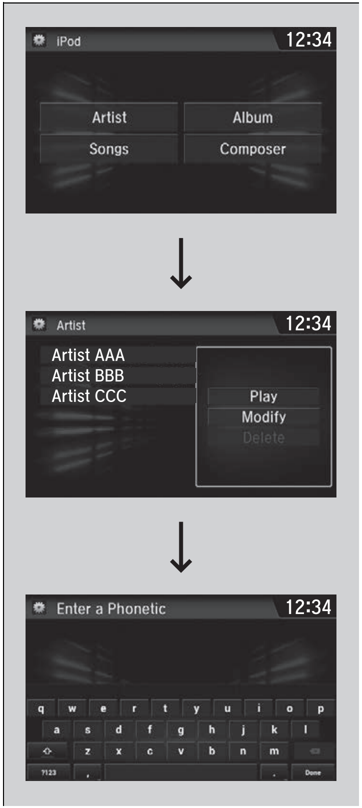
↓

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select **New Modification**.
7. Select **USB** or **iPod**.

≫Phonetic Modification

Song by Voice Phonetic Modification function is not available when **Song by Voice** is set to **Off**.

You can store up to 2,000 phonetic modification items.

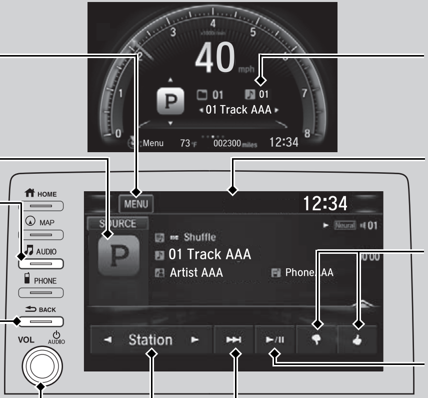

iPod
12:34
Artist
Album
Songs
Composer
Artist
12:34
Artist AAA
Artist BBB
Artist CCC
Play
Modify
Delete
Enter a Phonetic
12:34
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
?123
,
.
Done

8. Select the item to modify (e.g., **Artist**).
   - ▶ The list of the selected item appears on the screen.
9. Select an entry to modify.
   - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
   - ▶ To listen to the current phonetic modification, select **Play**.
   - ▶ To delete the current phonetic modification, select **Delete**.
10. Select **Modify**.
11. Select the phonetic spelling you want to use (e.g., *"Artist A"*) when prompted.
12. Select **OK**.
    - ▶ The artist *"No Name"* is phonetically modified to *"Artist A."* When in the SBV mode, you can press the (Talk) button and use the voice command *"Play 'Artist A'"* to play songs by the artist *"No Name."*

Playing Pandora®*1

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from the Pandora® app on a compatible smartphone.
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system, or with an iPhone, you can connect using your USB cable to the USB port.

➔ **Phone Setup** P. 418
➔ **USB Port(s)** P. 227



MENU
Select to display the menu items.

Cover Art

♫ (Audio) Button
Press to display the audio screen.

↩ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

VOL/⏻ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

Driver Information Interface

Audio/ Information Screen

Like/Dislike Icons
Select to evaluate a track.

Play/Pause Icon
Select to pause or play a track.

Skip Icon
Select to skip a track.

Station Up/Down Icons
Select to change a station.

》Playing Pandora®*1

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is only available in certain countries. Visit the Pandora website for more information.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit *www.pandora.com*. for more information.

Pandora® is free, personalized radio that plays music and comedy you'll love. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, tracks, comedians or composers and Pandora® will create a custom station that plays similar tracks. Pandora® also features hundreds of genre stations ranging from Dubstep to Smooth Jazz to Power Workout.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

If your phone is connected to Android Auto, Pandora® is only available through the Android Auto interface. Visit the Android Auto website to check compatibility.

---

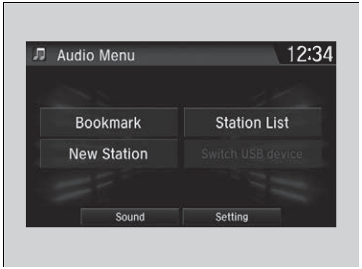
*1: Available only on U.S. models.

Pandora® Menu

You can operate some of the Pandora® menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Bookmark**
- **Station List**
- **New Station**
- **Switch USB device**
- **Sound**
- **Setting**

■ Operating a menu item



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select an item.

≫Pandora® Menu

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

Pandora®* P. 322

Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

To change stations, activate the Pandora® menu, select **Station List**, and then select a new station. It also changes stations on the main Pandora® screen.

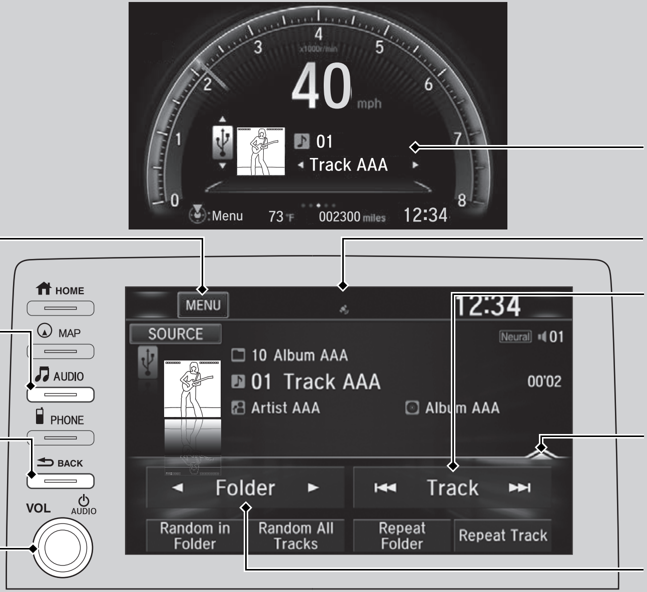
---

* Not available on all models

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC*1, or WAV format.
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 227


4
3
5
2
6
1
7
0
8
x1000r/min
40
mph
01
Track AAA
:Menu
73°F
002300 miles
12:34
HOME
MAP
AUDIO
PHONE
BACK
VOL
AUDIO
MENU
12:34
SOURCE
Neural
01
10 Album AAA
01 Track AAA
00'02
Artist AAA
Album AAA
Folder
Track
Random in Folder
Random All Tracks
Repeat Folder
Repeat Track

MENU
Select to display the menu items.

♫ (Audio) Button
Press to display the audio screen.

↩ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

VOL/⏻ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

Driver Information Interface

Audio/Information Screen

Track Icons
Select ⏮ or ⏭ to change files.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

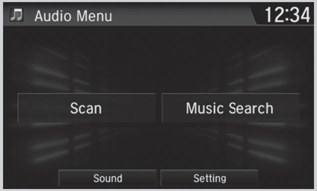
Open/Close Icon*2
Displays/hides the detailed information.

Folder Icons
Select ▶ to skip to the next folder, and ◀ to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

---

*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.
*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

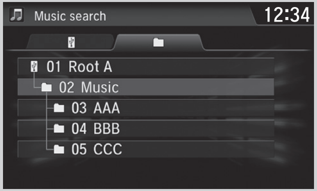
How to Select a File from the Music Search List


Audio Menu
12:34
Scan
Music Search
Sound
Setting

1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

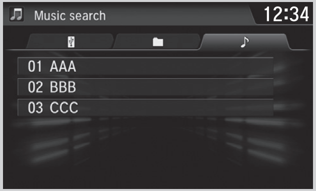
2. Select **Music**.

Folder Selection


Music search
12:34
01 Root A
02 Music
03 AAA
04 BBB
05 CCC

3. Select a folder.

File Selection


Music search
12:34
♪
01 AAA
02 BBB
03 CCC

4. Select a file.

Continued

▶▶Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

General Information on the Audio System P. 324

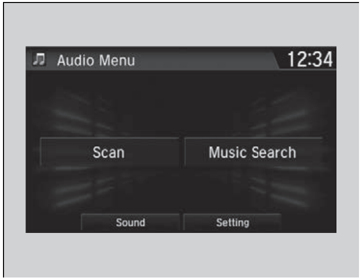
WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 320

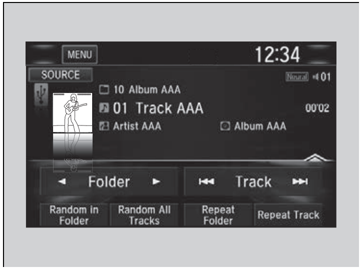
How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.


Audio Menu
12:34
Scan
Music Search
Sound
Setting

■ Scan

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.


MENU
12:34
SOURCE
10 Album AAA
01 Track AAA
Artist AAA
Album AAA
00'02
Folder
Track
Random in Folder
Random All Tracks
Repeat Folder
Repeat Track

■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.

■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off Scan, press the ↩ button or select **Cancel**.
To turn off **Random/Repeat**, select the mode again.

≫How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.
Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

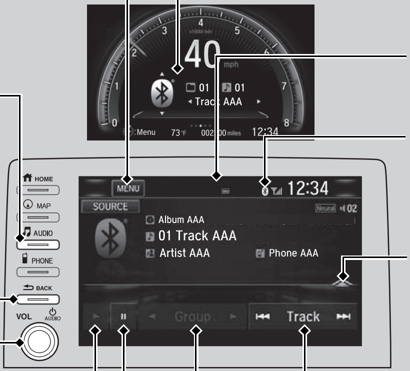
Random/Repeat

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.
Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.
Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.
Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 418



MENU
Select to display the menu items.

♫ (Audio) Button
Press to display the audio screen.

⮌ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display.

VOL/⏻ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

Play Icon

Driver Information Interface

Audio/Information Screen

***Bluetooth* Indicator**
Appears when your phone is connected to HFL.

Open/Close Icon[*1]
Displays/hides the detailed information.

Track Icons
Select ⏮ or ⏭ to change tracks.

Group Icons
Select ◀ or ▶ to change group.

Pause Icon

---

*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Continued

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible.
For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.
Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time.
When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the **Priority Device Settings**.

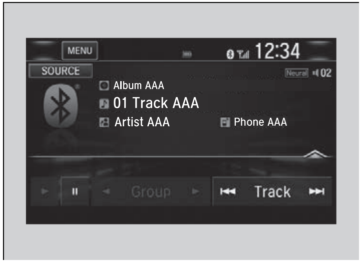
Customized Features P. 350

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.
If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.
In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.
Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect** ♫ from the **Bluetooth Device List**.

Phone Setup P. 418

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files


MENU
12:34
SOURCE
Neural
02
Album AAA
01 Track AAA
Artist AAA
Phone AAA
Group
Track

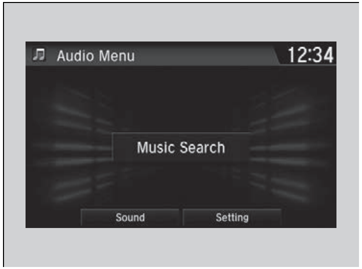
1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
   - **Phone Setup** P. 418
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

Searching for Music


Audio Menu
12:34
Music Search
Sound
Setting

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Music Search**.
3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
4. Select an item.
   - ▶ The selection begins playing.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio Menu** screen by the following procedure.
1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Setting**.

Searching for Music

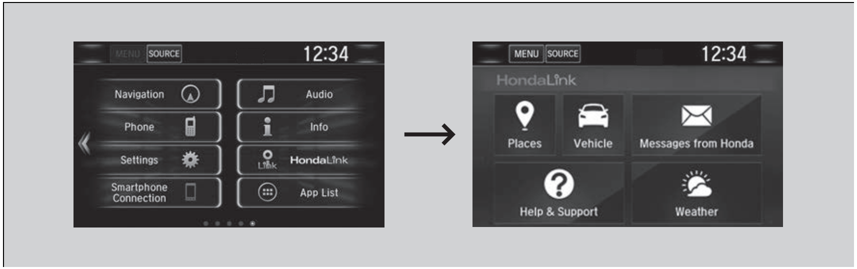
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

HondaLink®

HondaLink® connects you to the latest information from Honda. You can connect your phone wirelessly through Wi-Fi or *Bluetooth*®.

- **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 310
- **Phone Setup** P. 418

HondaLink® Menu


MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List
MENU
SOURCE
12:34
HondaLink
Places
Vehicle
Messages from Honda
Help & Support
Weather

■ Places*

Displays restaurants, gas stations, Honda dealer, and so on. You can also navigate to the found locations via the navigation.

■ Vehicle

Displays instruction messages when the vehicle needs service.

■ Help & Support

Displays tips for vehicle usage, and get support via road side or customer service center.

HondaLink®

The HondaLink® connect app is compatible with most iPhone and Android phones.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone’s data subscription package.

When Apple CarPlay or Android Auto is connected to the audio system, HondaLink® can be accessed even without a Wi-Fi connection.

---

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Messages from Honda

Displays helpful and important information from Honda.

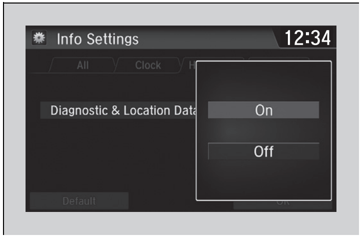
■ Weather*

Displays a weekly five-day weather forecast for any location you want. You can change the ZIP Code at any time.

To Set Up to Connect HondaLink® Service

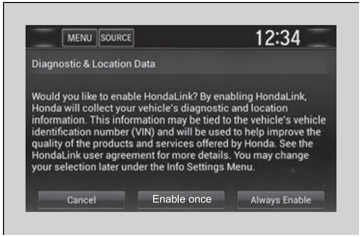
Use the following procedure to connect to HondaLink® service.

■ To enable the HondaLink® service


Info Settings
12:34
All
Clock
Diagnostic & Location Data
On
Off
Default

1. Press the 🏠 button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Info**.
4. Select the **HondaLink** tab.
5. Select **Diagnostic & Location Data**.
6. Select **On**.

You need to allow the consent of the location service to enable the HondaLink® service.

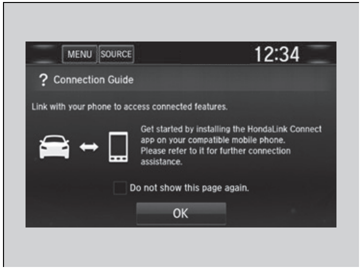

MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Diagnostic & Location Data
Cancel
Enable once
Always Enable

Would you like to enable HondaLink? By enabling HondaLink, Honda will collect your vehicle's diagnostic and location information. This information may be tied to the vehicle's vehicle identification number (VIN) and will be used to help improve the quality of the products and services offered by Honda. See the HondaLink user agreement for more details. You may change your selection later under the Info Settings Menu.

Enable once: Allows only one time. (Prompt shows again next time.)
Always Enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

* Not available on all models

■To link with HondaLink®



Link with your phone to access connected features.

Get started by installing the HondaLink Connect app on your compatible mobile phone. Please refer to it for further connection assistance.

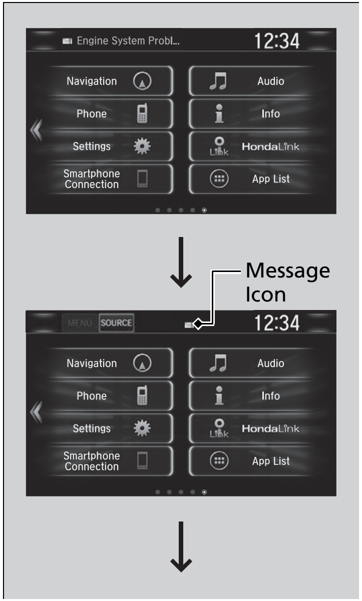
☐ Do not show this page again.

You can see the **Connection Guide** screen after launching HondaLink®. If you do not need this guide, select check-box and select **OK**.

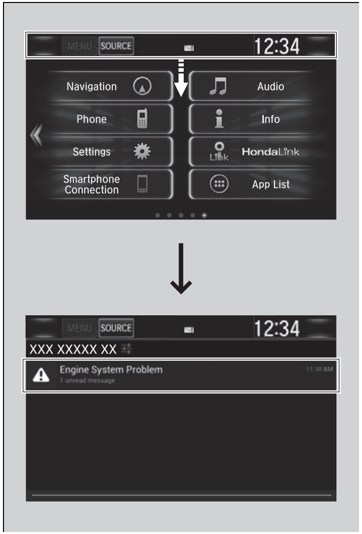
Continued

Vehicle Information and Message from Honda Tips

You can check the messages that are received quickly in the shortcut operation.


Engine System Probl...
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List
Message Icon
MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List

1. A message appears and notifies you of a new message on the header area.
   ▶ When the message is received, a notification ring can be heard.
2. A message icon is continuously displayed in the header area until the new message is read.


MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List
MENU
SOURCE
12:34
XXX XXXXX XX
Engine System Problem
1 unread message
11:38 AM

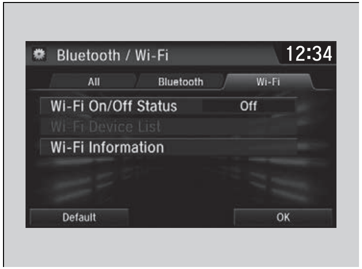
3. From the top of the screen, swipe down to see the messages.

4. Select a new message to open.

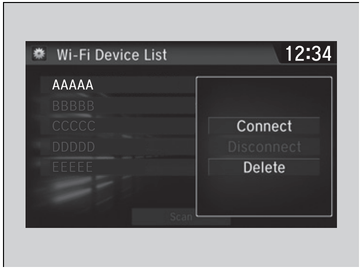
Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the Display Audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)


Bluetooth / Wi-Fi
12:34
All
Bluetooth
Wi-Fi
Wi-Fi On/Off Status
Off
Wi-Fi Device List
Wi-Fi Information
Default
OK

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth/Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
5. Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, then **On**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi Device List**.
   - ▶ Make sure your phone’s Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
   - ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
   - ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.


Wi-Fi Device List
12:34
AAAAA
BBBBB
CCCCC
DDDDD
EEEEE
Connect
Disconnect
Delete
Scan

7. Select **Connect**.
   - ▶ If needed, enter a password for your phone and select **OK**.
   - ▶ When the connection is successful, the 📶 icon is displayed on the top of the screen.
8. Press the ⌂ button to go back to the home screen.

≫Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to setup the Wi-Fi connection.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone’s data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the 📶 icon on **Wi-Fi Device List**. Network speed will not be displayed on this screen.

■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

≫Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

iPhone users

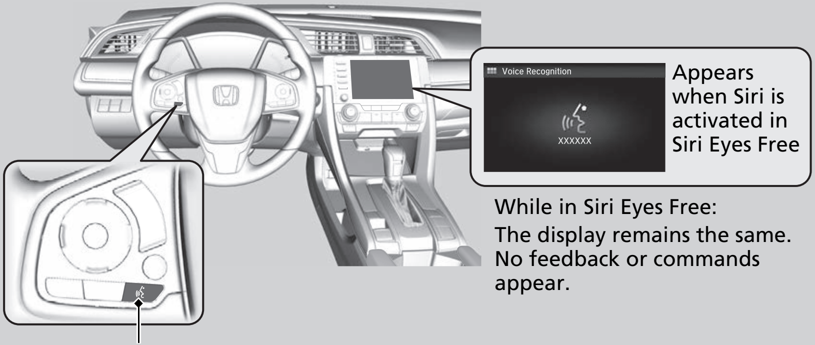
You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 418

Using Siri Eyes Free



Appears when Siri is activated in Siri Eyes Free

While in Siri Eyes Free:
The display remains the same. No feedback or commands appear.

(Talk) Button
Press and hold until the display changes as shown.
Press again to deactivate Siri Eyes Free.

Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

Using Siri Eyes Free

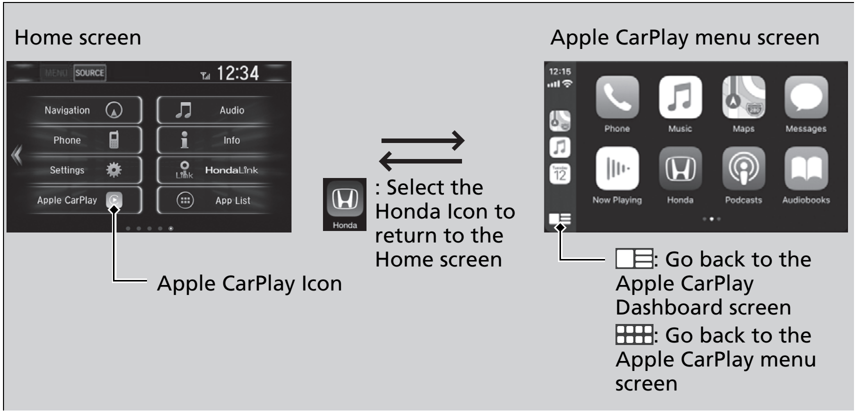
Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 227

Apple CarPlay Menu



Home screen

Apple CarPlay menu screen

: Select the Honda Icon to return to the Home screen

Apple CarPlay Icon

▭☰: Go back to the Apple CarPlay Dashboard screen

▦: Go back to the Apple CarPlay menu screen

Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

Continued

≫Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port located in the center console storage will not enable Apple CarPlay operation.

➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 227

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, press **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

➡ **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 314

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 418

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

■ Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

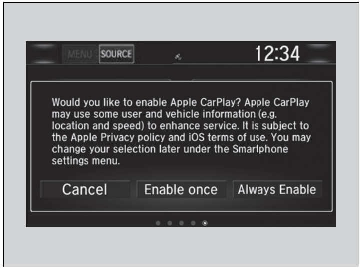
Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the Display Audio Screen.

■ Enabling Apple CarPlay



Would you like to enable Apple CarPlay? Apple CarPlay may use some user and vehicle information (e.g. location and speed) to enhance service. It is subject to the Apple Privacy policy and iOS terms of use. You may change your selection later under the Smartphone settings menu.

Enable Once: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
Always Enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

»Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations
Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

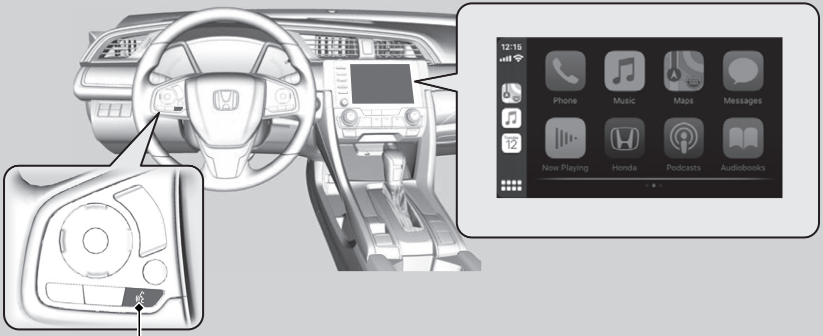
»Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:
Press the ⌂ button→Select Settings→Smartphone→Apple CarPlay

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to /from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the talk button to activate Siri.


12:15
Phone
Music
Maps
Messages
Now Playing
Honda
Podcasts
Audiobooks

(Talk) button:
Press and hold to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

≫Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How’s the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.
- Find a table for four tonight in Chicago.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

2 **USB Port(s)** P. 227
2 **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 318

Android Auto

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto.
Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

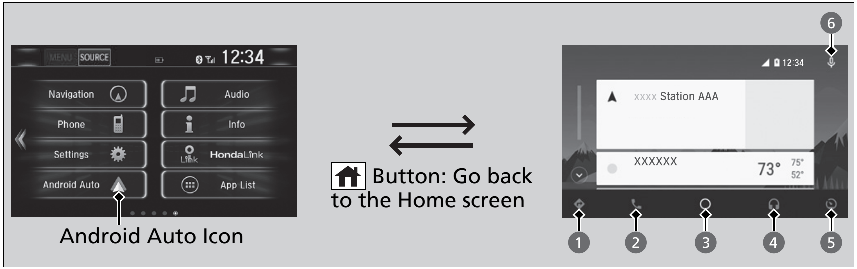
To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port in the center console storage will not enable Android Auto operation.

2 **USB Port(s)** P. 227

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

2 **Phone Setup** P. 418

Android Auto Menu



① Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.
The audio/information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

② Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

③ Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

Continued

≫Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

❹ **Music and audio**

Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

❺ **Go back to the Home Screen.**

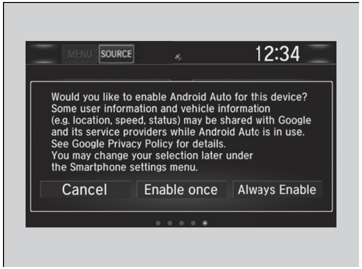
❻ **Voice**

Operate Android Auto with your voice.

Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

Enabling Android Auto



Would you like to enable Android Auto for this device?
Some user information and vehicle information (e.g. location, speed, status) may be shared with Google and its service providers while Android Auto is in use.
See Google Privacy Policy for details.
You may change your selection later under the Smartphone settings menu.

Enable Once: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
Always Enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

>Enabling Android Auto

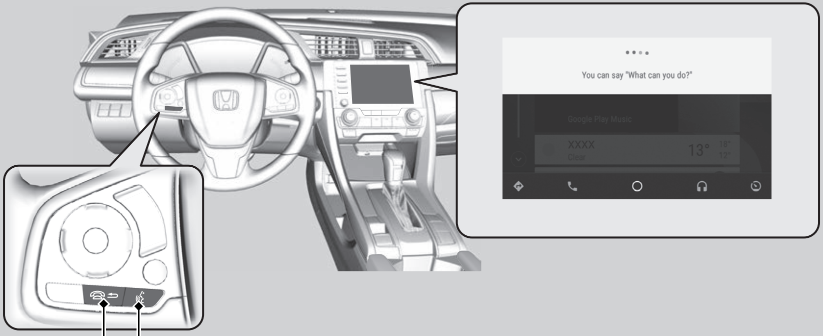
Only initialize Android Auto when you safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Press the 🏠 button→Select Settings→Smartphone→Android Auto

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to /from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google’s Privacy Policy.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the talk button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



🗣 (Talk) button:
Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

☎ ↩ (Hang-up/back) button:
Press to deactivate voice recognition.

»Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the 🎙 icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB Error[*1, *2]	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.
Bad USB Device **Please Check Owners Manual**[*1] **A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.**[*2]	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unsupported Ver[*1] **Unsupported Version**[*2]	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Retry Connection[*1] **Connect Retry**[*2]	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File[*1, *2]	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.

*1:Models with color audio system
*2:Models with Display Audio

Error Message	Solution
USB No Song[*1] **iPod No Song**[*1] **No Data**[*2]	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV[*2] files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported[*1, *2]	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

*1:Models with color audio system
*2:Models with Display Audio

U.S. models

Pandora®*

If an error occurs while playing Pandora®, you may see the following error messages.
If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
To begin listening, select a station from the Stations list.	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station.
The maximum number of tracks that can be skipped has been reached.	Appears when you try to skip a track or select **Like**/**Dislike** over the predetermined number of times in an hour.
Unable to play PANDORA. Please try again later. **Unable to rate track. Please try again.** **Unable to save bookmark.**	Appears when the commanded operation fails. Try again later.
No Data	Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device.
PANDORA App version is not supported.	Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version.
PANDORA system maintenance.	Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later.
Unable to connect to PANDORA. When stopped, check your mobile phone.	Appears when Pandora® is unable to play music. Check your device.
Unable to connect to PANDORA. When stopped, check your mobile phone.	Appears when Pandora® app is not installed on your device. Install Pandora® app to your device.

* Not available on all models

Models with Display Audio

Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message[*1]	Solution
Unfortunately, ** has stopped.**	Error has occurred within app, select **OK** on the screen to close the app.
****** is not responding. Would you like to close it?**	App is not responding. Select **Wait** if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select **OK** to close the app and restart it. If the error message continues, perform **Factory Data Reset**. ➲ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 379

[*1] ****part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

SiriusXM® Radio Service*

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

1. You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription. To see the ID on the screen, select **Channel** 0.
2. Have your radio ID ready, and either call SiriusXM® or visit the SiriusXM® website to subscribe.

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

Switch to the SiriusXM® mode by using the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel, or through the audio/information screen, and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

Contact Information for SiriusXM® Radio:
- U.S.: SiriusXM® Radio at *www.siriusxm.com/subscribenow*, or 1-866-635-2349
- Canada: SiriusXM® Canada at *www.siriusxm.ca/subscribe-now*, or (877) 209-0079

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

The SiriusXM® satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:
- In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle.
- In tunnels
- On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
- Large items carried on the roof rack

* Not available on all models

■ SiriusXM® Radio Display Messages

Requested Channel Not Subscribed:
You are not subscribed to the channel selected.
Channel Off Air:
The channel is not currently broadcasting.
Channel unauthorized:
SiriusXM® is loading the audio or program information.
Subscription Updated.:
SiriusXM® radio is receiving information update from the network.
Channel Not Available:
No such channel exists, or the artist or title information is unavailable.
No Signal:
The signal is too weak in the current location.
Check Antenna:
There is a problem with the SiriusXM® antenna. Contact a dealer.
Check Tuner:
There is a problem with the SiriusXM® tuner. Contact a dealer.

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) released between 2007 and 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5c*1/iPhone 5s*1/ iPhone 6*1/iPhone 6 Plus*1

*1:Models with Display Audio

USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV* formats may be unsupported.

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

* Not available on all models

Honda App License Agreement

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE CAREFULLY READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (THIS “AGREEMENT”) WHICH GOVERNS YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE INSTALLED ON YOUR HONDA OR ACURA VEHICLE (YOUR “VEHICLE”) AS WELL AS THE APPLICATIONS, SERVICES, FUNCTIONS, AND CONTENT PROVIDED THROUGH THE SOFTWARE (COLLECTIVELY, THE “SERVICES”). YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL SERVE AS YOUR CONSENT TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. THE SOFTWARE IS OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY AMERICAN HONDA MOTOR CO. INC., (“HONDA,” “US,” “WE,” OR “OUR”), WITH ITS BUSINESS ADDRESS AT 1919 TORRANCE BLVD., TORRANCE, CA 90501. REFERENCE TO “HONDA” IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES HONDA’S PARENT COMPANY AND ITS AFFILIATES AND DESIGNATED AGENTS. THE SERVICES ARE OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY HONDA OR A THIRD-PARTY SERVICE PROVIDER (A “PROVIDER”). REFERENCE TO A “PROVIDER” IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES SUCH PROVIDER’S PARENT COMPANY, AFFILIATES, AND DESIGNATED AGENTS.

A. Description of the Software. The SOFTWARE includes the software, firmware and the like, installed and executing on your VEHICLE during manufacture, and thereafter updated from time to time by HONDA, you or an authorized HONDA dealer (a “DEALER”). The SOFTWARE allows you to access and use a variety of SERVICES, including but not limited to: (a) HONDA applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, “HONDA SERVICES”); and (b) PROVIDER applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, “PROVIDER SERVICES”), each of which may provide access to various information, media, content, and services.

B. SOFTWARE Licensing and Intellectual Property.
1. SOFTWARE. This AGREEMENT grants you a non-exclusive, limited, and revocable license to use the SOFTWARE and SERVICES solely (a) as installed on your VEHICLE by HONDA, (b) as updated on your Vehicle by HONDA, you (but only as and when directed by HONDA), or a DEALER and (c) as permitted under the terms of this AGREEMENT.

2. HONDA Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various HONDA SERVICES. Installation, activation, or use of HONDA SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies applicable to those HONDA SERVICES (the “HONDA TERMS”). You acknowledge and agree that any collection, use, sharing of data generated by your VEHICLE or your use of your VEHICLE, and your use of the HONDA SERVICES shall be subject to this AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS that may be specifically applicable to such HONDA SERVICES or data generation. The HONDA SERVICES may collect, use, and share such data while you are using the SOFTWARE.

Continued

3. Open-Source Software. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may incorporate software licensed to HONDA under free or open-source licenses which govern HONDA's distribution and your use of such software. HONDA and the third-party authors, licensors, and distributors of such software disclaim all warranties and all liability arising from any and all use or distribution of the software. To the extent such software is provided under terms that differ from the applicable free or open-source licenses, those terms are offered by HONDA alone. Additional information regarding free and open-source software incorporated in the SOFTWARE and SERVICES is available in this manual or within the SOFTWARE.

4. Provider Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various PROVIDER SERVICES. Installation or use of such PROVIDER SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies of the applicable PROVIDER (the "PROVIDER TERMS"). This AGREEMENT restricts the manner in which you can install and use PROVIDER SERVICES but does not grant you a license or permission to use such PROVIDER SERVICES. Your permission to use PROVIDER SERVICES is limited and subject to any license grants, conditions, and limitations included in the PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge that any collection, use, sharing of your information, targeted advertising practices by PROVIDERS, and your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES shall be subject to both this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS. The PROVIDER SERVICES may collect, use, and share such information while you are using the SOFTWARE.

5. License Limitations and Restrictions on Use.

(a) Limited License. You understand and agree that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are licensed, not sold, to you solely for use in accordance with this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and any documentation for the VEHICLE made available to you by HONDA (any "DOCUMENTATION"). HONDA and its licensors reserve all rights in the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES not expressly granted to you under this AGREEMENT. PROVIDERS and their licensors reserve all rights in the PROVIDER SERVICES not expressly granted to you under the applicable PROVIDER TERMS.

(b) Restrictions on Use. The licenses granted under this AGREEMENT do not permit you to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES on a device other than your VEHICLE. As a condition of using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, you agree that you may not and will not:

(1) copy, download, distribute, modify, publish, sell, rent, lease, lend, license, sublicense, reuse, or create derivative works of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or any of the content or other material within the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including without limitation, HONDA or PROVIDER names, logos, or any other trademarks of HONDA or PROVIDERS or used in association with the SOFTWARE or any SERVICES, except as required to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in accordance with this AGREEMENT, any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and the DOCUMENTATION;
(2) access or use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any manner intended to damage or impair the operation of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or interfere with anyone else’s use and enjoyment of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES;
(3) access or attempt to access any system or server on which the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is hosted or modify or alter the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any way;
(4) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES for any unlawful purpose, or in violation of any third party rights;
(5) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in violation of any applicable traffic regulations, rules or laws, including but not limited to any driver distraction laws, rules or regulations;
(6) violate the terms of this AGREEMENT, any HONDA TERMS, any PROVIDER TERMS or other applicable third-party terms, conditions, and privacy policies; or
(7) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, attempt to derive the source code of, nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble, or attempt to derive the source code of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted (a) by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or (b) the terms of applicable free or opensource software licenses.

6. Intellectual Property Rights. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, the accompanying DOCUMENTATION, and all copies of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are owned by HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their suppliers or licensors. This AGREEMENT does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their licensors, affiliates, or suppliers.

Continued

7. Export Restrictions: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to U.S., European Union, and other export jurisdictions. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use, and destination restrictions issued by the U.S. and other governments.

C. SOFTWARE Operation

1. HONDA reserves the right to suspend or terminate your access to and use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES if you are found to be in violation of this AGREEMENT or as reasonably deemed necessary by HONDA.

2. Eligibility/Registration/Activation. The SOFTWARE is intended for and available to individuals who (a) are of legal age of majority in their jurisdiction of residence (and at least 18 years of age), or are younger than 18 years of age and possess a valid driver’s license issued by their jurisdiction of residence, and (b) own or have permissive access to a compatible VEHICLE. We do not knowingly collect any information, including personal information, from children under 13. If we learn or are notified that we have collected personal information of a child under 13, we will immediately take steps to delete such information.

3. Use of PROVIDER SERVICES through the SOFTWARE. Certain PROVIDER SERVICES made available through the SOFTWARE may require that you register or otherwise have an account with the PROVIDER and agree to PROVIDER TERMS. Any use of any of such PROVIDER SERVICES within the SOFTWARE is subject to this AGREEMENT and the applicable PROVIDER TERMS. HONDA does not exercise control over such PROVIDER SERVICES and is not responsible or liable for the availability, security, or content of such PROVIDER SERVICES, and the inclusion of any PROVIDER SERVICES does not imply a referral from, the approval of, or the endorsement by HONDA of such PROVIDER SERVICES. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage relating to or resulting from your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES.

4. Links to Third Party Sites: The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to access third-party sites and content through the use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. The third-party sites and content are not under the control of HONDA. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for such third-party websites and their content or for any damage relating to or resulting from your access or use of such websites and content.

5. Unauthorized Use and Abuse. You are responsible for ensuring your (and any authorized third parties') use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES remains in compliance with this AGREEMENT and all other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge and agree that any use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES occurring through your VEHICLE will be deemed your actions and that HONDA and PROVIDERS may rely upon such actions. You agree to immediately notify us if you suspect fraudulent or abusive activity involving the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. If you so notify us or if we otherwise suspect fraudulent or abusive activity, you agree to cooperate with us in any fraud investigation and to use any fraud prevention measures we prescribe. Your failure to immediately notify us or cooperate to use such measures will result in your liability for all fraudulent usage or abusive activity associated with your VEHICLE.

6. SOFTWARE Updates. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be updated when your VEHICLE is serviced by a DEALER or remotely, over-the-air, by HONDA from time to time; such updates may occur with or without further notice or your future consent. The SOFTWARE may be updated at HONDA's discretion and for any purpose including, without limitation, to patch or otherwise improve the SOFTWARE or SERVICES functionality, security, or stability. All updates to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to this AGREEMENT and any other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS.

7. Uninstalling, Removing, and Replacing the SOFTWARE. Replacing SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES with software or firmware not provided and installed by HONDA or a DEALER will render all representations and warranties for the SOFTWARE, HONDA SERVICES, and VEHICLE functionality reliant upon the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES null and void.

D. SOFTWARE Operational Notices and Warnings

1. Vehicle Geolocation Information. You acknowledge that your VEHICLE may be equipped with certain traffic and map features. The traffic feature will automatically collect and transmit, through GPS technology, your Vehicle's current location (longitude and latitude), travel direction and speed ("VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION") to HONDA and PROVIDERS. The VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION is used by HONDA and PROVIDERS to provide traffic and navigation-related information to you, but may also be used to provide other SERVICES or offers to you. HONDA will not use such VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION for its own marketing efforts, or provide such information to unaffiliated third parties for their own purposes, without your express consent.

Continued

2. Potential Map Inaccuracy and Route Safety. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls, routing, or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following suggested routes. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal driving maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals, or clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for such locations and routes. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Navigation features are not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by the SOFTWARE or SERVICES should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

3. Speech Recognition: You acknowledge and understand that HONDA and PROVIDERS may record, retain, and use voices commands when you use the speech recognition components of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. You and all VEHICLE operators and passengers (a) consent to the recording and retention of voice commands in support of providing speech recognition components and (b) release HONDA and PROVIDERS from all claims, liabilities, and losses that may result from any use of such recorded voice commands. Recognition errors are inherent in speech recognition. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.

4. Distraction Hazards. Navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) input or setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause a crash or other serious consequences; the ability to undertake such interactions may also be limited by state or local law, which laws you are responsible to know and follow. Even occasional short scans of the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving at a critical time. Pull over and stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could result in a crash.

E. Information Collection and Storage

1. Information Collection, Use, Transmission and Storage of Data. Consent to Use of Data: You agree that HONDA and PROVIDERS may collect and use your information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. HONDA may share such information with third parties, including, without limitation, PROVIDERS, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agents, solely to improve their products or to provide services or technologies to you. HONDA, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

2. Information Storage. Depending on the type of multimedia system you have in your VEHICLE, certain information may be stored for ease of use of the SOFTWARE including, without limitation, search history, location history in certain applications, previous and saved destinations, map locations within certain applications, and device numbers and contact information.

(a) Vehicle Health Information. Your VEHICLE may remotely transmit information regarding the status and health of your VEHICLE (“VEHICLE INFORMATION”) to HONDA without notification to you. VEHICLE INFORMATION may contain VEHICLE maintenance and malfunction status that is derived from VEHICLE diagnostic data and includes, but is not limited to, status of powered doors and windows, battery life data, battery charging data, VEHICLE speed, coolant temperature, air compressor revolution, output power, warning codes, diagnostic trouble codes, fuel injection volume, and engine rotations per minute. VEHICLE HEALTH INFORMATION may be used by HONDA for research and development, to deliver HONDA SERVICES and information to you, and to contact you, and is retained only for a period of time necessary to fulfill these goals.

(b) VEHICLE Geolocation Data (non-navigation/map based). If you opt-in to geolocation-based SERVICES, your vehicle’s geolocation data (latitude and longitude) will be automatically sent from your VEHICLE to HONDA and PROVIDERS.

(c) You understand that the inputting or uploading of information to your VEHICLE’s multimedia system or the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is at your own risk and that HONDA is not responsible for unauthorized access to or use of any personal or other information. All information uploaded to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be stored on your VEHICLES’s multimedia system and you understand that the security and safety of your VEHICLE’s multimedia system is your sole responsibility.

Continued

F. NO WARRANTY. You understand and agree that your use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are solely at your own risk and that you will be solely responsible for any damage to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or any other equipment or any loss of data that may result from your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. THE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES ARE PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESSED, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY. WE SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. HONDA makes no warranties that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will meet your requirements, or that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will be uninterrupted, timely, secure, non-infringing or error free. You understand and agree that you are responsible for any and all charges, costs or expenses associated with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. Advice or information, whether oral or written, obtained by you from us or through the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are provided for informational purposes only and will not create any warranty not expressly made herein. You should not rely on any such information or advice. We assume no liability or responsibility for any errors or omissions in the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. We do not make any warranty or representation that your use of the material displayed on, or obtained through, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is non-infringing of any rights of any third party. Any decision or action taken by you on the basis of information or content provided via the application is at your sole discretion and risk. HONDA and PROVIDERS are not responsible or liable for any such decision, or for the accuracy, completeness, usefulness, or availability of any content or information displayed, transmitted, or otherwise made available via the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. To the extent jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion of certain warranties, some of the above exclusions may not apply to you.

G. LIMITATIONS ON LIABILITY. You and HONDA are each waiving important rights.
1. Limitations on YOUR liability. HONDA cannot recover from you any consequential, indirect, incidental, or special damages, or attorney's fees in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES. HONDA WAIVES TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

2. Limitation on HONDA and PROVIDER liability. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable to you or any other party for consequential, indirect, incidental, special, or punitive damages (including without limitation lost profits) in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if HONDA or PROVIDERS are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). To the extent that a jurisdiction does not permit the exclusion or limitation of liability as set forth herein our liability is limited to the maximum extent permitted by law in such states. If HONDA or PROVIDERS are found liable to you for any reason, you agree that the aggregate liability of all these parties to you for any claim is limited to ten U.S. dollars (US $10.00). Neither HONDA nor any PROVIDER would have agreed to provide the SOFTWARE or SERVICES to you if you did not agree to this limitation. This amount is the sole and exclusive liability of HONDA and PROVIDERS to you, and is payable as liquidated damages and not as a penalty. Except where prohibited by law, you may not bring any claim against HONDA or any third-party beneficiary more than two (2) years after the claim arises. We do not have any liability for SOFTWARE or SERVICES interruptions of any length.

(a) Release of HONDA and PROVIDERS For yourself and anyone else claiming under you, you agree to release and discharge HONDA, PROVIDERS, their respective officers, directors, and employees, and each third-party beneficiary from all claims, liabilities and losses in connection with the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including, but not limited to claims for personal injury or property damage arising from the total or partial failure of performance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if caused by or based upon the negligence, gross negligence, strict products liability, Deceptive Trade Practices Act violations, bad faith, or breach of warranty of us or the malfunction of the SOFTWARE or SOFTWARE SERVICES. YOU AGREE TO WAIVE TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT. YOU HEREBY RELEASE AND DISCHARGE HONDA AND ITS LICENSORS AND CONTRACTORS (INCLUDING ANY THIRD PARTIES PROVIDING ALL OR PART OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES) FROM AND AGAINST ANY CLAIMS, DAMAGES, EXPENSES AND LIABILITY ARISING FROM OR RELATED TO ANY INJURIES, DAMAGES, OR LOSSES TO ANY PERSON (INCLUDING DEATH) OR PROPERTY OF ANY KIND RESULTING IN WHOLE OR PART, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, FROM YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES.

H. Survival. You agree that the limitations of liability and indemnities in this AGREEMENT will survive even after the AGREEMENT has ended. These limitations of liability apply not only to you, but to anyone using the SOFTWARE or SERVICES via your VEHICLE, to anyone making a claim on your behalf, and to any claims made by your family, employees, customers, or others arising out of or relating to your VEHICLE, the SOFTWARE, or SERVICES.

Continued

I. Availability/Interruption. The SOFTWARE and certain SERVICES are made available through your VEHICLE’s compatible multimedia system when the VEHICLE is turned on. Certain SERVICES may be available only through your compatible mobile device when it is within the operating range of the VEHICLE and a wireless carrier. The availability of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be subject to transmission limitation or interruption, including but not limited to technical obsolesce or sunsetting of the hardware, software or firmware, inside of or external to the Vehicle, required for data transmission or receipt. HONDA does not guarantee that the SOFTWARE, SERVICES, or any portion thereof will be available at all times or in all areas. You acknowledge and agree that HONDA is not responsible for performance degradation, interruption or delays. You acknowledge that HONDA shall not be liable to you if the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in a given location are not available. If the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are not available within your intended location, you agree that your sole remedy shall be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

J. PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is provided by HONDA. For product support, please refer to HONDA instructions provided in the DOCUMENTATION. Should you have any questions concerning this AGREEMENT, or if you desire to contact HONDA for any other reason, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

K. Termination and Transfer.

1. Termination. This AGREEMENT is effective until terminated by you or US. WE may terminate this AGREEMENT for any or no reason, and with or without notice to you. Your rights under this AGREEMENT will terminate automatically without notice from US if you fail to comply with any term of this AGREEMENT. Upon termination of this AGREEMENT, you shall cease all use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

2. Transfer: You may permanently transfer your rights under this AGREEMENT only as part of a sale or transfer of the VEHICLE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, and any upgrades), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this AGREEMENT. You agree to notify HONDA upon the sale or transfer of the VEHICLE. To contact HONDA, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

L. Changes to the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. WE may change, modify, or update the SOFTWARE or SERVICES from time to time. Unless explicitly stated otherwise, any new features or services that augment or enhance the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in the future shall respectively be considered part of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES and subject to this AGREEMENT. WE reserve the right at any time and from time to time to interrupt, restrict, modify, suspend, discontinue, temporarily or permanently, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES (or any portion thereof), with or without notice to you, and you agree that HONDA shall not be liable to you or to any third party for any modification, suspension or discontinuance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES.

M.ARBITRATION:

PLEASE READ THIS ARBITRATION PROVISION CAREFULLY TO UNDERSTAND YOUR RIGHTS. YOU AGREE THAT ANY CLAIM THAT YOU MAY HAVE IN THE FUTURE MUST BE RESOLVED THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION. YOU WAIVE THE RIGHT TO HAVE YOUR DISPUTE HEARD IN COURT AND WAIVE THE RIGHT TO BRING CLASS CLAIMS. YOU UNDERSTAND THAT DISCOVERY AND APPEAL RIGHTS ARE MORE LIMITED IN ARBITRATION.

Arbitration is a method of resolving a claim, dispute or controversy without filing a lawsuit. By agreeing to arbitrate, the right to go to court is waived and instead claims, disputes or controversies are submitted to binding arbitration. This provision sets forth the terms and conditions of our agreement. YOU and HONDA agree and acknowledge that this Agreement affects interstate commerce and the Federal Arbitration Act (“FAA”) applies. By using the Software, Vehicle, or Services, YOU elect to have disputes resolved by arbitration. YOU, HONDA or any involved third party may pursue a Claim. “Claim” means any dispute between YOU, HONDA, or any involved third party relating to your use of the Software, the Vehicle, or the Services, this Agreement, or our relationship, including any representations, omissions or warranties. “Claim” does not include personal injury or wrongful death claims. YOU or HONDA may seek remedies in small claims court or provisional judicial remedies without arbitrating. In addition, notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, YOU or HONDA may seek equitable relief in a court of competent jurisdiction.

YOU or HONDA may select arbitration with American Arbitration Association, JAMS or National Arbitration and Mediation. Contact these sponsors for their rules. The hearing will be in the federal district where YOU reside. If agreed, it may be by telephone or written submissions. Filing and arbitrator fees to be paid per the sponsor rules. You may contact the sponsor for a fee waiver. If no fee waivers, HONDA will pay filing and arbitrator fees up to $5,000, unless law requires more. Each party is responsible for other fees. Arbitrator may award costs or fees to prevailing party, if permitted by law. HONDA will not seek fees, unless the claims are frivolous.

Continued

Arbitrator shall be an attorney or current or retired judge familiar with automotive or consumer software. The arbitrator shall follow substantive law, statute of limitations and decide all issues relating to the interpretation, construction, enforceability and applicability of this provision. The arbitrator may order relief permitted by law. This provision is governed and enforceable by the FAA. An award shall include a written opinion and be final, subject to appeal by the FAA.
This provision survives termination of this Agreement or relationship, bankruptcy, assignment or transfer. If part of this provision is unenforceable, the remainder remains in effect. If unenforceability allows arbitration as a class action, then this provision is entirely unenforceable. YOU may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at Honda Financial Services, P.O. Box 165007, Irving, TX 75016. HONDA reserves the right to make changes to this provision after providing written notice and an opportunity to opt out.

N. Miscellaneous: You may not assign this AGREEMENT without HONDA's prior written consent. This AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS represents the entire agreement between you and US. HONDA may amend the terms of this AGREEMENT by providing you with notices of such updated terms. If you do not consent to be bound by the updated terms, your sole remedy will be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES. If any part of this AGREEMENT is found invalid, void, or unenforceable, the balance of the AGREEMENT will remain valid and enforceable according to its terms. To the fullest extent permitted by law, and except as explicitly provided otherwise, this AGREEMENT and any disputes arising out of or relating to it will be governed by the laws of the State of California, except that California laws concerning choice of law or conflicts shall not apply if they would cause the substantive law of another jurisdiction to apply. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Section M shall be governed by the Federal Arbitration Act and the laws of the State of California, as applicable, as set forth therein. The failure to enforce any term of this AGREEMENT on one occasion shall not prevent enforcement on any other occasion or the enforcement of any other term. Headings and captions shall not be considered included for purposes of interpretation or application hereof, but are for convenience only.

Models with Display Audio

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

■ OWNER’S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS’ LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS’ OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE’S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS’ LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS’ OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE’S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE’S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

Continued

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA’S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL DAMAGES (OTHER THAN AS MAY BE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN CASES INVOLVING PERSONAL INJURY) EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF FIVE DOLLARS ($5.00). THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

About Open Source Licenses

To see the open source license information, follow these steps.

Models with color audio system

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ◎ to select **Settings**, then press ◎.
3. Rotate ◎ to select **OSS Licenses**, then press ◎.

Models with Display Audio

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detail Information**.
6. Select **About device**.
7. Select **Legal information**.
8. Select **Open source licenses**.

≫About Open Source Licenses

Models with color audio system

LICENCE: Copyright © 2001 Bob Trower, Trantor Standard Systems Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the “Software”), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

License information*

DTS

For DTS patents, see *http://patents.dts.com*. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS Digital Surround and Neural Surround are trademarks of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

dts®
Digital Surround

dts®
Neural Surround

---

* Not available on all models

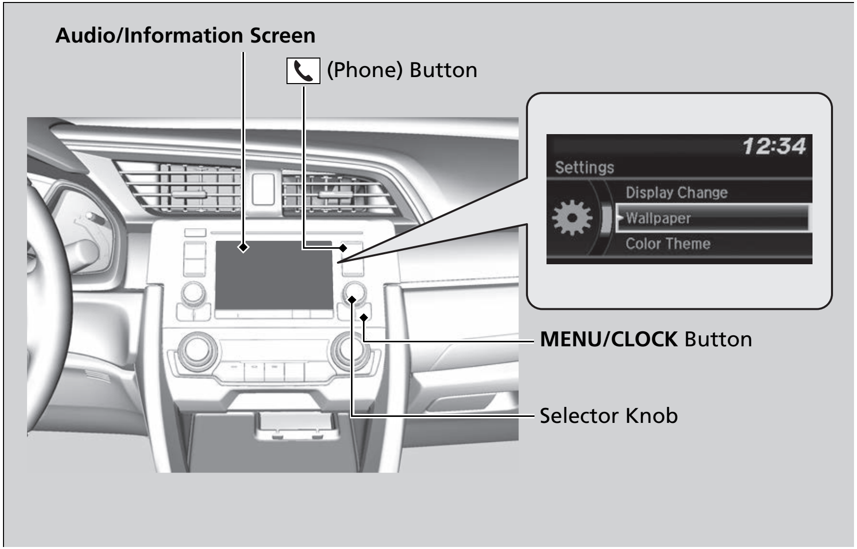
Customized Features

Models with color audio system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON II, press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the ☎ button, then select **Phone Setup**.


Audio/Information Screen
☎ (Phone) Button
12:34
Settings
Display Change
Wallpaper
Color Theme
MENU/CLOCK Button
Selector Knob

≫Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

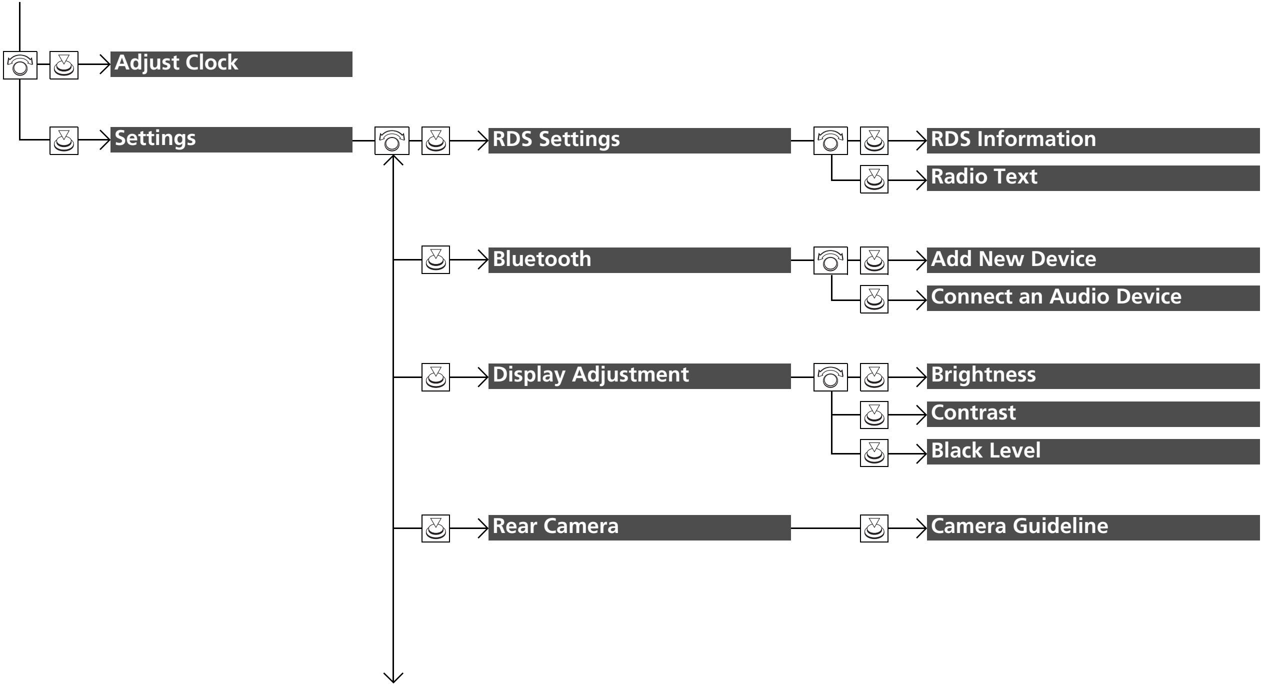
≫How to customize

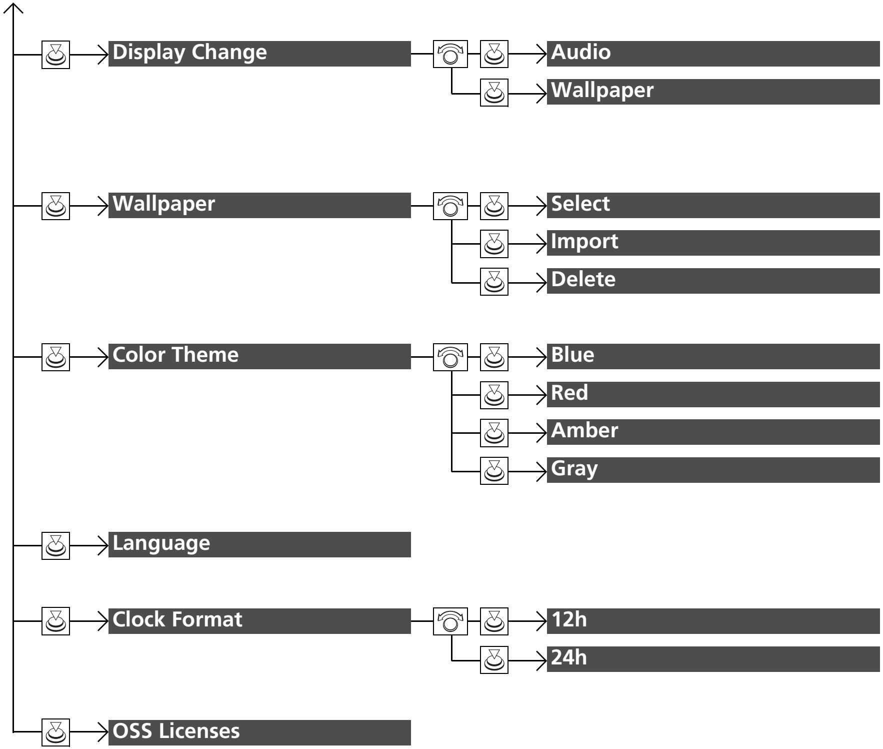
These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate ↻ to select.
Press ⇩ to enter.

Continued

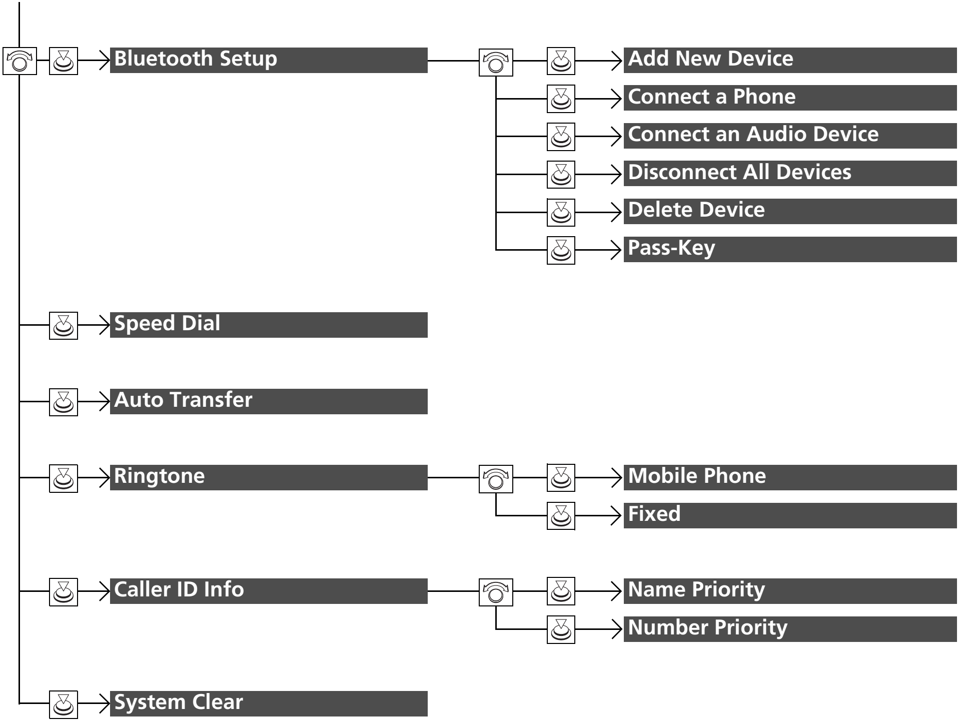
■ Customization Flow

Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.


Adjust Clock
Settings
RDS Settings
RDS Information
Radio Text
Bluetooth
Add New Device
Connect an Audio Device
Display Adjustment
Brightness
Contrast
Black Level
Rear Camera
Camera Guideline


Display Change
Audio
Wallpaper
Wallpaper
Select
Import
Delete
Color Theme
Blue
Red
Amber
Gray
Language
Clock Format
12h
24h
OSS Licenses

Press the ☎ button and rotate ⟳ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.


Bluetooth Setup
Add New Device
Connect a Phone
Connect an Audio Device
Disconnect All Devices
Delete Device
Pass-Key
Speed Dial
Auto Transfer
Ringtone
Mobile Phone
Fixed
Caller ID Info
Name Priority
Number Priority
System Clear

■List of customizable options

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust Clock			Adjust Clock. ➔ **Clock** P. 144	—
Settings	**RDS Settings**	**RDS Information**	Turns on and off the RDS information.	**On***1/**Off**
		Radio Text	Displays the radio text information.	—
	Bluetooth	**Add New Device**	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone. ➔ **Phone Setup** P. 390	—
		Connect an Audio Device	Connects, disconnects or pairs a *Bluetooth*® Audio device to HFL.	—
	Display Adjustment	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/ information screen.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/ information screen.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/ information screen.	—

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Settings	**Rear Camera**	**Camera Guideline**	Selects whether the guidelines come on the audio/information screen.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
	Display Change		Changes the display type.	**Audio**[*1]/**Wallpaper**
	Wallpaper	**Select**	Changes the wallpaper type.	**Clock**[*1]/**Image1**/**Image2**/**Image3**
		Import	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. ➔ **Wallpaper Setup** P. 236	—
		Delete	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	**Image1**[*1]/**Image2**/**Image3**
	Color Theme		Changes the background color of the audio/information screen.	**Blue**[*1]/**Red**/**Amber**/**Gray**
	Language		Changes the display language.	**English**[*1]/**French**/**Spanish**
	Clock Format		Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	**12H**[*1]/**24H**
	OSS Licenses		Shows the legal information.	—

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Setup	**Bluetooth Setup**	**Add New Device**	Pairs a new phone to HFL. ➔ **Phone Setup** P. 390	—
		Connect a Phone	Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFL. ➔ **Phone Setup** P. 390	—
		Connect an Audio Device	Connects a *Bluetooth*® Audio device to HFL.	—
		Disconnect All Devices	Disconnects a paired phone from HFL.	—
		Delete Device	Deletes a paired phone.	—
		Pass-Key	Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.	—
	Speed Dial		Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➔ **Speed Dial** P. 400	—
	Auto Transfer		Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.	**On***1/**Off**
	Ringtone		Selects a fixed ring tone or the one from the connected cell phone.	**Mobile Phone***1/**Fixed**
	Caller ID Info		Prioritizes the caller’s name or phone number as the caller ID.	**Name Priority***1/**Number Priority**
	System Clear		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Phone Setup** group as default.	—

*1:Default Setting

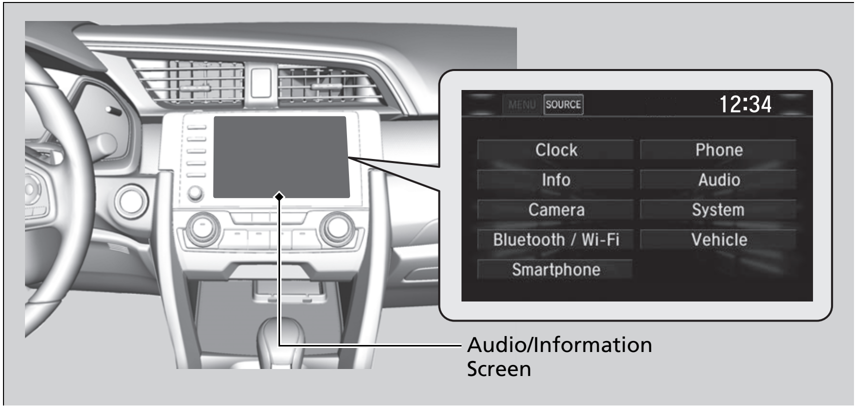
Customized Features

Models with Display Audio

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON II*1, press the ⌂ button, and select **Settings**, then select a setting item.


MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Clock
Phone
Info
Audio
Camera
System
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi
Vehicle
Smartphone
Audio/Information Screen

»Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.

Continuously variable transmission models

- Shift to P.

Manual transmission models

- Set the parking brake.

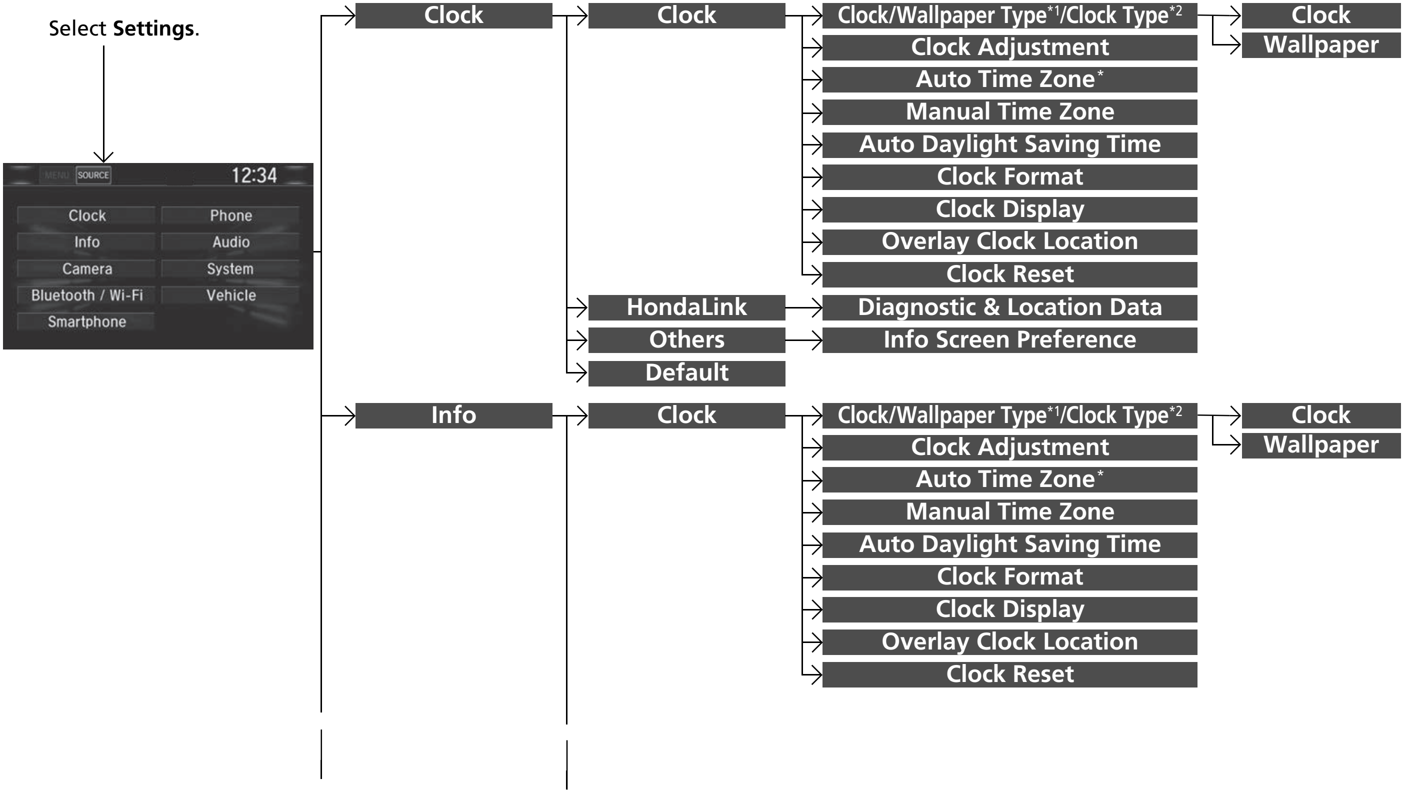
To customize features detail, refer to the following.

⮕ **Customization flow** P. 351
⮕ **List of customizable options** P. 359

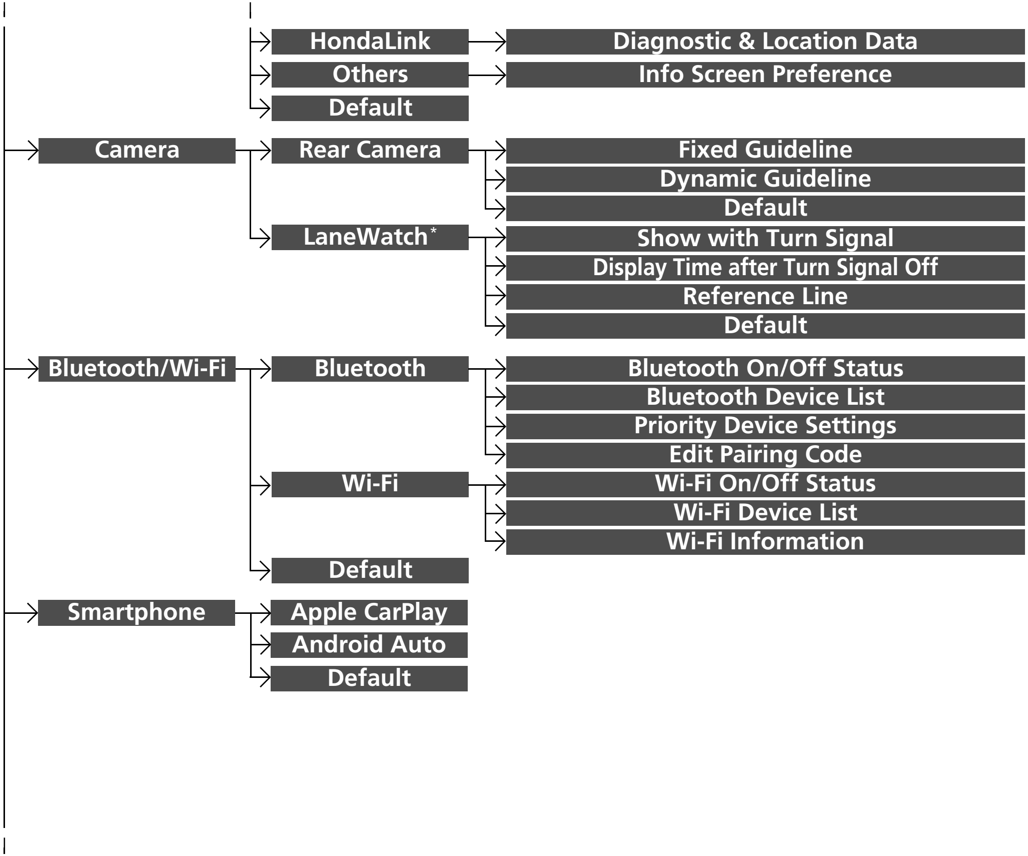
---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

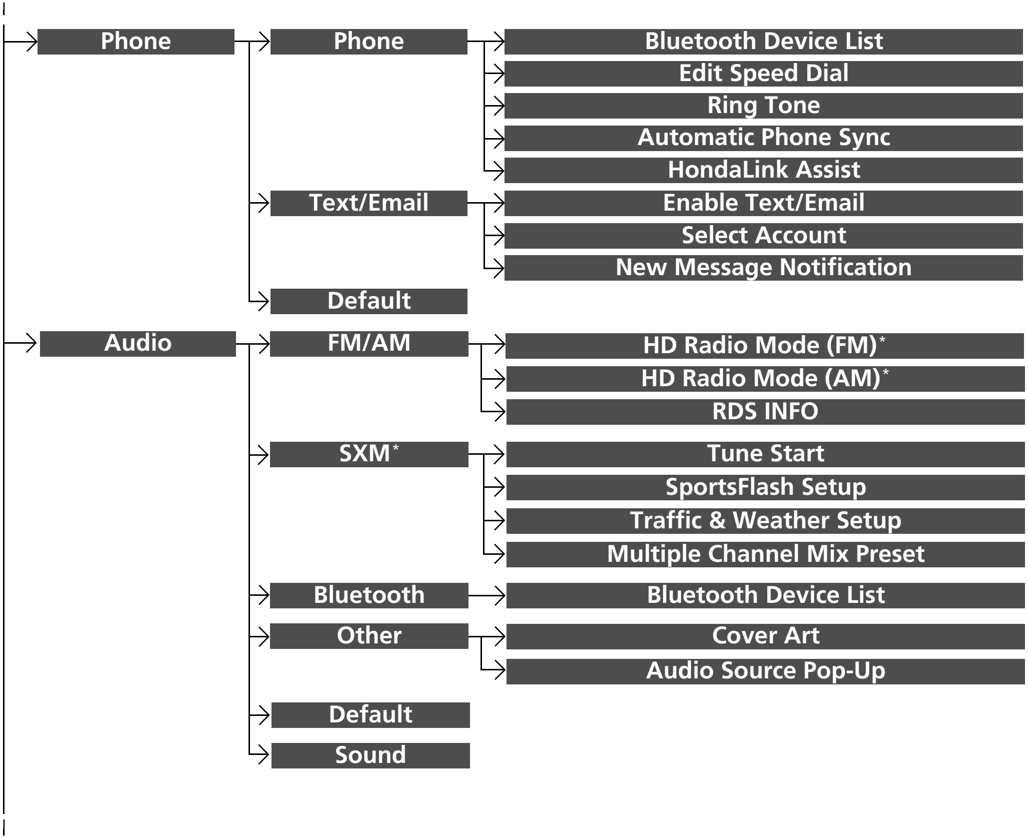
■ Customization flow


Select **Settings**.
MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Clock
Phone
Info
Audio
Camera
System
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi
Vehicle
Smartphone
Clock
Clock
Clock/Wallpaper Type*1/Clock Type*2
Clock
Wallpaper
Clock Adjustment
Auto Time Zone*
Manual Time Zone
Auto Daylight Saving Time
Clock Format
Clock Display
Overlay Clock Location
Clock Reset
HondaLink
Diagnostic & Location Data
Others
Info Screen Preference
Default
Info
Clock
Clock/Wallpaper Type*1/Clock Type*2
Clock
Wallpaper
Clock Adjustment
Auto Time Zone*
Manual Time Zone
Auto Daylight Saving Time
Clock Format
Clock Display
Overlay Clock Location
Clock Reset

*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

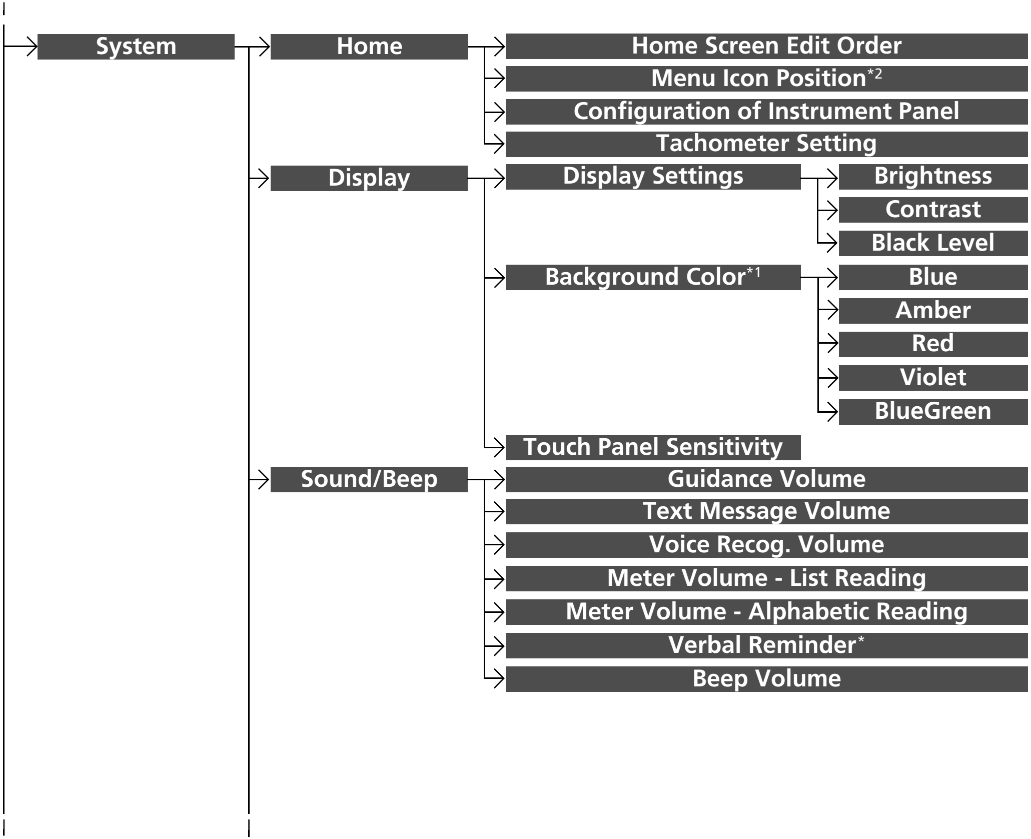

HondaLink
Diagnostic & Location Data
Others
Info Screen Preference
Default
Camera
Rear Camera
Fixed Guideline
Dynamic Guideline
Default
LaneWatch*
Show with Turn Signal
Display Time after Turn Signal Off
Reference Line
Default
Bluetooth/Wi-Fi
Bluetooth
Bluetooth On/Off Status
Bluetooth Device List
Priority Device Settings
Edit Pairing Code
Wi-Fi
Wi-Fi On/Off Status
Wi-Fi Device List
Wi-Fi Information
Default
Smartphone
Apple CarPlay
Android Auto
Default

* Not available on all models

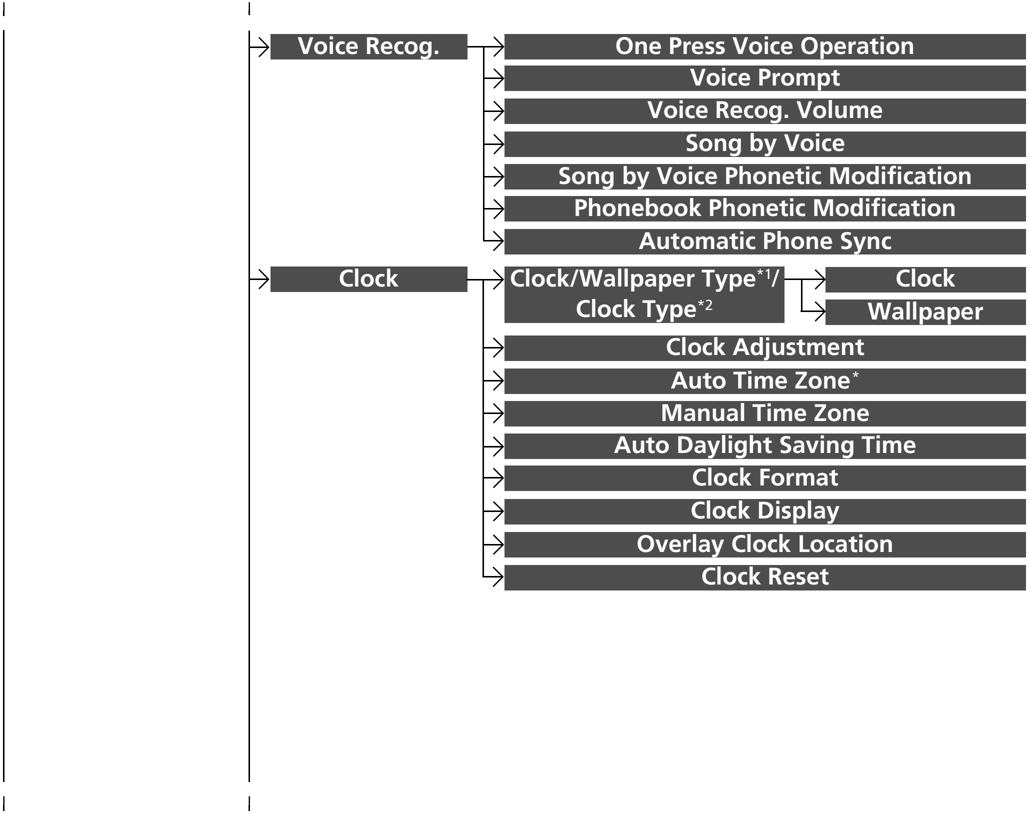

Phone
Phone
Bluetooth Device List
Edit Speed Dial
Ring Tone
Automatic Phone Sync
HondaLink Assist
Text/Email
Enable Text/Email
Select Account
New Message Notification
Default
Audio
FM/AM
HD Radio Mode (FM)*
HD Radio Mode (AM)*
RDS INFO
SXM*
Tune Start
SportsFlash Setup
Traffic & Weather Setup
Multiple Channel Mix Preset
Bluetooth
Bluetooth Device List
Other
Cover Art
Audio Source Pop-Up
Default
Sound

* Not available on all models

Continued


System
Home
Home Screen Edit Order
Menu Icon Position*2
Configuration of Instrument Panel
Tachometer Setting
Display
Display Settings
Brightness
Contrast
Black Level
Background Color*1
Blue
Amber
Red
Violet
BlueGreen
Touch Panel Sensitivity
Sound/Beep
Guidance Volume
Text Message Volume
Voice Recog. Volume
Meter Volume - List Reading
Meter Volume - Alphabetic Reading
Verbal Reminder*
Beep Volume

*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.


Voice Recog.
One Press Voice Operation
Voice Prompt
Voice Recog. Volume
Song by Voice
Song by Voice Phonetic Modification
Phonebook Phonetic Modification
Automatic Phone Sync
Clock
Clock/Wallpaper Type*1/ Clock Type*2
Clock
Wallpaper
Clock Adjustment
Auto Time Zone*
Manual Time Zone
Auto Daylight Saving Time
Clock Format
Clock Display
Overlay Clock Location
Clock Reset

*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

- **Others**
  - **Language**
  - **Voice Command Tips***
  - **Remember Last Screen***1
  - **Memory Refresh**
  - **Refresh Time Adjustment**
  - **Change Skin**
  - **Factory Data Reset**
  - **Climate Screen Timeout**
  - **Detail Information**
- **Default**

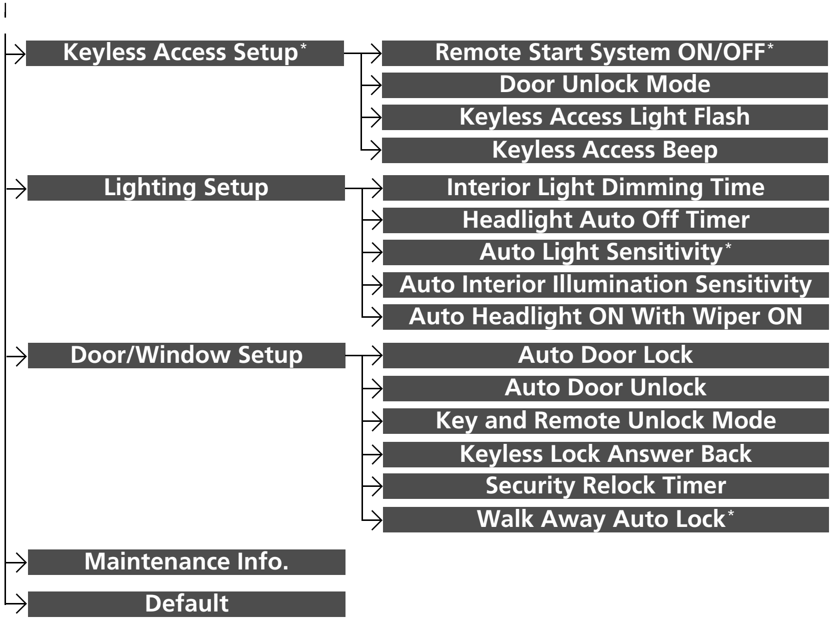
---

*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

- **Vehicle**
  - **TPMS Calibration***
    - **Cancel**
    - **Calibrate**
  - **Driver Assist System Setup**
    - **Forward Collision Warning Distance**
    - **ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep**
    - **Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep**
    - **Road Departure Mitigation Setting**
    - **Rev Match System***
  - **Meter Setup**
    - **Adjust Outside Temp. Display**
    - **“Trip A” Reset Timing**
    - **“Trip B” Reset Timing**
    - **Adjust Alarm Volume**
    - **Shift Up Backlight***
    - **Shift Up Alarm***
    - **Fuel Efficiency Backlight***
    - **Turn By Turn Auto Display**
    - **New Message Notifications**
    - **Speed/Distance Units**
    - **Tachometer**
    - **Gear Position Display***

* Not available on all models

Continued


Keyless Access Setup*
Remote Start System ON/OFF*
Door Unlock Mode
Keyless Access Light Flash
Keyless Access Beep
Lighting Setup
Interior Light Dimming Time
Headlight Auto Off Timer
Auto Light Sensitivity*
Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity
Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON
Door/Window Setup
Auto Door Lock
Auto Door Unlock
Key and Remote Unlock Mode
Keyless Lock Answer Back
Security Relock Timer
Walk Away Auto Lock*
Maintenance Info.
Default

* Not available on all models

List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Clock	**Clock**	**Clock/ Wallpaper Type***1/ **Clock Type***2	**Clock**	See **Info** on P. 360	
			Wallpaper		
		Clock Adjustment			
		Auto Time Zone*			
		Manual Time Zone			
		Auto Daylight Saving Time			
		Clock Format			
		Clock Display			
		Overlay Clock Location			
		Clock Reset			

*1:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Clock	**HondaLink**	**Diagnostic & Location Data**		See **Info** on P. 360	
	Others	**Info Screen Preference**			
	Default			Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Clock** settings group as default.	**Yes**/**No**
Info	**Clock**	**Clock/ Wallpaper Type***2/ **Clock Type***3	**Clock**	Changes the clock display type.	**Analog**/**Digital***1/ **Small Digital**/**Off**
			Wallpaper	• Changes the wallpaper type. • Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. • Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	**Blank**/**Galaxy***1/ **Metallic**/**Time Zone***
		Clock Adjustment		Adjusts Clock.	—
		Auto Time Zone*		Automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones.	**On***1/**Off**
		Manual Time Zone		Changes the time zone manually.	—
		Auto Daylight Saving Time		Select **On** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock to daylight savings time. Select **Off** to cancel this function.	**On***1/**Off**
		Clock Format		Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	**12H***1/**24H**

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info	**Clock**	**Clock Display**	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	**On***1/**Off**
		Overlay Clock Location	Changes the clock display layout.	**Upper Right***1/**Upper Left**/**Lower Right**/**Lower Left**/**Off**
		Clock Reset	Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	**Yes**/**No**
	HondaLink	**Diagnostic & Location Data**	Turns HondaLink® on and off.	**On***1/**Off**
	Others	**Info Screen Preference**	Selects the top menu when the **Info** is selected. ● **Info Top**- A brief menu pops up. ● **Info Menu**- A full menu pops up. ● **Off**- A menu does not pop up.	**Info Top**/**Info Menu***1/**Off**
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Info** settings group as default.	**Yes**/**No**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	**Rear Camera**	**Fixed Guideline**	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. ➲ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 560	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines adjust to the movement of the steering wheel. ➲ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 560	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Rear Camera** setting group as default.	**Yes**/**No**
	LaneWatch*	**Show with Turn Signal**	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a right turn.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Display Time after Turn Signal Off	Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the center.	**0 second**[*1]/ **2 seconds**
		Reference Line	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **LaneWatch** group as default.	**Yes**/**No**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth/ Wi-Fi	**Bluetooth**	**Bluetooth On/Off Status**		Changes the *Bluetooth*® status.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Bluetooth Device List		Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➔ **Phone Setup** P. 418	—
		Priority Device Settings	**Priority On/ Off Status**	Enables the system to or disables it from automatically establishing a connection with a *Bluetooth*® device which has been assigned priority.	**On**/**Off**[*1]
			Audio	Selects the priority device over another paired audio device(s).	—
			Phone	Selects the priority device over another paired phone(s).	—
		Edit Pairing Code		Edits a pairing code. ➔ **To change the pairing code setting** P. 419	**Random**/**Fixed**[*1]

[*1] :Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth/ Wi-Fi	**Wi-Fi**	**Wi-Fi On/Off Status**	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	**On**/**Off**[*1]
		Wi-Fi Device List	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	—
		Wi-Fi Information	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the head unit.	—
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Bluetooth/Wi-Fi** group as default.	**Yes**/**No**
Smartphone	**Apple CarPlay**		Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	—
	Android Auto		Sets up the Android Auto connection.	—
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Smartphone** group as default.	**Yes**/**No**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	**Phone**	**Bluetooth Device List**	Pairs a new phone to HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ➔ **Phone Setup** P. 418	—
		Edit Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➔ **Speed Dial** P. 424	—
		Ring Tone	Selects a fixed ring tone or the one from the connected cell phone.	**Fixed**/**Mobile Phone***1
		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	**On***1/**Off**
		HondaLink Assist	Turns HondaLink Assist on and off.	**On**/**Off***1
	Text/Email	**Enable Text/Email**	Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.	**On***1/**Off**
		Select Account	Selects a text or e-mail message account.	—
		New Message Notification	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.	**On**/**Off**
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Phone** settings group as default.	**Yes**/**No**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	FM/AM mode **FM/AM**	**HD Radio Mode***		Selects whether the audio system automatically switches to the digital radio waves or receives the analog waves only.	**Auto***1**/Analog Only**
		RDS INFO		Turns on and off the RDS information.	**On***1**/Off**
	SiriusXM® mode **SXM***	**Tune Start**		Turns on and off, starts the song from the beginning as you change preset stations.	**On***1**/Off**
		SportsFlash Setup	**Interrupt**	Turns on and off the sports alert function.	**Off/On(One Time)/ On(Continue)***1
			Favorite Team	Selects your favorite sports teams. ➔ **Live Sports Alert** P. 288	—
			Interrupt Beep	Causes the system to beep when the sports alert is notified.	**On***1**/Off**
		Traffic & Weather Setup		Selects the region you want to receive the information.	—
		Multiple Channel Mix Preset		Turns multiple channel mix preset on and off.	**On/Off***1

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	*Bluetooth*® mode **Bluetooth**	**Bluetooth Device List**	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 418	—
	Other	iPod or USB mode [Your selected media] **Cover Art**	Turns the cover art display on and off.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Audio Source Pop-Up	Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when **Audio** is selected on the home screen.	**On**/**Off**[*1]
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Audio** settings group as default.	**Yes**/**No**
	Sound		Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker’s sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 273	—
System	**Home**	**Home Screen Edit Order**	Changes the **HOME** screen icon layout.	—
		Menu Icon Position[*2]	Changes the position of the menu icons on the **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen.	—
		Configuration of Instrument Panel	Changes the **Instrument Panel** screen icon layout.	—
		Tachometer Setting	Turns on and off the tachometer display.	**On**[*1]/**Off**

[*1] Default Setting

[*2] Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
System	**Display**	**Display Settings**	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
			Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
			Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
		Background Color*2		Changes the background color of the audio/information screen.	Models with 16 or 17-inch wheels **Blue**/**Amber**/**Red**/**Violet**/**BlueGreen***1 Models with 18 or 20-inch wheels **Blue**/**Amber**/**Red***1/**Violet**/**BlueGreen**
		Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**High**/**Low***1
	Sound/ Beep	**Guidance Volume**		Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	**00**~**06***1~**11**
		Text Message Volume		Changes the text/e-mail message reading volume.	**01**~**06***1~**11**

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	**Sound/ Beep**	**Voice Recog. Volume**	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	**01~06**[*1]**~11**
		Meter Volume - List Reading	Changes the list reading volume.	**01~06**[*1]**~11**
		Meter Volume - Alphabetic Reading	Changes the alphabetic reading volume.	**01~06**[*1]**~11**
		Verbal Reminder[*]	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume.	**Off/1/2**[*1]**/3**
	Voice Recog.	**One Press Voice Operation**	Changes the setting of the 🗣 (Talk) button operation when using the voice operation.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Voice Prompt	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Voice Recog. Volume	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	**01~06**[*1]**~11**
		Song by Voice	Turns the Song By Voice™ on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Song by Voice Phonetic Modification	Modifies a voice command for music stored in the USB flash drive or an iPod/iPhone. ➔ **Phonetic Modification** P. 296	—
		Phonebook Phonetic Modification	Modifies a voice command for the phonebook. ➔ **Phonebook Phonetic Modification** P. 427	—
		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	**On/Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
System	**Clock**	**Clock/ Wallpaper Type**[*2]**/ Clock Type**[*3]	**Clock**	See **Info** on P. 360	
			Wallpaper		
		Clock Adjustment			
		Auto Time Zone*			
		Manual Time Zone			
		Auto Daylight Saving Time			
		Clock Format			
		Clock Display			
		Overlay Clock Location			
		Clock Reset			
	Others	**Language**		Change the display language.	**English (United States)**[*1]/**Français**/ **Español**

[*1] Default Setting
[*2] Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
[*3] Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	**Others**	**Voice Command Tips***	Alerts you when manual control of the system is disabled to prevent distraction while driving. Only voice commands are available.	**On***1/**Off**
		Remember Last Screen*3	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	**On**/**Off***1
		Memory Refresh	Turns on the audio system automatically and restores the fragmentation of a memory when the ignition switch is LOCK 0*2.	**On***1/**Off**
		Refresh Time Adjustment	Sets the time for **Memory Refresh**.	—
		Change Skin	Changes the screen interface design.	**Yes**/**No**
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➲ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 379	**Yes**/**No**

*1:Default Setting
*2:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*3:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	**Others**	**Climate Screen Timeout**	Changes the length of time the climate control display stays on when you press the **CLIMATE** button.	**Never**/**5 Seconds**/**10 Seconds***1/**20 Seconds**
		Detail Information	Displays the details of the head unit and operating system information.	
	Default		Cancels /Resets all customized items in the **System** group as default.	**Yes**/**No**
Vehicle	**TPMS Calibration***		Cancels/Calibrates the TPMS.	**Cancel**/**Calibrate**
	Driver Assist System Setup	**Forward Collision Warning Distance**	Changes the distance at which CMBS™ alerts.	**Long**/**Normal***1/**Short**
		ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range*/ACC with Low Speed Follow range*.	**On**/**Off***1
		Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep	Causes the system to beep when LKAS is suspended.	**On**/**Off***1
		Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	**Normal***1/**Wide**/**Warning Only**
		Rev Match System*	Turns the Rev Match System feature on and off.	**On***1/**Off**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Meter Setup**	**Adjust Outside Temp. Display**	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-5°F ~ ±0°F**[*1] **~ +5°F** (U.S.) **-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C** (Canada)
		"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	**When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset**[*1]
		"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	**When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset**[*1]
		Adjust Alarm Volume	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	**High/Mid**[*1]**/Low**
		Shift Up Backlight*	Changes whether shift up backlight blinks when the tachometer reading approaches the red zone. ➔ **Shift Up Backlight*/Shift Up Alarm*** P. 123	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Shift Up Alarm*	Changes whether alarm sounds when the tachometer reading approaches the red zone. ➔ **Shift Up Backlight*/Shift Up Alarm*** P. 123	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Fuel Efficiency Backlight*	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Turn By Turn Auto Display	Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.	**On**[*1]**/Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Meter Setup**	**New Message Notifications**	Used to select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Speed/Distance Units	Selects the trip computer units.	**mph·miles**[*1]/ **km/h·km** (U.S.) **mph·miles/** **km/h·km**[*1] (Canada)
		Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer is displayed on the driver information interface.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Gear Position Display[*]	Turns the gear position display feature on and off.	**On**[*1]/**Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Keyless Access Setup***	**Remote Start System ON/OFF***	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Door Unlock Mode	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	**Driver Door Only**[*1]/ **All Doors**
		Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**On**[*1]/**Off**
		Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**On**[*1]/**Off**

*1:Default Setting

---

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Lighting Setup**	**Interior Light Dimming Time**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**15seconds**/ **30seconds**[*1]/ **60seconds**
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**0seconds**/ **15seconds**[*1]/ **30seconds**/ **60seconds**
		Auto Light Sensitivity*	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	**Max**/**High**/**Mid**[*1]/ **Low**/**Min**
		Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**Max**/**High**/**Mid**[*1]/ **Low**/**Min**
		Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**On**[*1]/**Off**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Door/ Window Setup**	**Auto Door Lock**	Used to change the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift from P**[*2]**/Off**
		Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	**All Doors When Driver's Door Opens**[*1]**/All Doors When Shifted to Park**[*2]**/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off**
		Key and Remote Unlock Mode	Sets up the driver's door or all the doors to unlock on the first push of the remote.	**Driver Door**[*1]**/All Doors**
		Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90seconds/ 60seconds/ 30seconds**[*1]
		Walk Away Auto Lock*	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	**On/Off**[*1]

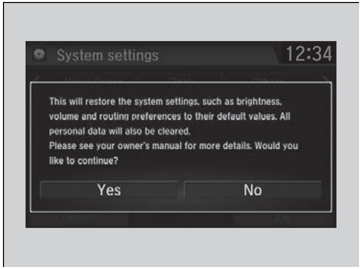
*1:Default Setting
*2:Continuously variable transmission models

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	**Maintenance Info.**	Used to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display when the maintenance service has been performed.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Vehicle** settings group as default.	**Yes**/**No**

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



This will restore the system settings, such as brightness, volume and routing preferences to their default values. All personal data will also be cleared.
Please see your owner's manual for more details. Would you like to continue?

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
   - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
   - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.
   - ▶ After selecting **OK**, the system will reboot.

≫Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, you cannot use the HondaLink® because it becomes off line.

➔ **HondaLink®** P. 305

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

■Important Safety Precautions

Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have the safety information, contact the manufacturer.

Before programming HomeLink, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the garage or gate to prevent potential injury or damage.

When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage door's path.

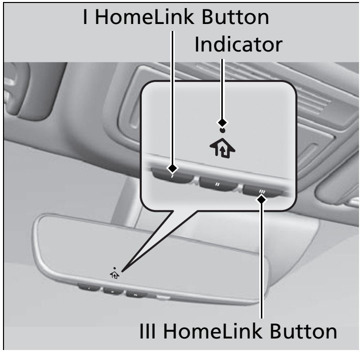
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*

Before programming HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an "electronic eye," or other safety and reverse stop features. If it does not, HomeLink may not be able to operate it.

---

* Not available on all models

Training HomeLink



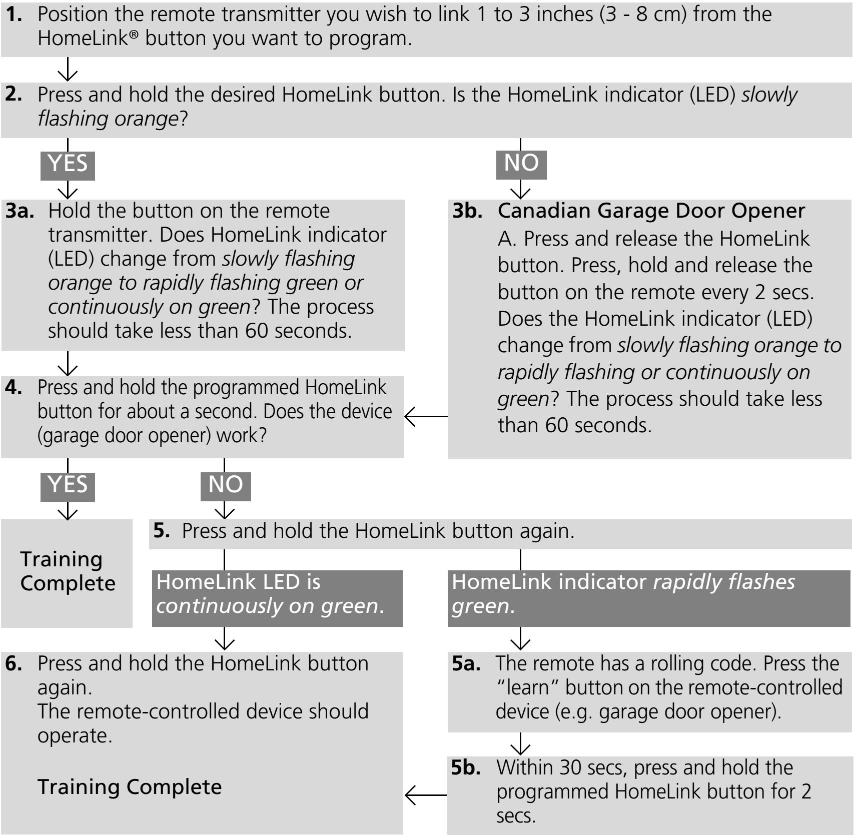
If it is necessary to erase a previously entered learned code:

- Press and hold the I and III HomeLink buttons for about 10 seconds, until the green indicator blinks. Release the buttons, and proceed to step 1.
- If you are training the second or third button, go directly to step 1.

The instructions on the next page should work for most gate or garage openers, but may not work for all. For detailed instructions about your specific remote opener, visit *http://www.homelink.com* or call (800) 355-3515.

Continued

Programming a Button



1. Position the remote transmitter you wish to link 1 to 3 inches (3 - 8 cm) from the HomeLink® button you want to program.

2. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button. Is the HomeLink indicator (LED) *slowly flashing orange*?

YES

3a. Hold the button on the remote transmitter. Does HomeLink indicator (LED) change from *slowly flashing orange to rapidly flashing green or continuously on green*? The process should take less than 60 seconds.

NO

3b. Canadian Garage Door Opener
A. Press and release the HomeLink button. Press, hold and release the button on the remote every 2 secs. Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) change from *slowly flashing orange to rapidly flashing or continuously on green*? The process should take less than 60 seconds.

4. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for about a second. Does the device (garage door opener) work?

YES

Training Complete

NO

5. Press and hold the HomeLink button again.

HomeLink LED is *continuously on green.*

HomeLink indicator *rapidly flashes green.*

6. Press and hold the HomeLink button again.
The remote-controlled device should operate.

Training Complete

5a. The remote has a rolling code. Press the "learn" button on the remote-controlled device (e.g. garage door opener).

5b. Within 30 secs, press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for 2 secs.

Training HomeLink

Reprogramming a Button
If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to *slowly flash orange*. This should take about 20 seconds.

2. Release the HomeLink button and position the remote transmitter you wish to link 1 - 3 inches (3 - 8 cm) from the HomeLink button you want to program, then follow steps 3 - 6 under "programming a button."

Erasing Button Memory
To erase programming from the buttons, press and hold the two outside HomeLink buttons until the HomeLink indicator changes from *orange to rapidly flashing green*. This should take about 10 seconds. You should erase all programming before selling the vehicle.

Operating
To operate, simple press and release the programmed HomeLink button. Activation will now occur for the trained device.

Questions
For questions or comments, visit *www.HomeLink.com*, *www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex*, or by calling the HomeLink Hotline (North America only) at (800) 355-3515.

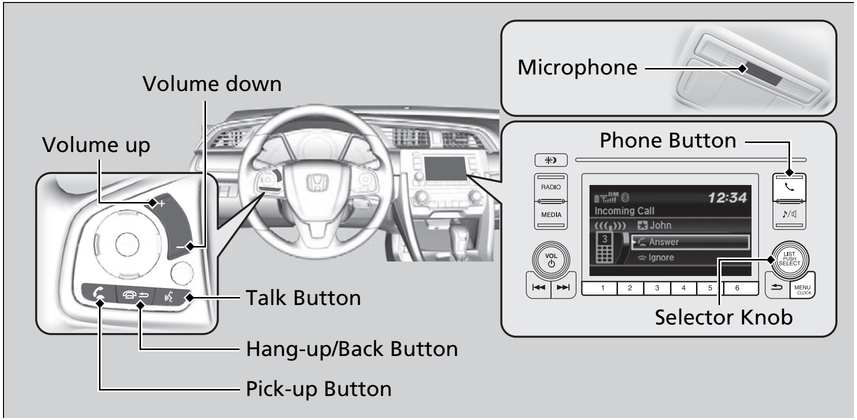
HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Models with color audio system

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

HFL Buttons


Microphone
Volume down
Volume up
Phone Button
RADIO
MEDIA
12:34
Incoming Call
John
3
Answer
Ignore
VOL
LIST PUSH SELECT
MENU CLOCK
1
2
3
4
5
6
Talk Button
Selector Knob
Hang-up/Back Button
Pick-up Button

≫*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities. Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528 -7876.

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the 🗣 button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

➲ **Speed Dial** P. 400

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Continued

(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up/back) button: Press to end a call or to cancel a command.

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

(Phone) button: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen.

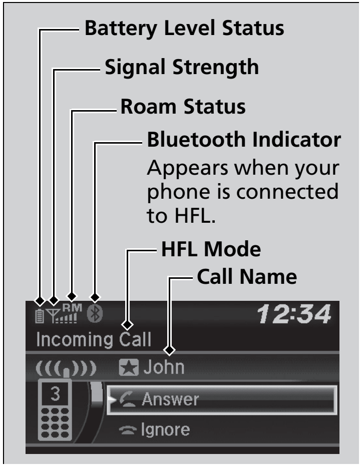
Selector Knob: Rotate ◎ to select an item on the screen, then press ◎.

≫*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFL Status Display


Battery Level Status
Signal Strength
Roam Status
Bluetooth Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFL.
HFL Mode
Call Name
RM
12:34
Incoming Call
John
3
Answer
Ignore

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

2 **Speed Dial** P. 400

≫HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

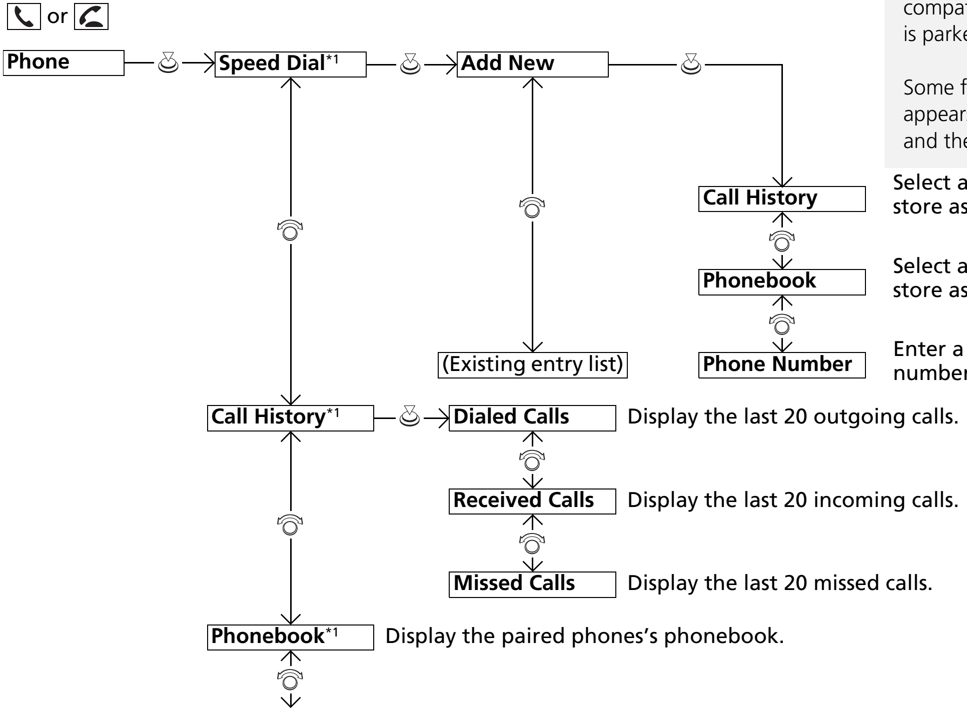
HFL Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II to use HFL.

»HFL Menus

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.


or
Phone
Speed Dial*1
Add New
Call History
Phonebook
Phone Number
(Existing entry list)
Call History*1
Dialed Calls
Received Calls
Missed Calls
Phonebook*1

Call History: Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

Phonebook: Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

Phone Number: Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

Dialed Calls: Display the last 20 outgoing calls.

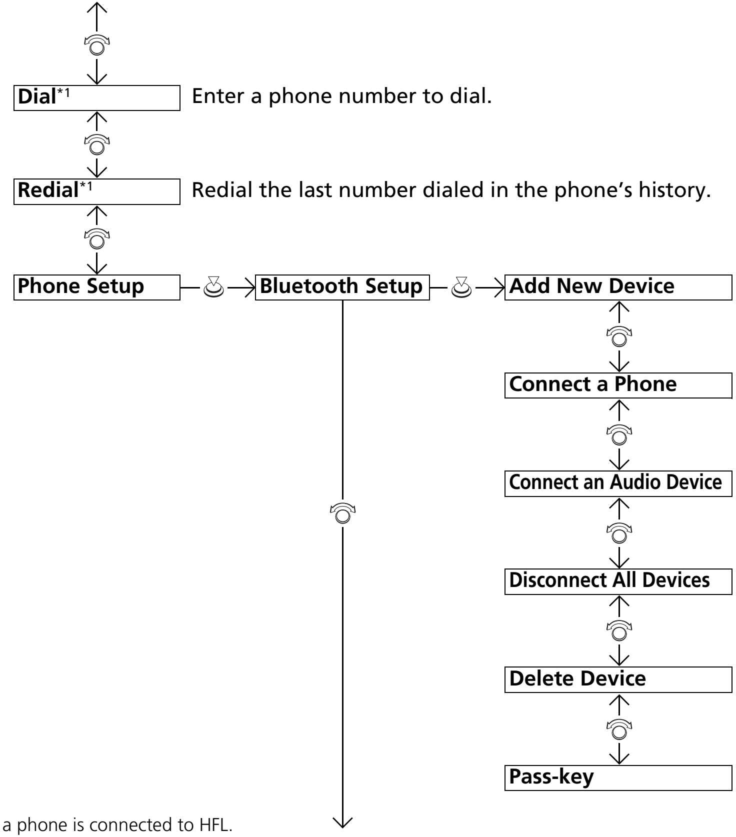
Received Calls: Display the last 20 incoming calls.

Missed Calls: Display the last 20 missed calls.

Phonebook*1: Display the paired phones’s phonebook.

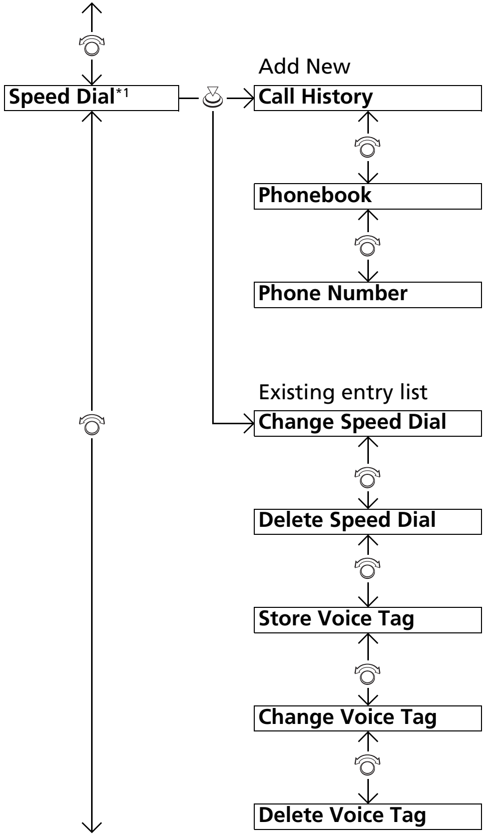
---

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.


Dial*1
Redial*1
Phone Setup
Bluetooth Setup
Add New Device
Connect a Phone
Connect an Audio Device
Disconnect All Devices
Delete Device
Pass-key

Dial[*1]	Enter a phone number to dial.
Redial[*1]	Redial the last number dialed in the phone’s history.
Add New Device	Pair a phone to the system.
Connect a Phone	Connect a phone to the system.
Connect an Audio Device	Connect a *Bluetooth*® Audio device to the system.
Disconnect All Devices	Disconnect a paired phone from the system.
Delete Device	Delete a previously paired phone.
Pass-key	Create a code for a paired phone.

[*1] Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.


Speed Dial*1
Add New
Call History
Phonebook
Phone Number
Existing entry list
Change Speed Dial
Delete Speed Dial
Store Voice Tag
Change Voice Tag
Delete Voice Tag

Speed Dial*1

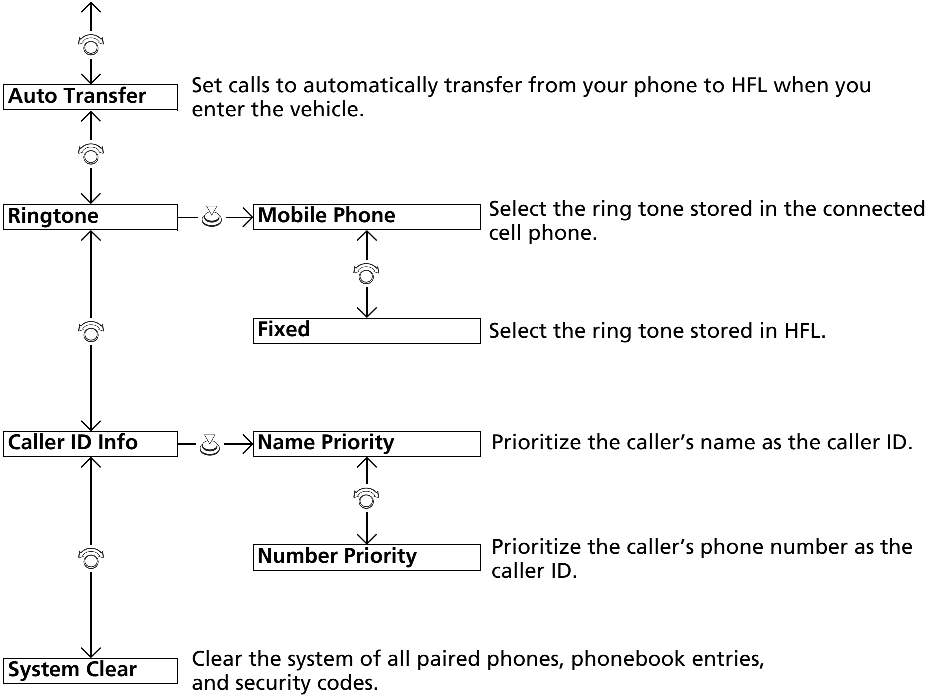
Add New

Call History	Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
Phonebook	Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
Phone Number	Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

Existing entry list

Change Speed Dial	Change a previously stored speed dial number.
Delete Speed Dial	Delete a previously stored speed dial number.
Store Voice Tag	Create a voice tag for a speed dial number.
Change Voice Tag	Change a voice tag for a speed dial number.
Delete Voice Tag	Delete a voice tag for a speed dial number.

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.


Auto Transfer
Ringtone
Mobile Phone
Fixed
Caller ID Info
Name Priority
Number Priority
System Clear

Auto Transfer: Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.

Mobile Phone: Select the ring tone stored in the connected cell phone.

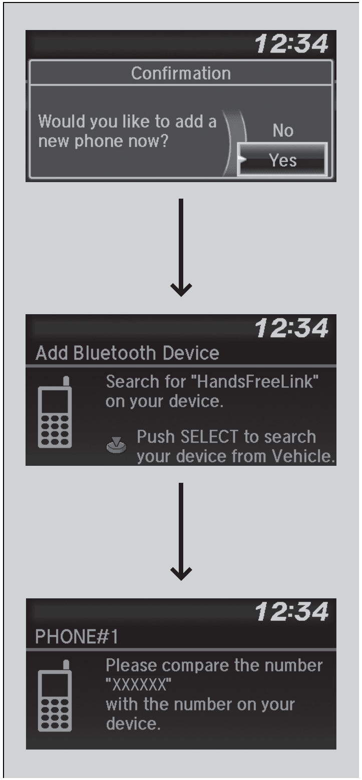
Fixed: Select the ring tone stored in HFL.

Name Priority: Prioritize the caller’s name as the caller ID.

Number Priority: Prioritize the caller’s phone number as the caller ID.

System Clear: Clear the system of all paired phones, phonebook entries, and security codes.

Phone Setup



Would you like to add a new phone now?

Search for "HandsFreeLink" on your device.

Push SELECT to search your device from Vehicle.

Please compare the number "XXXXXX" with the number on your device.

■ To pair a cell phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the 📞 button or the ☎ button.

2. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.

3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Yes**, then press ⊙.
▶ The audio system will enter a waiting mode for pairing.

4. Select **HandsFreeLink** form your phone.
▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, press ⊙ and follow the prompts.
When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing ⊙.

5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
This may vary by phone.

6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

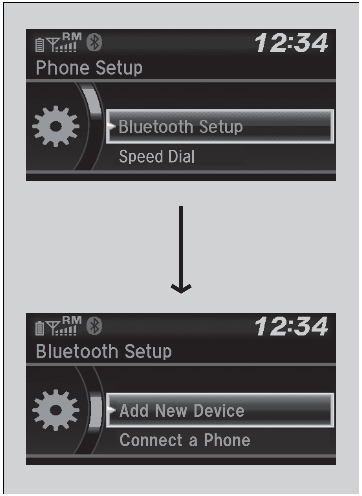
≫Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
📱: The phone can be used with HFL.
🔊: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

When pair a phone from this audio system:
If your phone doesn't appear on the audio/information screen, select **Phone Not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone.
From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.


12:34
Phone Setup
Bluetooth Setup
Speed Dial
12:34
Bluetooth Setup
Add New Device
Connect a Phone

■ To pair a cell phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)

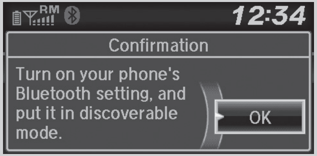
1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
▶ If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select **No** and proceed with step 2.

2. Rotate ◎ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.

3. Rotate ◎ to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press ⊙.

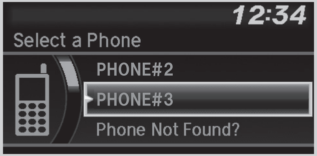
4. Rotate ◎ to select **Add New Device**, then press ⊙.
▶ The screen changes to device list.

Continued

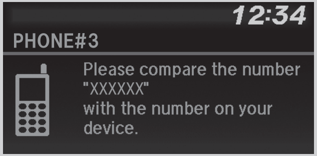

12:34
Confirmation
OK

Turn on your phone's Bluetooth setting, and put it in discoverable mode.

5. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press ⊚.
▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.

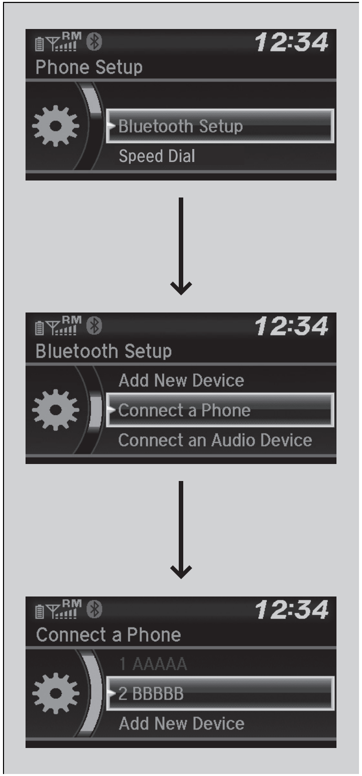

12:34
Select a Phone
PHONE#2
PHONE#3
Phone Not Found?

6. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing ⊚.
▶ If your phone does not appear, select **Phone Not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.


12:34
PHONE#3

Please compare the number "XXXXXX" with the number on your device.

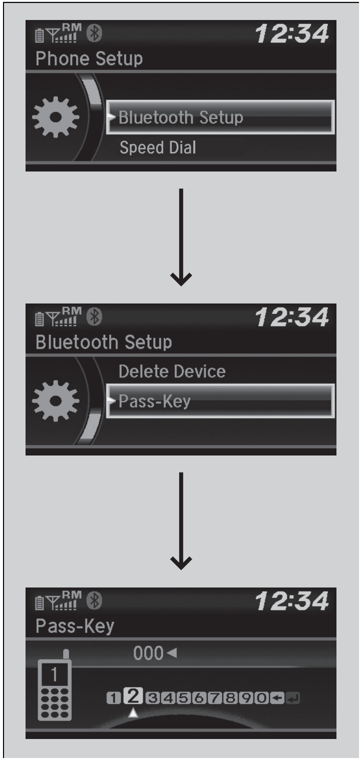
7. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
This may vary by phone.


12:34
Phone Setup
Bluetooth Setup
Speed Dial
12:34
Bluetooth Setup
Add New Device
Connect a Phone
Connect an Audio Device
12:34
Connect a Phone
1 AAAAA
2 BBBBB
Add New Device

■ To Change the currently paired phone

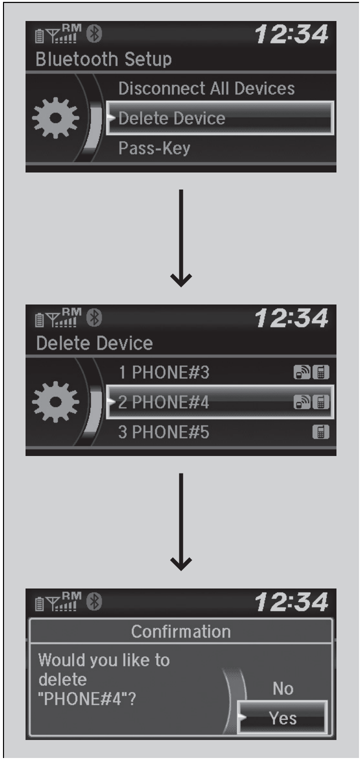
1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟳ to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟳ to select **Connect a Phone**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate ⟳ to select a desired device name, then press ⊙.
   ▶ HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

Continued


12:34
Phone Setup
Bluetooth Setup
Speed Dial
12:34
Bluetooth Setup
Delete Device
Pass-Key
12:34
Pass-Key
000◀
1
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0

■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the ☎ button or the 📞 button.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊚.
3. Rotate ⟳ to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press ⊚.
4. Rotate ⟳ to select **Pass-Key**, then press ⊚.
5. Input a new pairing code, then press ⊚.


12:34
Bluetooth Setup
Disconnect All Devices
Delete Device
Pass-Key
12:34
Delete Device
1 PHONE#3
2 PHONE#4
3 PHONE#5
12:34
Confirmation
No
Yes

Would you like to delete "PHONE#4"?

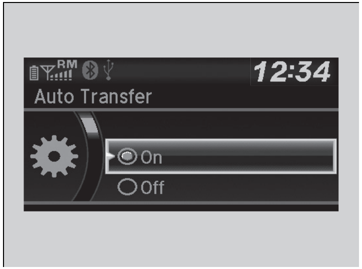
■ **To delete a paired phone**

1. Press the ☎ button or the ☏ button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ↻ to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ↻ to select **Delete Device**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate ↻ to select a phone you want to delete, then press ⊙.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ↻ to select **Yes**, then press ⊙.

Continued

Automatic Transferring

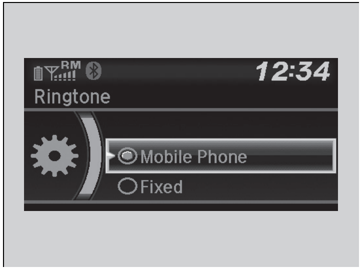
If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.



1. Press the 📞 button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Auto Transfer**.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **On** or **Off**.

Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



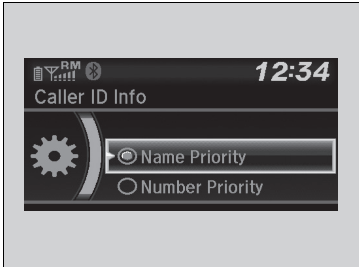
1. Press the 📞 button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Ringtone**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**, then press ⊙.

≫Ring Tone

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.
Mobile Phone: Depending on the make and model of the cell phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Caller ID Info**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select a mode you want, then press ⊙.

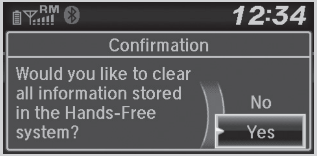
≫Caller's ID Information

Name Priority: A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.
Number Priority: A caller's phone number is displayed.

Continued

To Clear the System

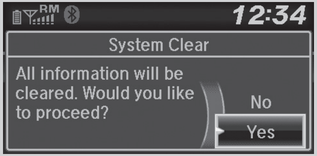
Pairing codes, paired phones, all stored voice tags, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.



Confirmation

Would you like to clear all information stored in the Hands-Free system?

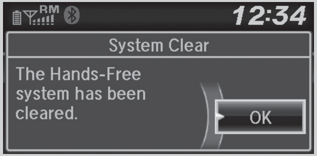
1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ⊚ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⊚ to select **System Clear**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⊚ to select **Yes**, then press ⊙.



System Clear

All information will be cleared. Would you like to proceed?

5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ⊚ to select **Yes**, then press ⊙.



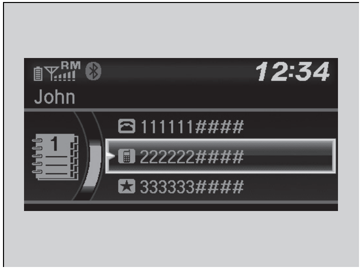
System Clear

The Hands-Free system has been cleared.

6. A notification appears on the screen. Press ⊙.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.



12:34
John
111111####
222222####
333333####

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

☎	Pref	📠	Fax
🏠	Home	🚗	Car
📱	Mobile	★	Other
🏢	Work	🗣	Voice
📟	Pager		

If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

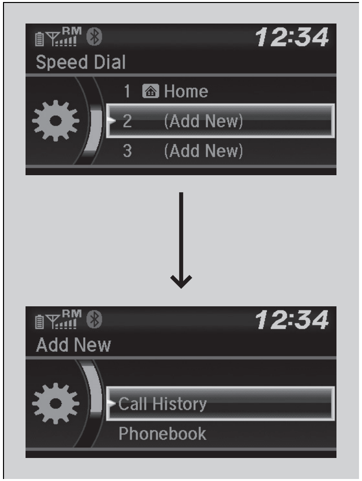
On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Continued

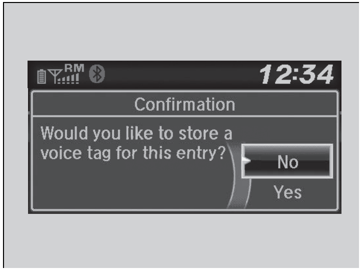
Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟳ to select **Add New**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟳ to select a place to choose a number from, then press ⊙.
   From **Call History**:
   ▶ Select a number from the call history.
   From **Phonebook**:
   ▶ Select a number from the connected cell phone's imported phonebook.
   From **Phone Number**:
   ▶ Input the number manually.



Would you like to store a voice tag for this entry?

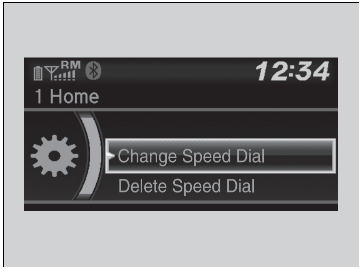
5. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Rotate ⟳ to select **Yes** or **No**, then press ⊙.
6. Using the 🗣 button, follow the prompts to say the name for the speed dial entry.

⏩Speed Dial

You can use the audio preset buttons during a call to store a speed dial number:

1. Press and hold the desired audio preset button during a call.
2. The contact information for the active call will be stored for the corresponding speed dial.

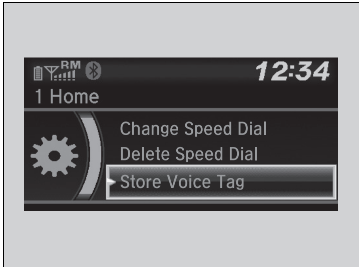
When a voice tag is stored, you can press the 🗣 button and call the number using voice commands.


12:34
1 Home
Change Speed Dial
Delete Speed Dial

■ To edit a speed dial

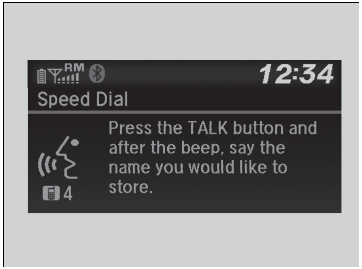
1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ↻ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ⊙.
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate ↻ to select **Change Speed Dial**, then press ⊙.
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press ⊙.

Continued



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ↻ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ⊙.
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate ↻ to select **Store Voice Tag**, then press ⊙.
6. Using the 🗣 button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.



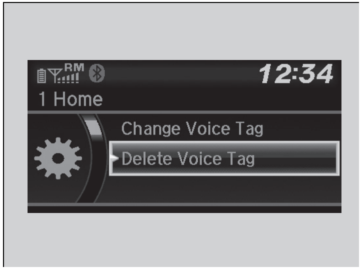
Press the TALK button and after the beep, say the name you would like to store.

■ To change a voice tag

1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ↻ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ⊙.
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate ↻ to select **Change Voice Tag**, then press ⊙.
6. Using the 🗣 button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

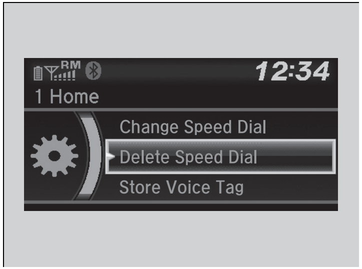
≫Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using “*home*” as a voice tag.
It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use “*John Smith*” instead of “*John*.”


12:34
1 Home
Change Voice Tag
Delete Voice Tag

■ To delete a voice tag

1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ◎ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ◎.
3. Rotate ◎ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ◎.
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate ◎ to select **Delete Voice Tag**, then press ◎.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ◎ to select **Yes**, then press ◎.


12:34
1 Home
Change Speed Dial
Delete Speed Dial
Store Voice Tag

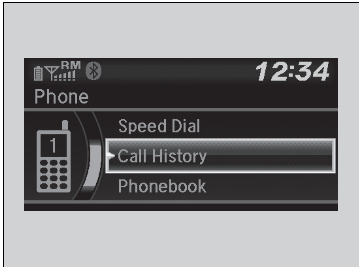
■ To delete a speed dial number

1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ◎ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ◎.
3. Rotate ◎ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ◎.
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate ◎ to select **Delete Speed Dial**, then press ◎.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ◎ to select **Yes**, then press ◎.

Continued

Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

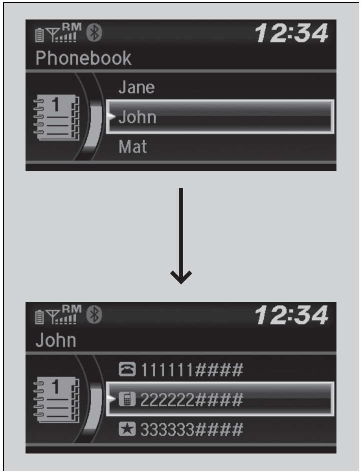


Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
Press the 🗣 button and follow the prompts.

The maximum range between your phone and vehicles is 30 feet (10 meters).

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

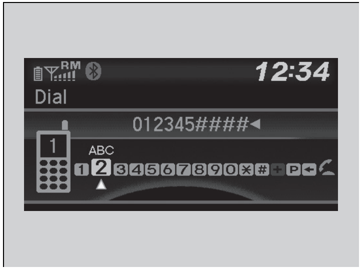
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFL.

1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Phonebook**, then press ⊙.
3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate ⟳ to select the initial, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟳ to select a name, then press ⊙.
5. Rotate ⟳ to select a number, then press ⊙.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

➲ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 385
➲ **Speed Dial** P. 400



■ To make a call using a phone number

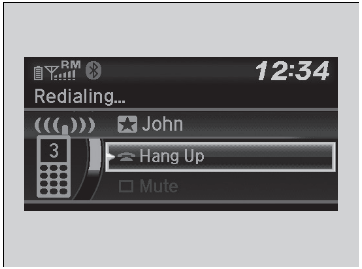
1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Dial**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟳ to select a number, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟳ to select ☎, then press ⊙.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

➲ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 385
➲ **Speed Dial** P. 400

Continued

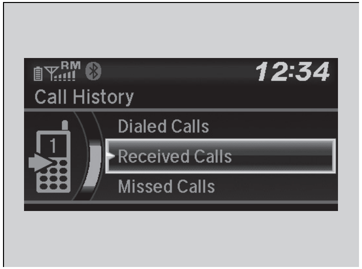

12:34
Redialing...
John
3
Hang Up
Mute

■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the ☎ button or the 📞 button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Redial**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

≫To make a call using redial

Press and hold the 📞 button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.


12:34
Call History
Dialed Calls
1
Received Calls
Missed Calls

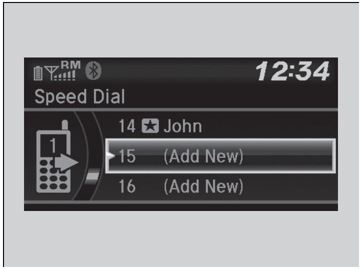
■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, and **Missed Calls**.

1. Press the ☎ button or the 📞 button.
2. Rotate ↻ to select **Call History**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ↻ to select **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, or **Missed Calls**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ↻ to select a number, then press ⊙.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

≫To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFL, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.



Speed Dial 12:34

14 John

15 (Add New)

16 (Add New)

■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Press the ☎ button or the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟳ to select a number, then press ⊙.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

≫To make a call using a speed dial entry

On the **Phone** screen, the first six speed dials on the list can be directly selected by pressing the corresponding audio preset buttons (1-6).

Select **Others** to view another paired phone's speed dial list.

When a voice tag is stored, press the 🎤 button and call the number using voice commands.

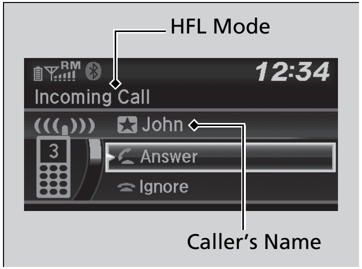
➔ **Speed Dial** P. 400

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the 🎤 button and follow the prompts.

Features

Continued

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming Call** screen appears.

Press the 📞 button to answer the call.
Press the ☎ button to decline or end the call.

≫Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Press the 📞 button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Press the 📞 button again to return to the current call.
Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Press the ☎ button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the 📞 and ☎ buttons. Rotate ↻ to select the icon, then press ⊙.

Options During a Call

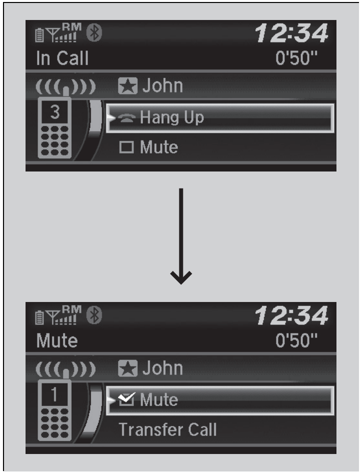
The following options are available during a call.

Swap Call: Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer Call: Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.

Dial Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.


12:34
In Call
0'50"
John
3
Hang Up
☐ Mute
12:34
Mute
0'50"
John
1
☑ Mute
Transfer Call

1. To view the available options, press the ☎ button.
2. Rotate ◎ to select the option, then press ◎.
   - ▶ The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

»Options During a Call

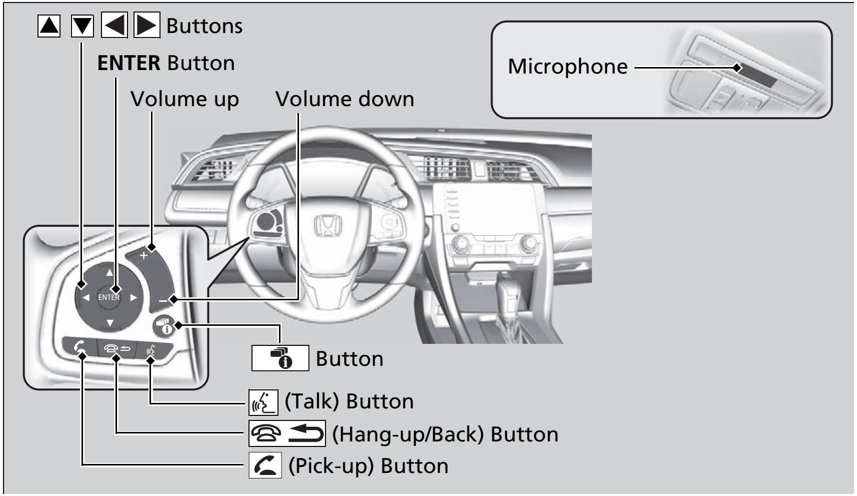
Dial Tones: Available on some phones.

Models with Display Audio

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

■ HFL Buttons



»*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528 -7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, HFL is unavailable.

2 **How to customize** P. 350

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.

Up to five speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered.

2 **Speed Dial** P. 424

☎ **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

☎ ↩ **(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

🗣 **(Talk) button:** Press to access Voice Portal.

▲ ▼ **buttons:** Press to select an item displayed on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

ENTER button: Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

ℹ **button:** Select 📱 and press **ENTER** to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Phonebook** on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

1. Press the 📱 button to switch the display to the phone screen.

2. Select **MENU**.

≫*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®

Up to five previous calls can be displayed at a time among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

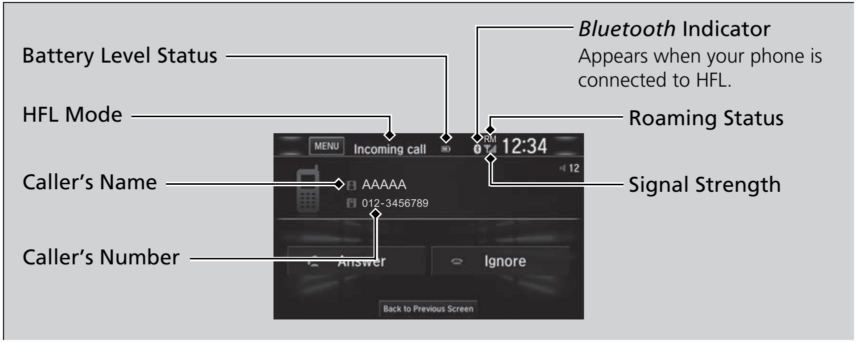
HFL Limitations

An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Continued

HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.


Battery Level Status
HFL Mode
Caller's Name
Caller's Number
Bluetooth Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFL.
Roaming Status
Signal Strength
MENU
Incoming call
RM
12:34
12
AAAAA
012-3456789
Answer
Ignore
Back to Previous Screen

Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➲ **Speed Dial** P. 424

≫HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

HFL Menus

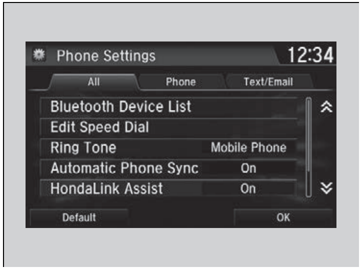
The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY [I] or [II]*1 to use HFL.

>>HFL Menus

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

■ Phone Settings screen

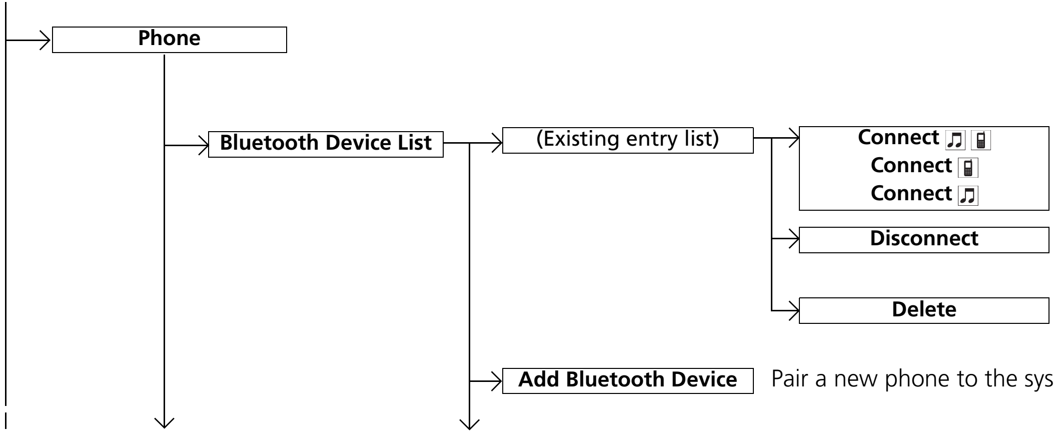

Phone Settings 12:34

All
Phone
Text/Email

Bluetooth Device List
Edit Speed Dial
Ring Tone Mobile Phone
Automatic Phone Sync On
HondaLink Assist On

Default
OK

1. Press the [⌂] button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.


Phone
Bluetooth Device List
(Existing entry list)
Connect ♫ 📱
Connect 📱
Connect ♫
Disconnect
Delete
Add Bluetooth Device

Connect a paired device to the system.

Disconnect a paired phone from the system.

Delete a paired phone.

Pair a new phone to the system.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

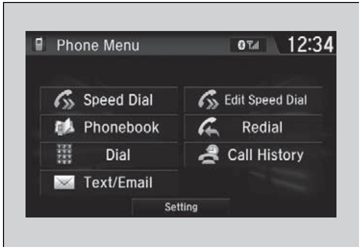
Continued

- **Priority Device Settings**
  - **Priority On/Off Status**: Enable the system to or disables it from automatically establishing a connection with a *Bluetooth*® device which has been assigned priority.
  - **Audio**: Select the priority device over another paired audio device(s).
  - **Phone**: Select the priority device over another paired phone(s).
- **Edit Speed Dial**
  - (Existing entry list)
    - **Edit**: Edit a previously stored speed dial number.
      - Change a name.
      - Change a number.
      - Create or delete a voice tag.
    - **Delete**: Delete a previously stored speed dial number.
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input**: Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History**: Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook**: Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
  - **Delete All**: Delete all of the previously stored speed dial numbers.
- **Ring Tone**: Select a fixed ring tone or the one from the connected cell phone.
- **Automatic Phone Sync**: Set phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.
- **HondaLink Assist**: Turn HondaLink Assist on and off.

Text/Email	**Enable Text/Email**	Turn the text/e-mail message function on and off.
	Select Account	Select a text or e-mail message account.
	New Message Notification	Select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.
Default		Cancel/Reset all customized items in the **Phone** settings group as default.

Continued

Phone Menu screen

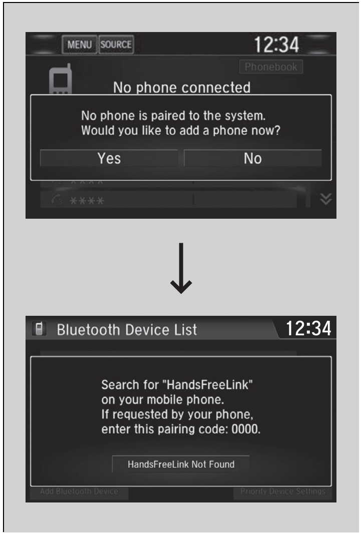

Phone Menu
12:34
Speed Dial
Edit Speed Dial
Phonebook
Redial
Dial
Call History
Text/Email
Setting

1. Press the ☎ button.
2. Select **MENU**.

- **Speed Dial**
  - **(Existing entry list)** Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input** Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History** Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook** Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
- **Edit Speed Dial**
  - **(Existing entry list)** Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input** Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History** Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook** Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

- **Phonebook** Display the paired phone’s phonebook.
- **Redial** Redial the last number dialed.
- **Dial** Enter a phone number to dial.
- **Call History**
  - **All** Display the last outgoing, incoming and missed calls.
  - **Dialed** Display the last outgoing calls.
  - **Received** Display the last incoming calls.
  - **Missed** Display the last missed calls.
- **Text/Email**
  - (Existing message list)
    - **Read/Stop** System reads received message aloud, or stop message from being read.
    - ◀ See the previous message.
    - ▶ See the next message.
    - **Reply** Reply to a received message using one of six fixed phrases.
    - **Dial** Make a call to the sender.
  - **Select Account** Select a text or e-mail message account.

Phone Setup



No phone connected

No phone is paired to the system.
Would you like to add a phone now?

Search for "HandsFreeLink"
on your mobile phone.
If requested by your phone,
enter this pairing code: 0000.

■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **HandsFreeLink** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **HandsFreeLink Not Found**, **Continue**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list. If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
   ▶ You can prioritize a *Bluetooth*® device at the same time. Select **Yes** and then a device you want to prioritize.

≫Phone Setup

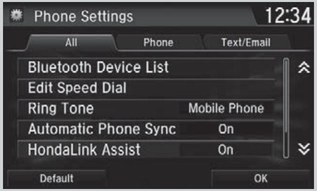
Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
📱: The phone can be used with HFL.
♫: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

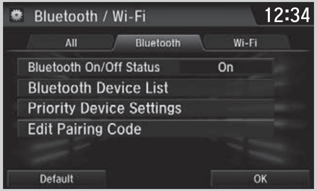
If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable and **Add Bluetooth Device** is grayed out from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.


Phone Settings
12:34
All
Phone
Text/Email
Bluetooth Device List
Edit Speed Dial
HondaLink Assist
Default
OK

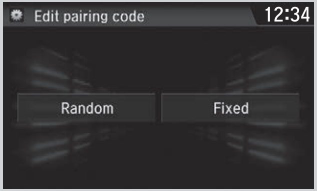
Ring Tone Mobile Phone
Automatic Phone Sync On
HondaLink Assist On

■To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➔ Phone Settings screen P. 413
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
   ▶ HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select **Connect** ♫ 📱, **Connect** 📱, or **Connect** ♫.


Bluetooth / Wi-Fi
12:34
All
Bluetooth
Wi-Fi
Bluetooth Device List
Priority Device Settings
Edit Pairing Code
Default
OK

Bluetooth On/Off Status On


Edit pairing code
12:34
Random
Fixed

■To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the 🏠 button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth/Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
5. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
6. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.

≫To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFL will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

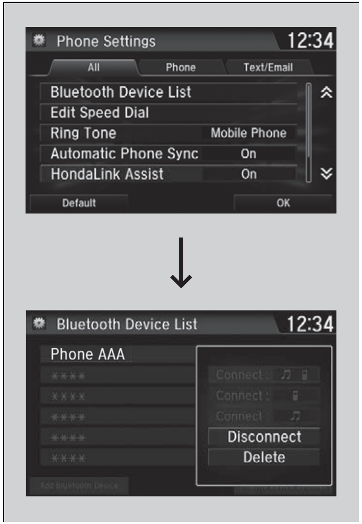
To change the *Bluetooth*® connection priority device setting, select **Priority Device Settings** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

≫To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

Continued

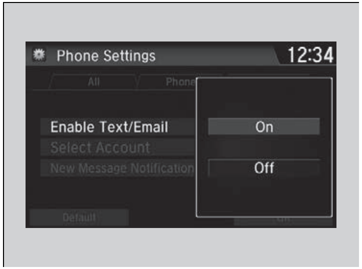

Phone Settings
12:34
All
Phone
Text/Email
Bluetooth Device List
Edit Speed Dial
Default
OK
Bluetooth Device List
12:34
Phone AAA
＊＊＊＊
＊＊＊＊
＊＊＊＊
＊＊＊＊
＊＊＊＊
Connect
Connect
Connect
Disconnect
Delete
Add Bluetooth Device

Ring Tone Mobile Phone
Automatic Phone Sync On
HondaLink Assist On

■ To delete a paired phone

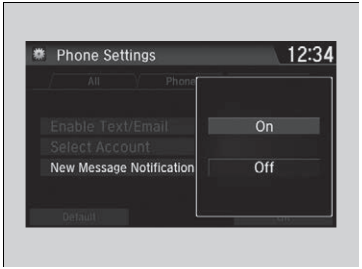
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   - **Phone Settings screen** P. 413
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options


Phone Settings
12:34
All
Phone
Enable Text/Email
Select Account
New Message Notification
On
Off
Default

To turn on or off the text/e-mail message function

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   - **Phone Settings screen** P. 413
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Enable Text/Email**.
   - ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.


Phone Settings
12:34
All
Phone
Enable Text/Email
Select Account
New Message Notification
On
Off
Default

To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   - **Phone Settings screen** P. 413
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **New Message Notification**.
   - ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options

To use the text/e-mail message function, it may be necessary to set up on your phone.

Some text/e-mail message features may not be available depending on a cell phone.

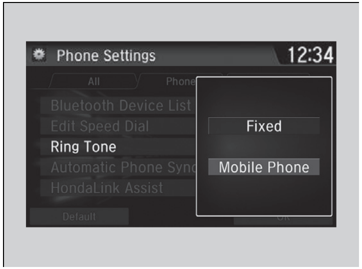
To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

On: A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.
Off: The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

Continued

Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

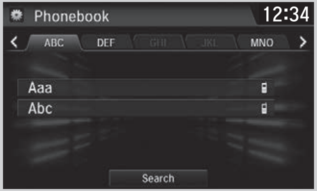

Phone Settings
12:34
All
Phone
Bluetooth Device List
Edit Speed Dial
Ring Tone
Automatic Phone Sync
HondaLink Assist
Default
OK
Fixed
Mobile Phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   Phone Settings screen P. 413
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

Ring Tone

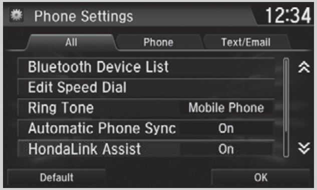
Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.
Mobile Phone: Depending on the make and model of the cell phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

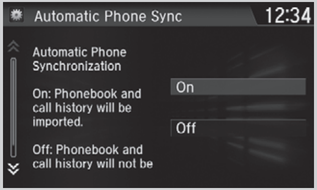

Phonebook
12:34
ABC
DEF
GHI
JKL
MNO
Aaa
Abc
Search

■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.


Phone Settings
12:34
All
Phone
Text/Email
Bluetooth Device List
Edit Speed Dial
Default
OK

Ring Tone Mobile Phone
Automatic Phone Sync On
HondaLink Assist On


Automatic Phone Sync
12:34
Automatic Phone Synchronization
On
Off

On: Phonebook and call history will be imported.

Off: Phonebook and call history will not be

■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   Phone Settings screen P. 413
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

Continued

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

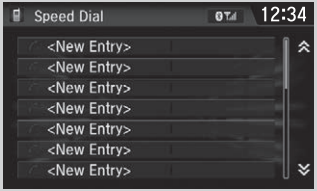
☎ Pref	📠 Fax
🏠 Home	🚗 Car
📱 Mobile	★ Other
🏢 Work	🗣 Voice
📟 Pager	

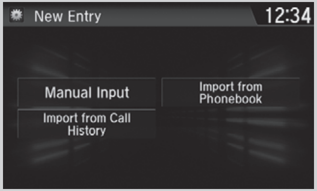
On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

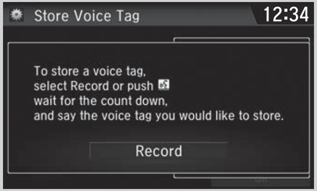
The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.


Speed Dial
12:34
<New Entry>
<New Entry>
<New Entry>
<New Entry>
<New Entry>
<New Entry>
<New Entry>


New Entry
12:34
Manual Input
Import from Phonebook
Import from Call History


Store Voice Tag
12:34
Record

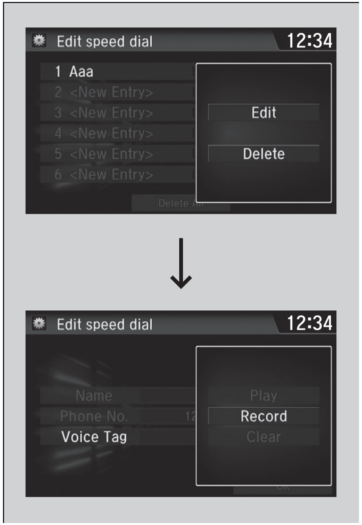
To store a voice tag, select Record or push wait for the count down, and say the voice tag you would like to store.

To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
   - **Phone Menu screen** P. 416
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select **New Entry**.
   From **Import from Call History**:
   ▶ Select a number from the call history.
   From **Manual Input**:
   ▶ Input the number manually.
   From **Import from Phonebook**:
   ▶ Select a number from the connected cell phone's imported phonebook.
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.


Edit speed dial
12:34
1 Aaa
2 <New Entry>
3 <New Entry>
4 <New Entry>
5 <New Entry>
6 <New Entry>
Delete All
Edit
Delete
Edit speed dial
12:34
Name
Phone No.
Voice Tag
Play
Record
Clear

■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.

   ➔ **Phone Settings screen** P. 413

2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.

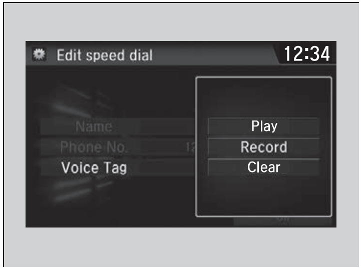
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.

   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.

4. Select **Voice Tag**.

   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.

5. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.


Edit speed dial
12:34
Name
Phone No.
Voice Tag
Play
Record
Clear

■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.

   ➔ **Phone Settings screen** P. 413

2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.

3. Select an existing speed dial entry.

   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.

4. Select **Voice Tag**.

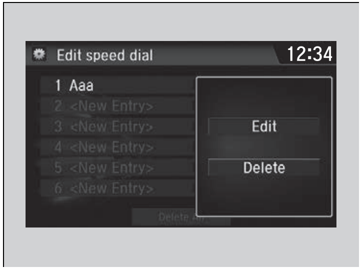
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.

5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

»Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognize a longer name.
For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."

Continued


Edit speed dial
12:34
1 Aaa
2 <New Entry>
3 <New Entry>
4 <New Entry>
5 <New Entry>
6 <New Entry>
Edit
Delete
Delete All

■ To edit a speed dial

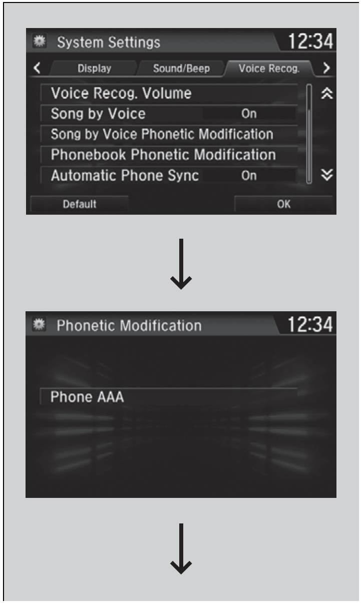
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   - ⮚ **Phone Settings screen** P. 413
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

■ To delete a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   - ⮚ **Phone Settings screen** P. 413
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Phonebook Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications or a new voice tag to the phone’s contact name so that it is easier for HFL to recognize voice commands.


System Settings
12:34
Display
Sound/Beep
Voice Recog.
Voice Recog. Volume
Song by Voice Phonetic Modification
Phonebook Phonetic Modification
Default
OK
Phonetic Modification
12:34
Phone AAA

Song by Voice On
Automatic Phone Sync On

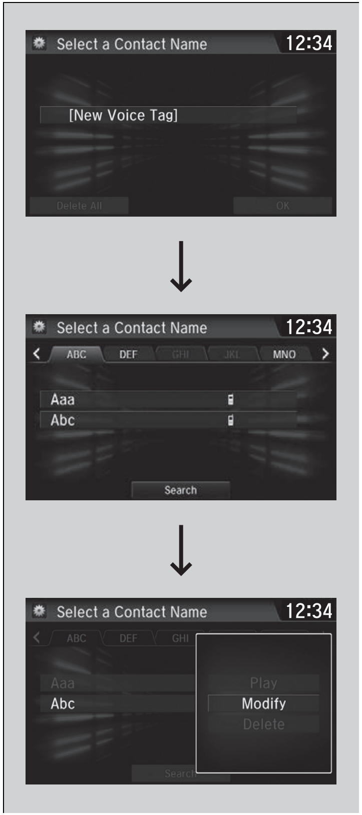
■ To add a new voice tag

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to.

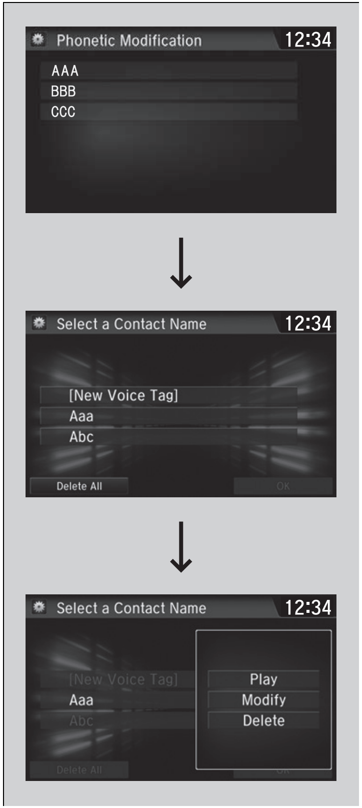
»Phonebook Phonetic Modification

You can store up to 20 phonetic modification items.

Continued


Select a Contact Name
12:34
[New Voice Tag]
Delete All
OK
Select a Contact Name
12:34
ABC
DEF
GHI
JKL
MNO
Aaa
Abc
Search
Select a Contact Name
12:34
ABC
DEF
GHI
Aaa
Abc
Play
Modify
Delete
Search

7. Select **New Voice Tag**.
8. Select a contact name you want to add to.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
9. Select **Modify**.
10. Using **Record** or the 🗣 button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
11. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.


Phonetic Modification
12:34
AAA
BBB
CCC
Select a Contact Name
12:34
[New Voice Tag]
Aaa
Abc
Delete All
OK
Select a Contact Name
12:34
[New Voice Tag]
Aaa
Abc
Play
Modify
Delete
Delete All
OK

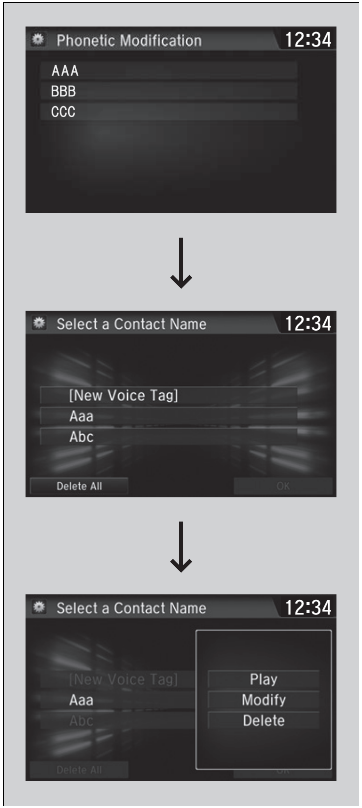
■ To modify a voice tag

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to modify phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to modify.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Modify**.
9. Using **Record** or the 🗣 button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
10. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.

»Phonebook Phonetic Modification

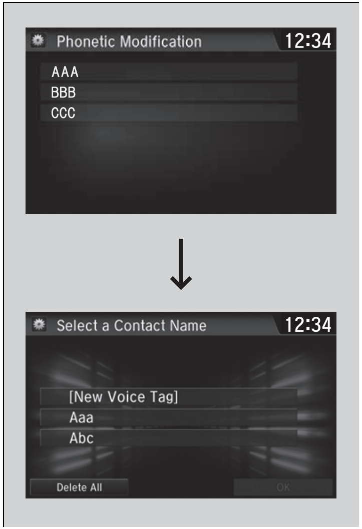
You can only modify or delete contact names for the currently connected phone.

Continued


Phonetic Modification
12:34
AAA
BBB
CCC
Select a Contact Name
12:34
[New Voice Tag]
Aaa
Abc
Delete All
OK
Select a Contact Name
12:34
[New Voice Tag]
Aaa
Abc
Play
Modify
Delete
Delete All
OK

■ To delete a modified voice tag

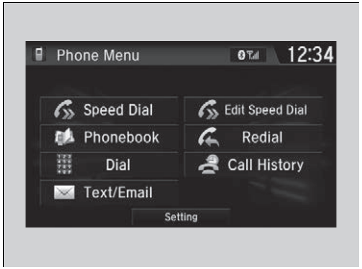
1. Press the 🏠 button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to delete.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Delete**.
   ▶ The selected contact name has been selected.
9. Select **OK**.


Phonetic Modification
12:34
AAA
BBB
CCC
Select a Contact Name
12:34
[New Voice Tag]
Aaa
Abc
Delete All
OK

■ To delete all modified voice tags

1. Press the ⌂ button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
   ▶ The contact name list appears.
7. Select **Delete All**.
8. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **Yes**.

■ Making a Call


Phone Menu
12:34
Speed Dial
Edit Speed Dial
Phonebook
Redial
Dial
Call History
Text/Email
Setting

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

≫Making a Call

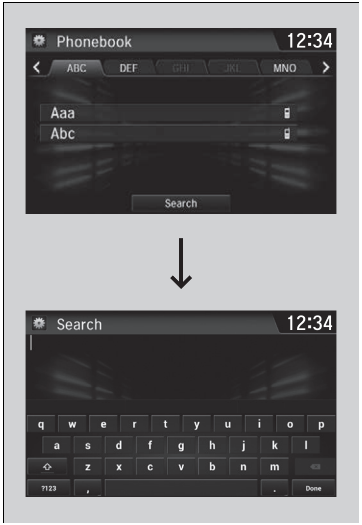
Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the 🗣 button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with HandsFreeLink® and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

Continued


Phonebook
12:34
ABC
DEF
GHI
JKL
MNO
Aaa
Abc
Search
Search
12:34
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
?123
Done

■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.

➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 416

2. Select **Phonebook**.

3. Select a name.

▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.

▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering a name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.

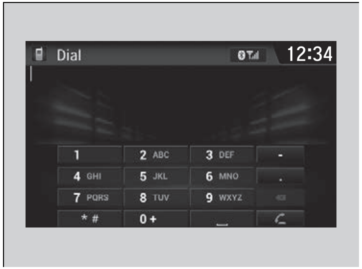
4. Select a number.

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

≫To make a call using the imported phonebook

You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

➡ **Speed Dial** P. 424


Dial
12:34
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
-
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
.
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
* #
0 +

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.

➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 416

2. Select **Dial**.

3. Select a number.

▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.

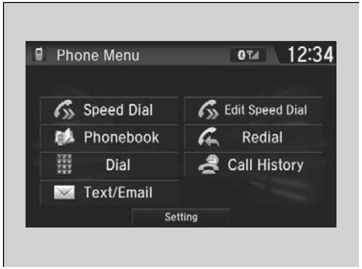
4. Select ☎.

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

≫To make a call using a phone number

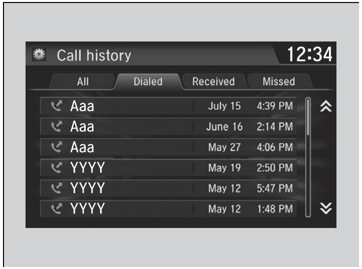
You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

➡ **Speed Dial** P. 424


Phone Menu
12:34
Speed Dial
Edit Speed Dial
Phonebook
Redial
Dial
Call History
Text/Email
Setting

■ To make a call using redial

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
   ➔ **Phone Menu screen** P. 416
2. Select **Redial**.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.


Call history
12:34
All
Dialed
Received
Missed

Aaa	July 15	4:39 PM
Aaa	June 16	2:14 PM
Aaa	May 27	4:06 PM
YYYY	May 19	2:50 PM
YYYY	May 12	5:47 PM
YYYY	May 12	1:48 PM

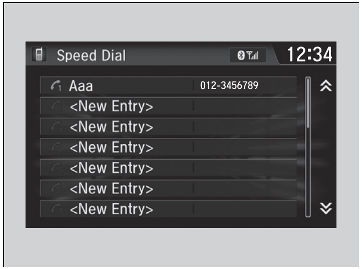
■ To make a call using the Call History

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
   ➔ **Phone Menu screen** P. 416
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.
4. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

»To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.
(Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)


Speed Dial
12:34

Aaa	012-3456789
<New Entry>	
<New Entry>	
<New Entry>	
<New Entry>	
<New Entry>	
<New Entry>	

■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
   ➔ **Phone Menu screen** P. 416
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

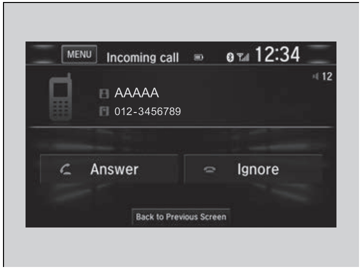
»To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the 🗣 button to call the number using the voice tag.
➔ **Speed Dial** P. 424

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
Press the 🗣 button and follow the prompts.

Continued

Receiving a Call

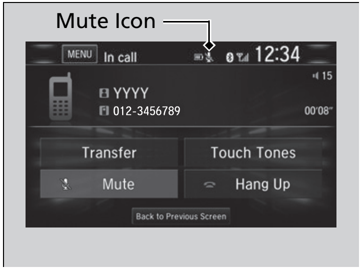

MENU
Incoming call
12:34
12
AAAAA
012-3456789
Answer
Ignore
Back to Previous Screen

When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the 📞 button to answer the call.
Press the ☎ ↩ button to decline or end the call.

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Transfer: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.
Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.


Mute Icon
MENU
In call
12:34
15
YYYY
012-3456789
00'08"
Transfer
Touch Tones
Mute
Hang Up
Back to Previous Screen

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

≫Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Press the 📞 button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Press the 📞 button again to return to the current call.
Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Press the ☎ ↩ button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the 📞 and ☎ ↩ buttons.

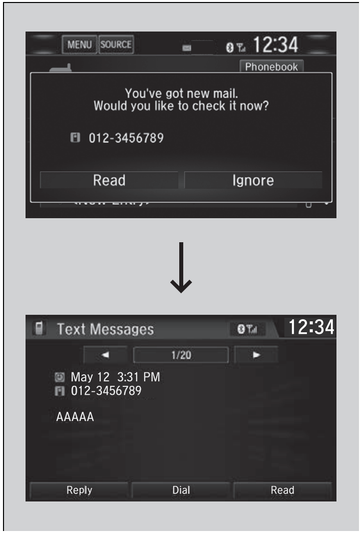
≫Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

HFL can display newly received text or e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



You've got new mail.
Would you like to check it now?
012-3456789

May 12 3:31 PM
012-3456789
AAAAA

1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text or e-mail message.
2. Select **Read** to listen to the message.
   ▶ The text or e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, select **Stop**.

≫Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

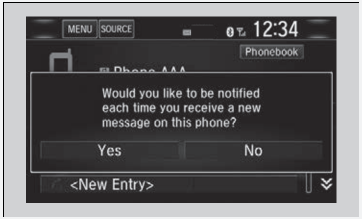
The system can only receive messages that are sent as text (SMS) messages. Messages sent using data services will not be displayed in the list.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text and e-mail messages.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text/e-mail message feature. Only use the text/e-mail message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

When you receive a text or e-mail message for the first time since the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Message Notification** setting to **On**.

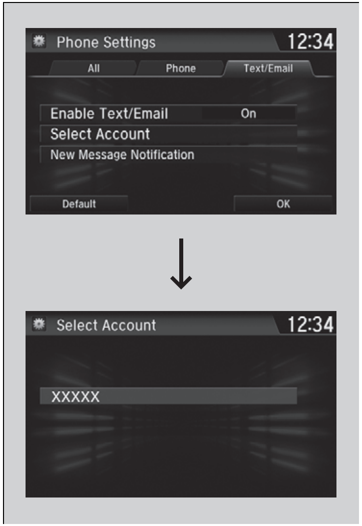
➲ **To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice** P. 421



Would you like to be notified each time you receive a new message on this phone?

Selecting a Text/E-mail Message Account

If a paired phone has text or e-mail message accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.

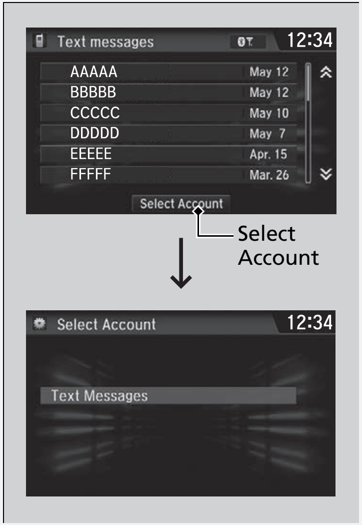

Phone Settings
12:34
All
Phone
Text/Email
Select Account
New Message Notification
Default
OK
Select Account
12:34
XXXXX

Enable Text/Email On

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   - **➲ Phone Settings screen** P. 413
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Select Account**.
   - ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Text Messages** or an e-mail message account you want.

≫Selecting a Text/E-mail Message Account

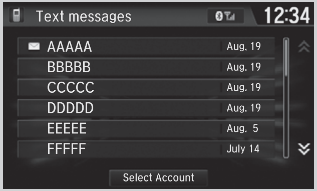
You can also select an e-mail message account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.


Text messages
12:34
AAAAA May 12
BBBBB May 12
CCCCC May 10
DDDDD May 7
EEEEE Apr. 15
FFFFF Mar. 26
Select Account
Select Account
Select Account
12:34
Text Messages

You can only receive notifications from one text or e-mail message account at a time.

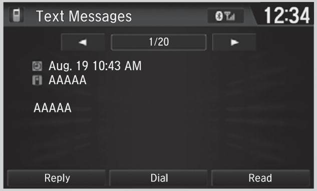
Displaying Messages

Message List



✉ AAAAA	Aug. 19
BBBBB	Aug. 19
CCCCC	Aug. 19
DDDDD	Aug. 19
EEEEE	Aug. 5
FFFFF	July 14

Text Message



Aug. 19 10:43 AM
AAAAA

AAAAA

■ Displaying text messages

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
   ➔ **Phone Menu screen** P. 416
2. Select **Text/Email**.
   ▶ Select account if necessary.
3. Select a message.
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

≫Displaying Messages

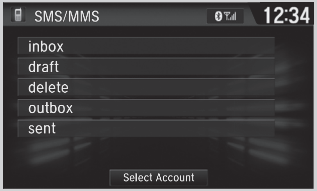
The ✉ icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

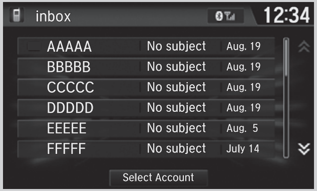
To see the previous or next message, select ◀ (previous) or ▶ (next) on the message screen.

Continued

Folder List

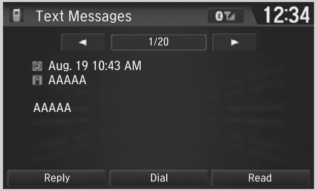

SMS/MMS
12:34
inbox
draft
delete
outbox
sent
Select Account

Message List


inbox
12:34
Select Account

AAAAA	No subject	Aug. 19
BBBBB	No subject	Aug. 19
CCCCC	No subject	Aug. 19
DDDDD	No subject	Aug. 19
EEEEE	No subject	Aug. 5
FFFFF	No subject	July 14

E-mail Message

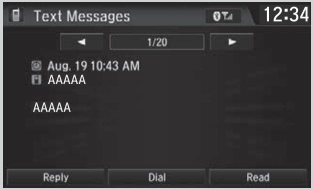

Text Messages
12:34
◄
1/20
►
Reply
Dial
Read

Aug. 19 10:43 AM
AAAAA

AAAAA

■ Displaying e-mail messages

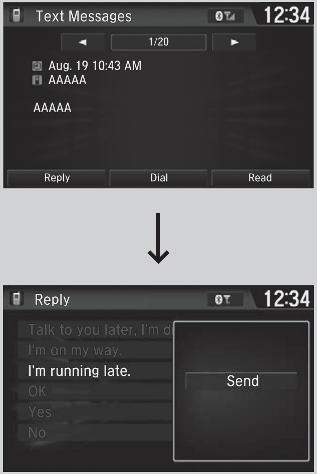
1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
   - **Phone Menu screen** P. 416
2. Select **Text/Email**.
   - ▶ Select **Select Account** if necessary.
3. Select a folder.
4. Select a message.
   - ▶ The e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.


Text Messages
12:34
1/20
Aug. 19 10:43 AM
AAAAA
AAAAA
Reply
Dial
Read

■ Read or Stop reading a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
Displaying Messages P. 437

2. Select **Stop** to stop reading.
Select **Read** again to start reading the message from the beginning.


Text Messages
12:34
1/20
Aug. 19 10:43 AM
AAAAA
AAAAA
Reply
Dial
Read
Reply
12:34
Talk to you later, I'm d
I'm on my way.
I'm running late.
OK
Yes
No
Send

■ Reply to a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
Displaying Messages P. 437

2. Select **Reply**.

3. Select the reply message.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

4. Select **Send** to send the message.
▶ **Message sent** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:

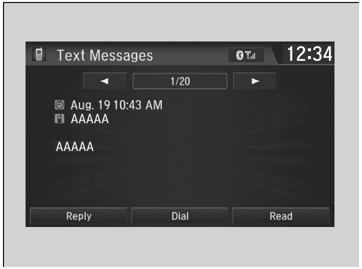
- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

Only certain phones receive and send messages when paired and connected. For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

Continued

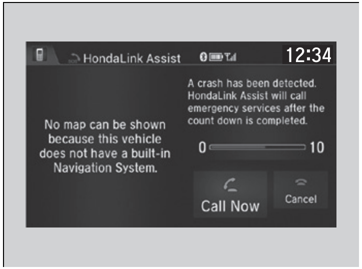

Text Messages
12:34
◄
1/20
►
Aug. 19 10:43 AM
AAAAA
AAAAA
Reply
Dial
Read

■ Making a call to a sender

1. Go to the text message screen.
2. Select **Dial**.

In Case of Emergency

Automatic collision notification



A crash has been detected. HondaLink Assist will call emergency services after the count down is completed.

No map can be shown because this vehicle does not have a built-in Navigation System.

If your vehicle's airbags deploy or if the unit detects that the vehicle is severely impacted, your vehicle automatically will attempt to connect to the HondaLink operator. If connected, information about your vehicle, its location, and its condition can be sent to the operator*1; you also can speak to the operator when connected.

IMPORTANT: For vehicles equipped with HondaLink Assist, owner activation constitutes authorization for Honda to collect information from your vehicle needed to provide the service, and agreement to the Terms of Use at *www.hondalink.com/TermsAndConditions*. In a crash, HondaLink Assist will attempt to notify emergency services but NEITHER Honda-PRO NOR ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS GUARANTEE THAT SUCH NOTIFICATION WILL OCCUR.

Honda reserves the right to terminate HondaLink Assist services at any time or for any reason, and in the future may not be able to provide services due to changes in, or obsolescence of, technology integral to the service or changes in governmental regulation.

---

*1: Depending on your phone and adequate cellular coverage, your vehicle's location may not be sent to the operator.

Continued

≫In Case of Emergency

Your vehicle may not be able to connect to the operator if the battery level is low, the line is disconnected, or you do not have adequate cellular coverage.

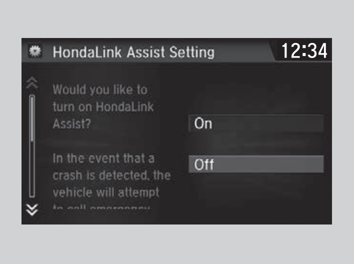
You cannot use this emergency service when:
- You travel outside the HondaLink service coverage areas.
- There is a problem with the connecting devices, such as the microphones, speakers, or the unit itself.

You cannot operate other phone-related functions using the screen while talking to the operator.
Select **Hang Up** to terminate the connection to your vehicle.

≫Automatic collision notification

If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it repeatedly tries until it succeeds.

■ To enable notification



Would you like to turn on HondaLink Assist?

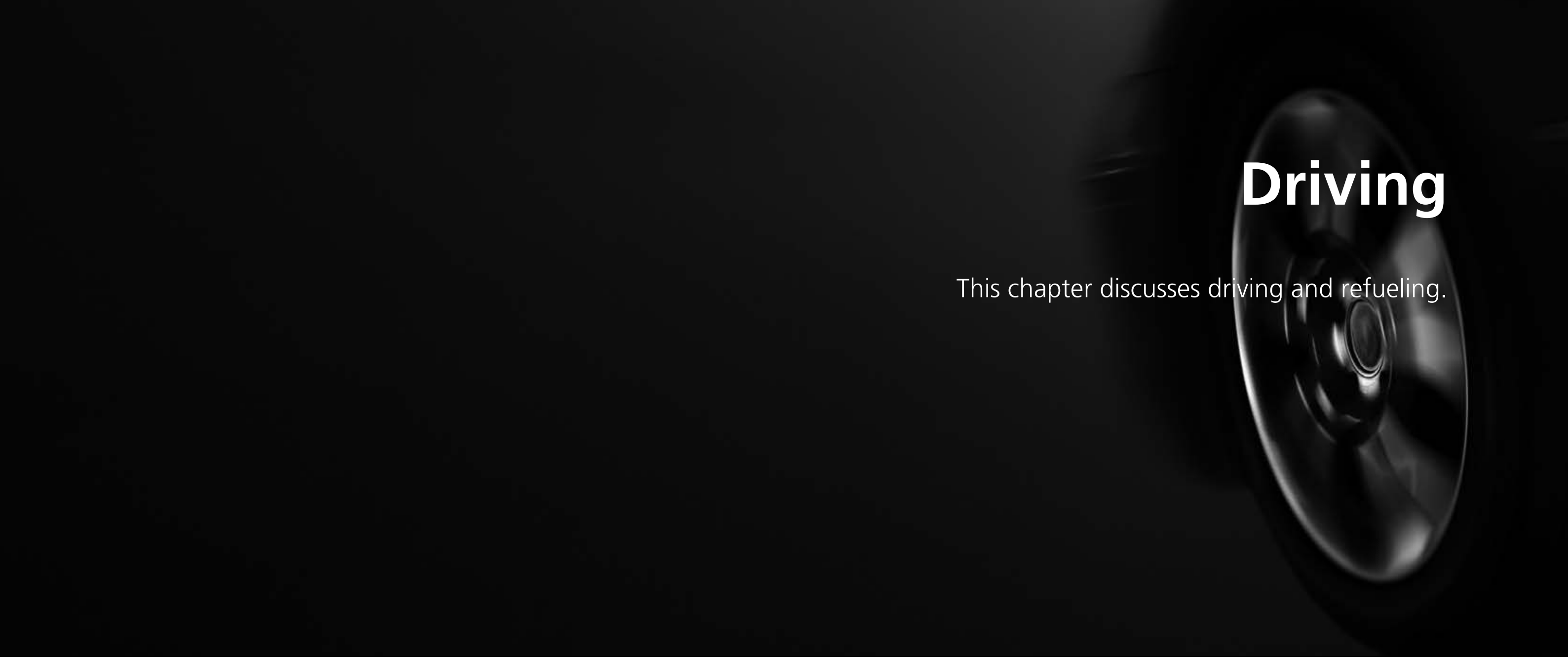
In the event that a crash is detected, the vehicle will attempt

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   - **Phone Settings screen** P. 413
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **HondaLink Assist**.
   - ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

To enable notification

Setting options:

- **On:** Notification is available.
- **Off:** Disable the feature.



Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving 444
Towing a Trailer 450
When Driving
  Starting the Engine 451, 454
  Precautions While Driving 459
  Continuously Variable Transmission* ... 460
  Shifting 461, 463, 468
  ECON Mode* 472
  2.0 L engine models
  Drive Mode Switch 473
  Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System 475
  Agile Handling Assist 478
  2.0 L engine models
  Limited Slip Differential (LSD) 479
  LaneWatch™* 480
  Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* 482
  Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation* 486
Honda Sensing® 488
  Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 491
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* 501
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* 518
  Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) .. 533
  Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System 541
  Front Sensor Camera 546
  Radar Sensor 548
Braking
  Brake System 549
  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 556
  Brake Assist System 557
Parking Your Vehicle 558
Multi-View Rear Camera 560
Refueling
  Fuel Information 562
  How to Refuel 564
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions
  Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions 566
Turbo Engine Vehicle 567

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    - **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 609
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder.
You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the hood, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the hood for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - ▶ Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
    - **Maximum Load Limit** P. 447
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  - ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock all doors and the hatch.
  - **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 156
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - ▶ Adjust the front head restraint*, too.
  - **Adjusting the Seats** P. 193
  - **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 196
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  - ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 190
    - **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 189

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

* Not available on all models

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ⮕ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 44
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    ⮕ **Indicators** P. 82

Maximum Load Limit

1.5 L engine models

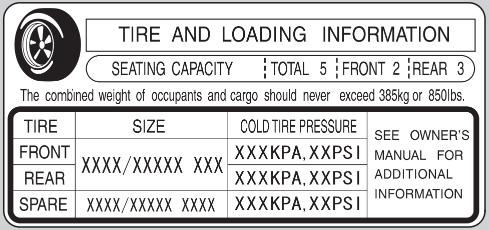
The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg).

2.0 L engine models

The maximum load for your vehicle is 680 lbs (308 kg).

See the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver’s doorjamb.

Label Example



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY | TOTAL 5 | FRONT 2 | REAR 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 385kg or 850lbs.

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNER’S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	XXXX/XXXXX XXX	XXXKPA, XXPSI	
REAR		XXXKPA, XXPSI	
SPARE	XXXX/XXXXX XXXX	XXXKPA, XXPSI	

This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

Continued

≫Maximum Load Limit

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load.

➔ **Specifications** P. 684

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.

➔ **Specifications** P. 684

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

(1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

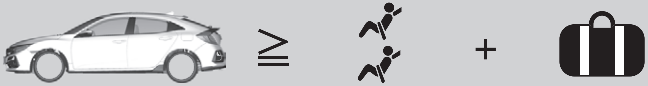
(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

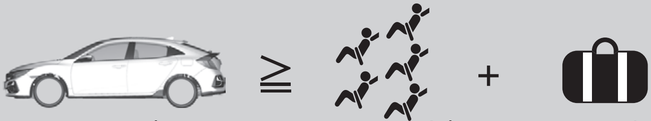
Load Limits Example

Example1



Max Load	Passenger Weight	Cargo Weight
850 lbs (385 kg)	150 lbs x 2 = 300 lbs (68 kg x 2 = 136 kg)	550 lbs (249 kg)

Example2



Max Load	Passenger Weight	Cargo Weight
850 lbs (385 kg)	150 lbs x 5 = 750 lbs (68 kg x 5 = 340 kg)	100 lbs (45 kg)

Maximum Load Limit

Towing a Trailer:
See Towing a Trailer to determine whether your vehicle is designed to tow a trailer.

Towing a Trailer P. 450

Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

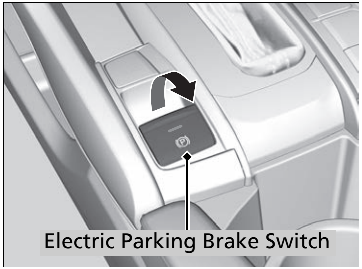
Towing Your Vehicle

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

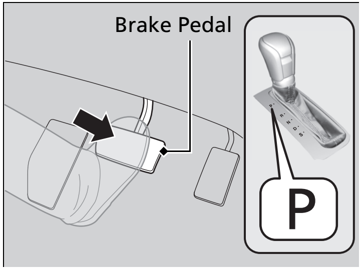
➔ **Emergency Towing** P. 679

Models without smart entry system

Starting the Engine

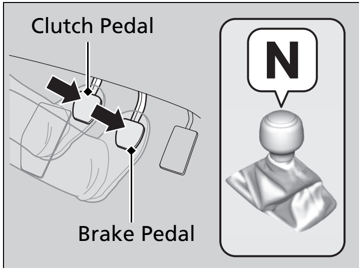


1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
   ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.
   ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.



Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in N. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
   ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Continued

»Starting the Engine

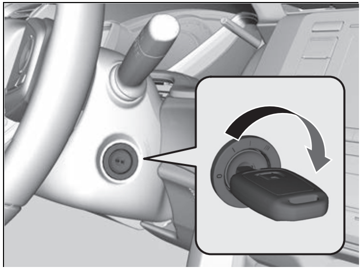
Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.



All models

3. Turn the ignition switch to START III without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Starting to Drive

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the shift lever in D. Select R when reversing.

2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
➜ **Parking Brake** P. 549

≫Starting the Engine

Do not hold the key in START III for more than 10 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.
➜ **Immobilizer System** P. 163

≫Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

■Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Continuously variable transmission models

Put the transmission into D, S, or L* when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

»Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

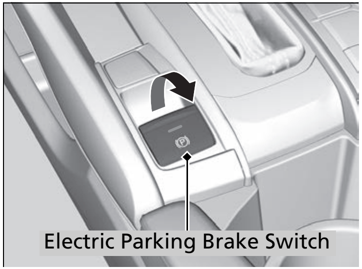
Hill start assist will operate even when VSA® is switched off.

---

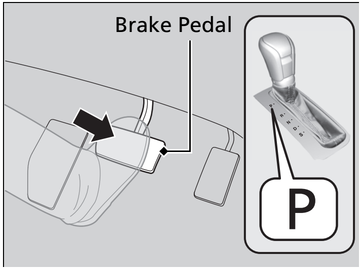
* Not available on all models

Models with smart entry system

Starting the Engine

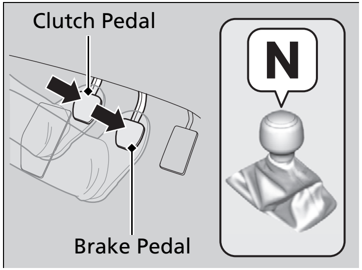


1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
   - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.
   - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.



Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in N. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
   - ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

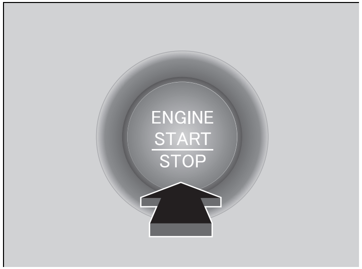
When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.
If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

Immobilizer System P. 163



All models

3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Put the transmission into P.

2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Manual transmission models

- If the shift lever is in N, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- If the shift lever is in any gear other than N, depress the clutch pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

>>Starting the Engine

Bring the smart entry remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the smart entry remote is weak.

If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak P. 660

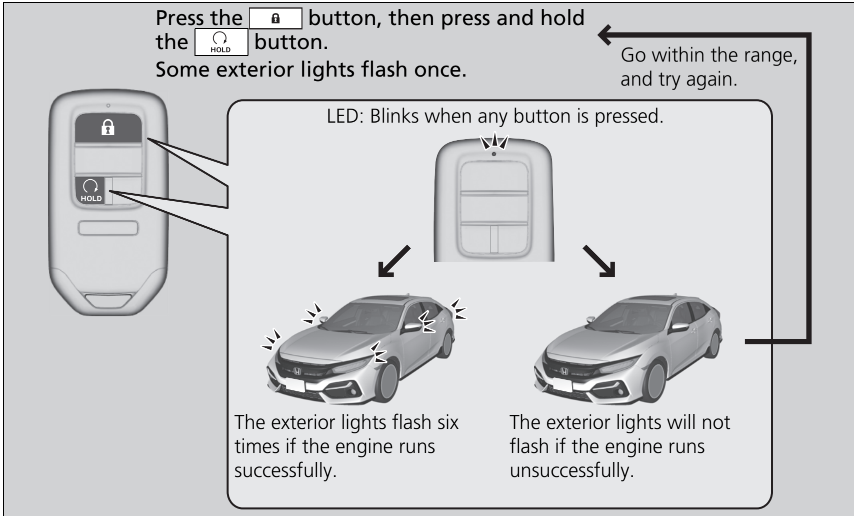
The engine may not start if the smart entry remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely start the engine using the smart entry remote.

To start the engine



Press the 🔒 button, then press and hold the HOLD button.
Some exterior lights flash once.

Go within the range, and try again.

LED: Blinks when any button is pressed.

The exterior lights flash six times if the engine runs successfully.

The exterior lights will not flash if the engine runs unsuccessfully.

When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.
To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the 🔒 button, then press and hold the HOLD button.

▶ The exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

---

* Not available on all models

Remote Engine Start*

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic and can rapidly accumulate in closed or even partly enclosed areas.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

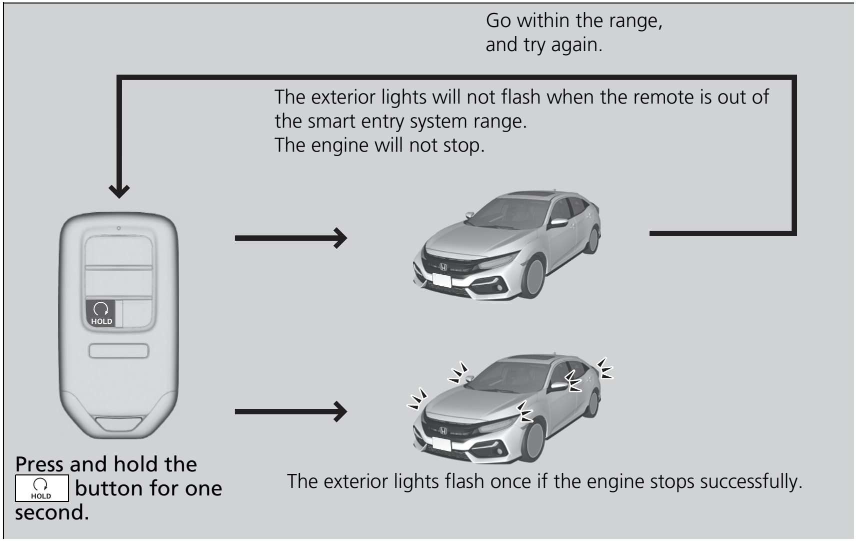
Never use the remote engine starter with the vehicle parked in a garage or other areas with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. The range may be less when the vehicle is running. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.
The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the audio/information screen.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The transmission is in a position other than P.
- The hood is open, or any door or the hatch is unlocked.

■ To stop the engine



Go within the range, and try again.

The exterior lights will not flash when the remote is out of the smart entry system range.
The engine will not stop.

Press and hold the HOLD button for one second.

The exterior lights flash once if the engine stops successfully.

≫Remote Engine Start*

- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered smart entry remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically activate climate control with a preset temperature of 72°F (22°C).
When it is warm outside:

- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The defroster is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear defogger and door mirror heaters* are activated.
- The seat heaters are activated*.

➔ **Front Seat Heaters*** P. 215

* Not available on all models

Continued

Starting to Drive

Continuously variable transmission models

When the engine was started using the HOLD button on the smart entry remote

1. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button simultaneously.

When the engine was started in any case

2. Put the shift lever in D. Select R when reversing.
3. With the parking brake is applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
   - ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
     - **Parking Brake** P. 549

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Continuously variable transmission models

Put the transmission into D, S, or L* when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

»Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the HOLD button on the smart entry remote

The engine stops when the shift lever is moved out of P before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

»Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA® is switched off.

* Not available on all models

Precautions While Driving

In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

≫Precautions While Driving

Continuously variable transmission models

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY [I][*1] while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in [N], as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continuously Variable Transmission*

Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

2.0 L engine models

The following can damage the under spoiler:
- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes

---

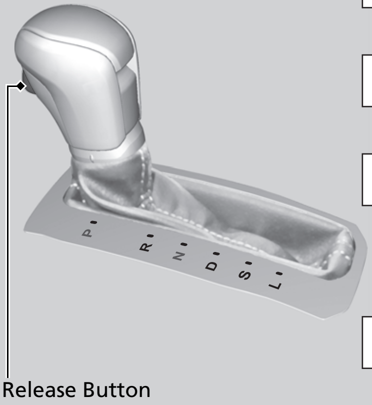
* Not available on all models

Continuously variable transmission models without paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



P	**Park** Used when parking or starting the engine
R	**Reverse** Used when reversing
N	**Neutral** Transmission is not locked
D	**Drive** Used for normal driving
S	**Drive (S)** Used: ● For better acceleration ● To increase engine braking ● When going up or down hills
L	**Low** ● Used to further increase engine braking ● Used when going up or down hills

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

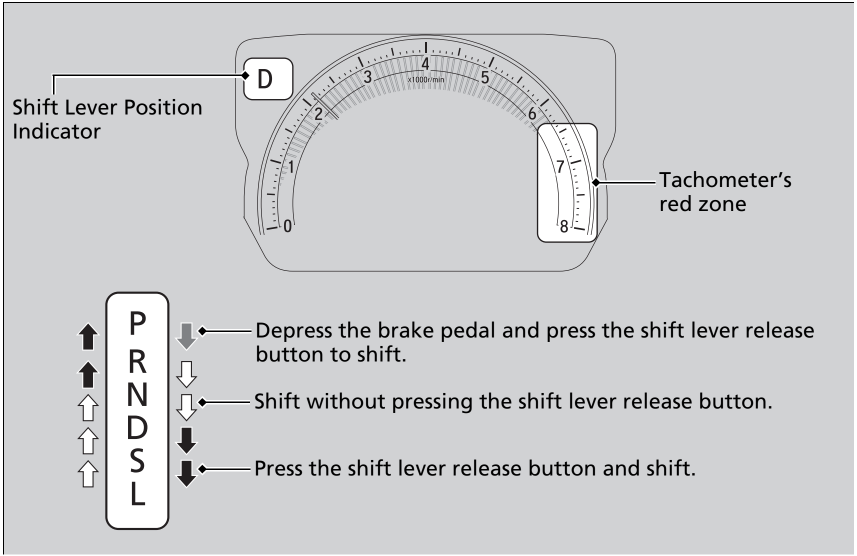
Continued

≫Shift lever positions

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0][*1] and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

The vehicle may move very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Shift Lever Operation


Shift Lever Position Indicator
D
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
x1000r/min
Tachometer’s red zone
P
R
N
D
S
L
Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
Press the shift lever release button and shift.

≫Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, blinking transmission system indicator indicates a transmission problem.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer’s red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

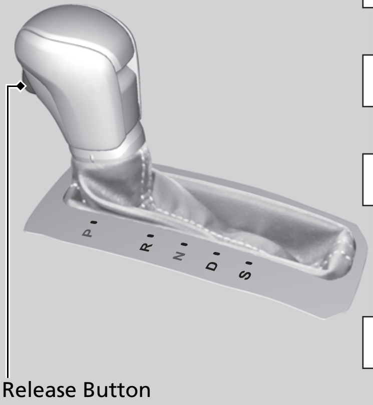
It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

Continuously variable transmission models with paddle shifters

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked

D **Drive**
Used:
- For normal driving
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

S **Drive (S)**
Used:
- For better acceleration
- To increase engine braking
- When going up or down hills
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

»Shift lever positions

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *1 and remove the key unless the shift lever is in P.

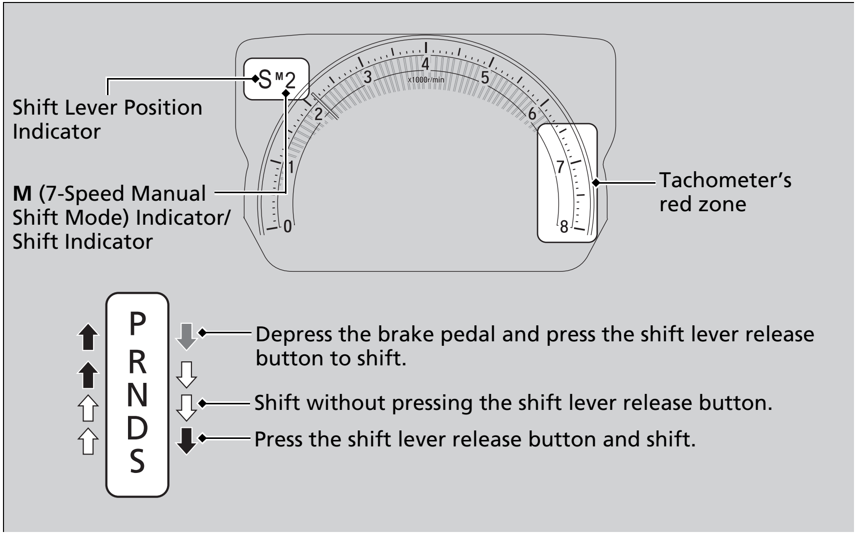
The vehicle may move very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

Shift Lever Operation


Shift Lever Position Indicator
S M 2
M (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) Indicator/ Shift Indicator
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
x1000r/min
Tachometer's red zone
P
R
N
D
S
Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, blinking transmission system indicator indicates a transmission problem.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the shift lever is in D:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is canceled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.
You can cancel this mode by pulling the + paddle shifter for a few seconds.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the shift lever is in S:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer’s red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When canceling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from S to D. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is canceled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.

Continued

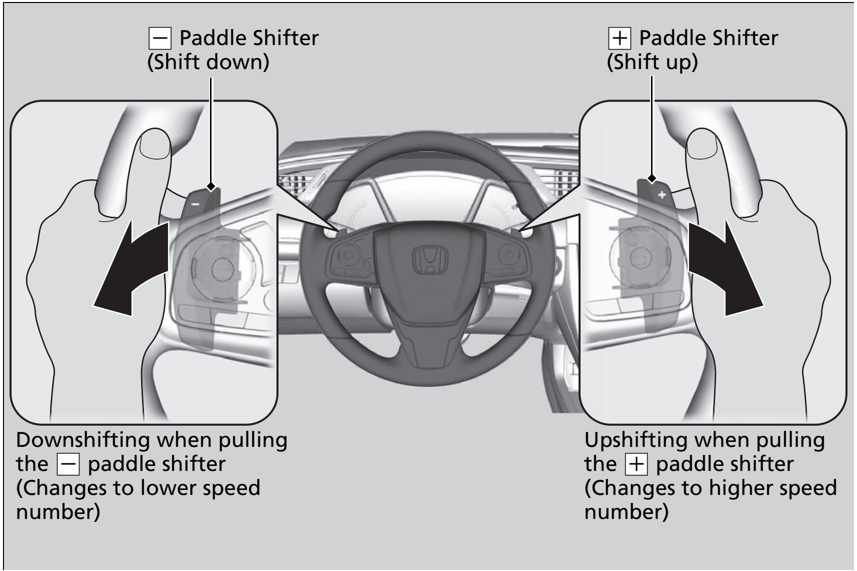
≫7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:
Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer’s red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.
When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tires to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is canceled and goes back to the normal D driving mode.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

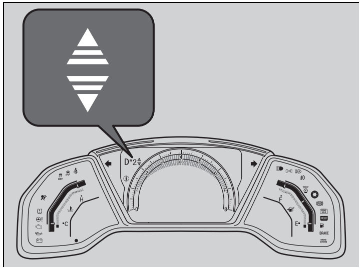

⊟ Paddle Shifter
(Shift down)
⊞ Paddle Shifter
(Shift up)
Downshifting when pulling the ⊟ paddle shifter (Changes to lower speed number)
Upshifting when pulling the ⊞ paddle shifter (Changes to higher speed number)

≫7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.
To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.
Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

Shift Up/Down Indicators*



Come on while the vehicle is in the 7-speed manual shift mode to indicate when a speed position change is appropriate to maintain the most fuel efficient driving style.

The shift up indicator: Comes on when upshifting is recommended.
The shift down indicator: Comes on when downshifting is recommended.

≫Shift Up/Down Indicators*

⚠WARNING

The shift indicator is only a guide to help you achieve better fuel economy.
Never refer to the Shift Indicators when road and traffic conditions are unsuitable or when it may distract you.

This indicator will not prompt you to downshift to increase engine braking. It is up to you to downshift to increase engine braking when driving downhill.

Always shift down at the appropriate vehicle speed.

Ambient meter color may change if you do not change gears when a shift indicator illuminates. This can result in a change in fuel economy.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

---

* Not available on all models

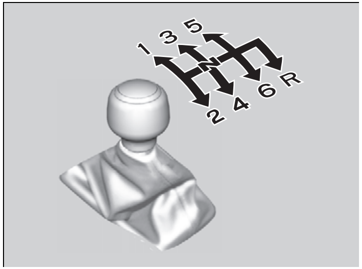
Manual transmission models

Shifting

Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into R, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not “grind.”



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

》Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE
Do not shift to R before the vehicle comes to a complete stop.
Shifting to R before stopping can damage the transmission.

NOTICE
Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

2.0 L engine models
There is a metallic part on the shift lever. If you leave the vehicle parked outside for a long time on a hot day, be careful before moving the shift lever. Because of heat, the shift lever may be extremely hot. If the outside temperature is low, the shift lever may feel cold.

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer’s red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

2.0 L engine models

Rev Match System

Adjusts the engine's RPM to match the optimal speed of the gear that is about to be engaged.

Drive Mode Switch P. 473

Limitations

The rev match system will not activate under the following conditions:

- You are shifting into a lower gear, but the system has determined that the engine will over rev.
- You are shifting into 1st gear from a higher gear.
- Engine RPM is low and you are shifting into a lower gear in sequential order.
- The system has determined that the engine will be at idling speed after you have shifted into a higher gear.
- The clutch pedal is not fully depressed.

The rev match system may deactivate if the clutch is kept engaged for a extended period of time.

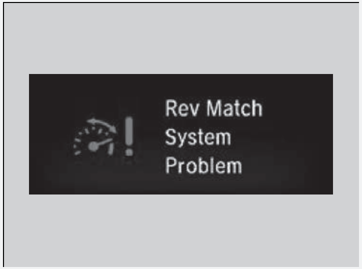
Rev Match System

You can turn off the rev match system using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 350

If you depress the accelerator pedal while changing gears, the system will give priority to inputs from the accelerator pedal.

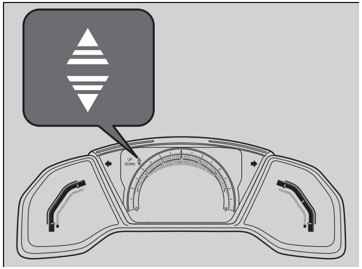
If the message below appears, there may be a problem with the system. The rev match system may not operate, but you can perform regular gear shifting. Have the system checked by a dealer.



Rev Match System Problem

Continued

Shift Up/Down Indicators*



Come on to inform you that upshifting or downshifting is necessary to prevent the engine from over revving or stalling.

The shift up indicator: Comes on when upshifting is recommended.

The shift down indicator: Comes on when downshifting is recommended.

Shift Up/Down Indicators*

This indicator will not prompt you to downshift to increase engine braking. It is up to you to downshift to increase engine braking when driving downhill.

Always shift down at the appropriate vehicle speed.

The shift down indicator does not come on when downshifting from 2 to 1.

Ambient meter color may change if you do not change gears when a shift indicator illuminates. This can result in a change in fuel economy.

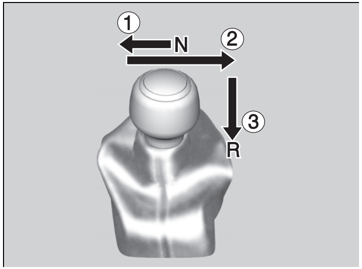
Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

* Not available on all models

Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout mechanism that stops you from accidentally shifting into R from a forward gear while the vehicle is moving above a certain speed.

If you cannot shift to R when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:

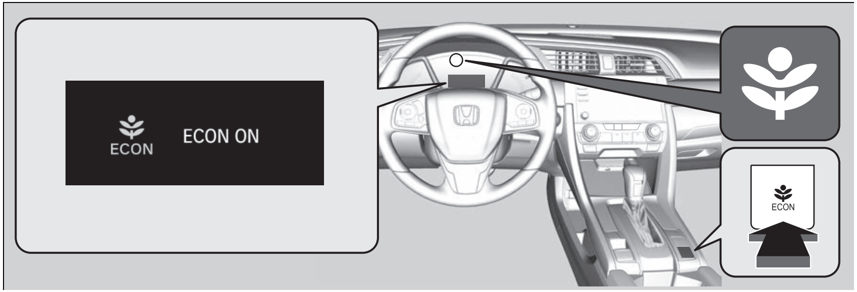


1. Depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever all the way to the left, and shift to R.
2. If you still cannot shift into R, apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY I or LOCK 0[*1].
3. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into R.
4. Keep depressing the clutch pedal and start the engine.

Have the vehicle checked by a dealer if you have to go through this procedure repeatedly.

[*1] Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

ECON Mode*



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.
The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, climate control system.

ECON Mode*

While in the ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

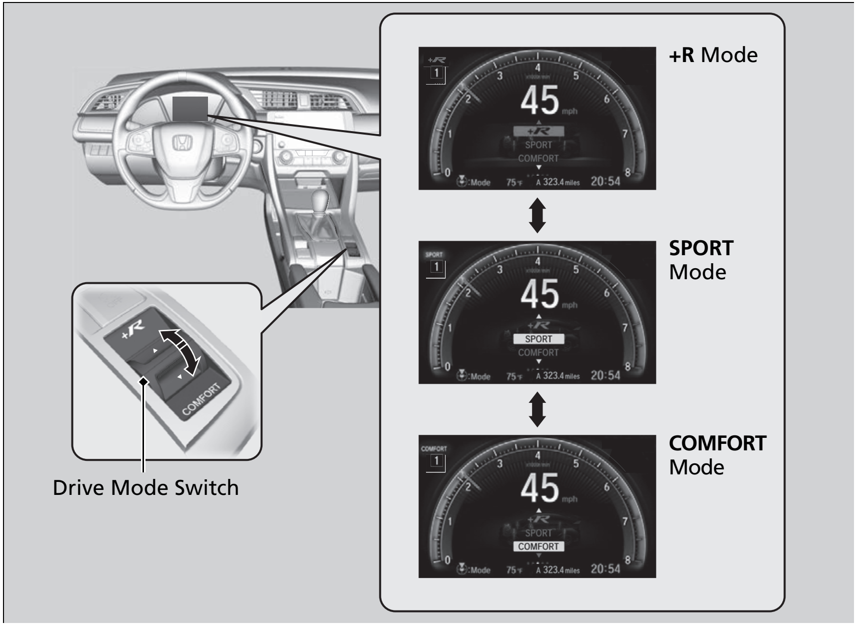
---

* Not available on all models

2.0 L engine models

Drive Mode Switch

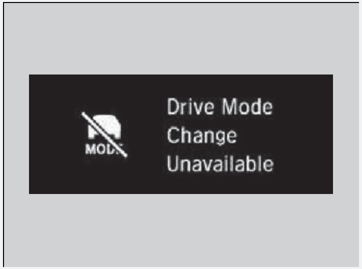
Constantly controls your vehicle's engine, transmission, EPS, dampers, brakes and VSA® according to the mode you select.
You can choose between three modes, **+R** mode, **SPORT** mode and **COMFORT** mode by moving the drive mode switch forward or back.
The current mode is displayed on the driver information interface, and each mode will appear differently.


+R Mode
SPORT Mode
COMFORT Mode
Drive Mode Switch
+R
COMFORT
45
mph
+R
SPORT
COMFORT
Mode
75°F
A 323.4 miles
20:54

Drive Mode Switch

SPORT mode is selected every time you set the power mode to ON.

The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions. If mode change is necessary, reduce speed or cornering speed.
This message will also appear if you try to change modes when there is a vehicle system failure.


Drive Mode
Change
Unavailable

Continued

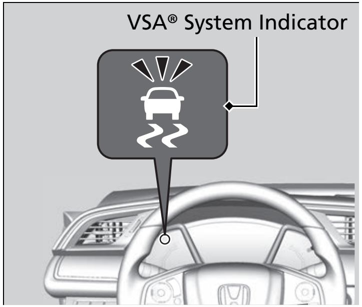
Category		**COMFORT**	**SPORT**	**+R**
Chassis Control	Steering	Light feedback for easy driving.	Increased feedback for sport driving.	Increased feedback for high performance driving.
	Suspension Damping	Minimized to provide a soft ride.	Increased to provide improved handling for sport driving.	Maximized to provide responsive handling for high performance driving.
	VSA® and TCS	Balanced calibration for VSA® and Traction control in all environments.		Track oriented control allowing increased freedom for the driver.
Powertrain Control	Acceleration Feeling	Relaxed	Aggressive	Aggressive
	Rev Match System	Seamless	Seamless	Responsive

➔ **Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System** P. 475
➔ **Rev Match System** P. 469

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

VSA® helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA® Operation



When VSA® activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

The VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

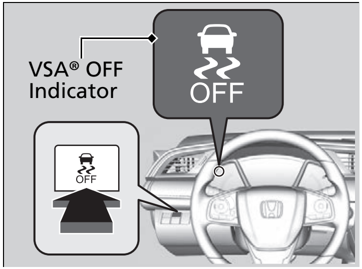
The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire Pressure/TPMS* and Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

VSA® On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA® functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA® functionality/features, press the OFF (VSA® OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

≫Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA® temporarily switched off.

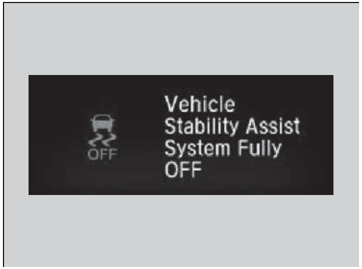
When the OFF button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA® off if you are not able to free it when the VSA® is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

2.0 L engine models

■ When the drive mode is in +R mode



Vehicle Stability Assist System Fully OFF

To completely disable VSA®, the VSA® must be in **+R** mode. Press and hold the VSA® OFF button until you hear a single beep, then later two more beeps.

▶ This message appears on the driver information interface.

To resume VSA® full function, press the VSA® OFF button until a single beep is heard.

If VSA® OFF mode is selected, and drive mode is changed to a mode other than **+R**, VSA® full function will resume, and the VSA® OFF indicator will goes off.

≫When the drive mode is in +R mode

In OFF mode, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA® traction and stability enhancement.

When the VSA® system is off, the traction control system is also off.

We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® and traction control system switched off.

When you completely disable VSA®, you cannot use Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) or the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS). If either feature is in use when you completely disable VSA®, the feature in use will automatically be canceled.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System and Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) do not function while VSA® is completely disabled.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle’s stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

2.0 L engine models

Limited Slip Differential (LSD)

■ Limited Slip Differential (LSD)

LSD (limited slip differential) is a type of differential that delivers extra torque to the wheel or the wheels with the most traction to minimize wheel slip and maintain control of the vehicle.

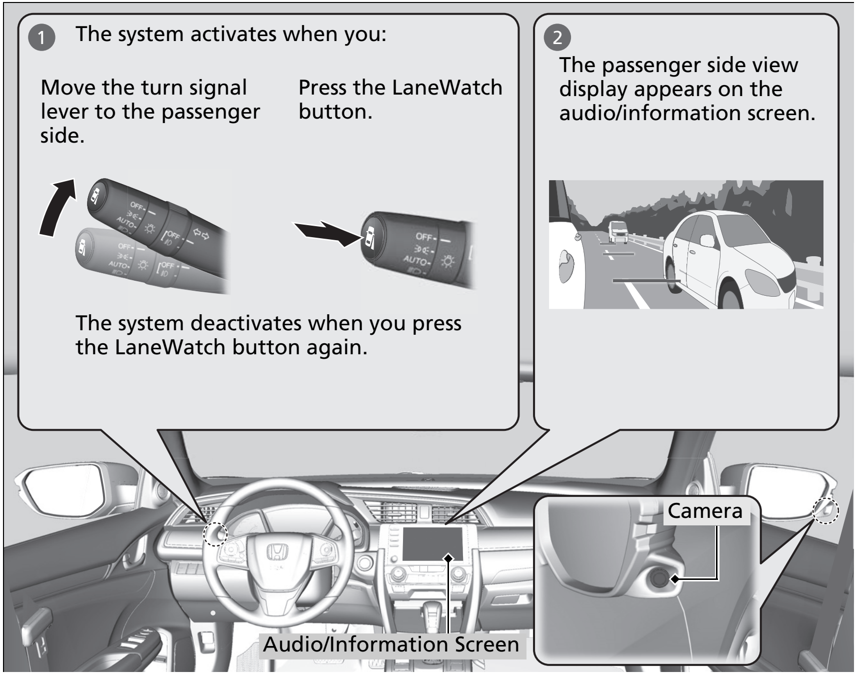
≫Limited Slip Differential (LSD)

NOTICE

Make sure both front tires of your vehicle are of the same brand and specified size, and have equal wear. Otherwise, the LSD may not function properly.

LaneWatch™*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.



1 The system activates when you:

Move the turn signal lever to the passenger side.

Press the LaneWatch button.

The system deactivates when you press the LaneWatch button again.

2 The passenger side view display appears on the audio/information screen.

≫LaneWatch™*

⚠WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tires are over or under inflated.
- Your tires or wheels are of varied size or construction.

---

* Not available on all models

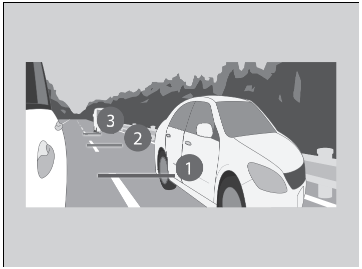
■Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal**: Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off**: Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Reference Line**: Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display**: Allows for display adjustments of items, such as brightness, contrast and black level. This setting is part of the **System** setup group.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 350

■Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 is farther away.

≫LaneWatch™*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in R.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

≫Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

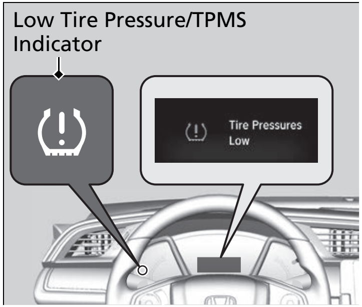
Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

* Not available on all models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tire, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tire while you are driving to determine if one or more tires are significantly under-inflated.



Tire Pressures Low

This will cause the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

»Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*

The system does not monitor the tires when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire.

➔ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 609

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tire chains are used.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- A compact spare tire* is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tires, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Tire chains are used.

* Not available on all models

TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tires.
- Rotate the tires.
- Replace one or more tires.

Before calibrating the TPMS:
- Set the cold tire pressure in all four tires.
  - **Checking Tires** P. 609

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.

Manual transmission models
- The shift lever is in N.

Continuously variable transmission models
- The shift lever is in P.

All models
- The ignition switch is in ON II*1.

TPMS Calibration

TPMS cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tire* is installed.
The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 30-65 mph (48-105 km/h).
During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the tire chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tires are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tires be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

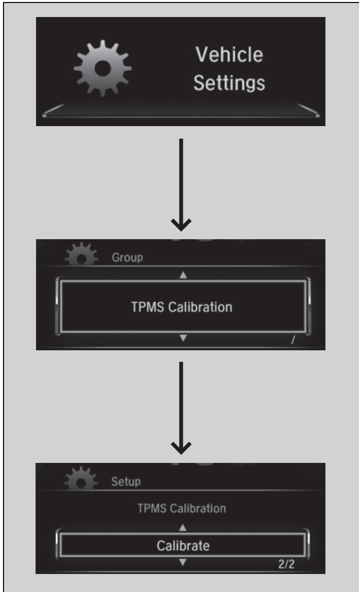
The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire Pressure/TPMS and Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Continued

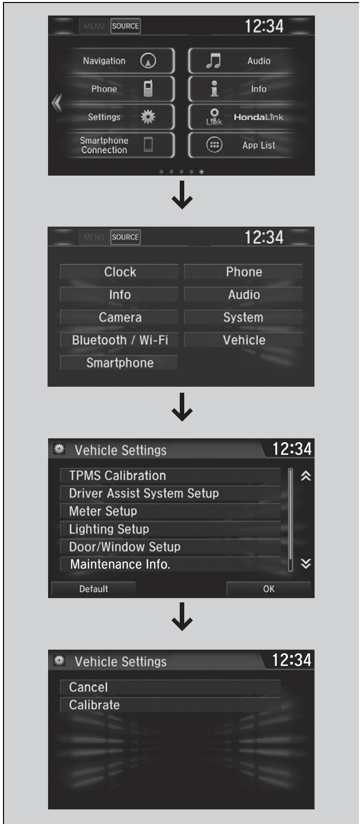


Models with color audio system

You can calibrate the system from the customized features on the driver information interface.

1. Press the ℹ button and press ◀/▶ button to select ⚙ (**Vehicle Settings**), then press the **ENTER** button.
   - ▶ **TPMS Calibration** appears on the display.
2. Press the **ENTER** button.
   - ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.
3. Press the ▲/▼ button and select **Calibrate**, then press the **ENTER** button.
   - ▶ **Calibration Started** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Calibration Failed to Start** message appears, repeat steps 2-3.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.


MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Navigation
Audio
Phone
Info
Settings
HondaLink
Smartphone Connection
App List
MENU
SOURCE
12:34
Clock
Phone
Info
Audio
Camera
System
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi
Vehicle
Smartphone
Vehicle Settings
12:34
TPMS Calibration
Driver Assist System Setup
Meter Setup
Lighting Setup
Door/Window Setup
Maintenance Info.
Default
OK
Vehicle Settings
12:34
Cancel
Calibrate

Models with Display Audio

You can calibrate the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the ⌂ button.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **TPMS Calibration**.
6. Select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.
    - ▶ When the calibration is complete, the display returns to the customization menu screen.

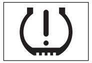
- If the **Calibration Failed To Start.** message appears, repeat step 6.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation*

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale



when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

---

* Not available on all models

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Honda Sensing®

Honda Sensing® is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors: a radar sensor located in the lower bumper and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windshield, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing® has following functions.

■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) ➔ P. 491
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System ➔ P. 541

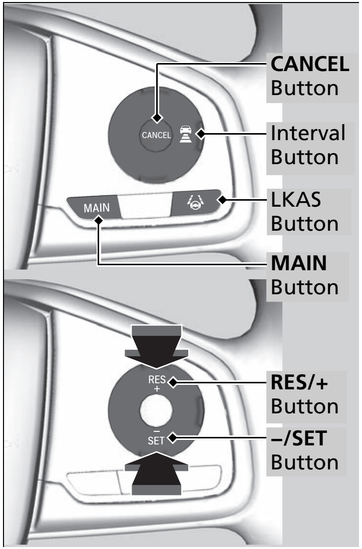
■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* ➔ P. 501
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* ➔ P. 518
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➔ P. 533

---

* Not available on all models

Operation Switches for the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC*/LKAS


CANCEL Button
CANCEL
Interval Button
LKAS Button
MAIN
MAIN Button
RES +
RES/+ Button
– SET
–/SET Button

MAIN Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* and LKAS. Or press to cancel these systems.

LKAS Button

Press to activate or cancel the LKAS.

RES/+/–/SET Button

Press **RES/+** to resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* or increase the vehicle speed.
Press **–/SET** to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* or decrease the vehicle speed.

Interval Button

Press the (interval) button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* following-interval.

CANCEL Button

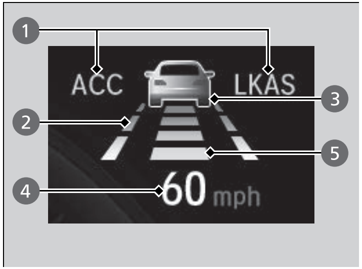
Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC*.

---

* Not available on all models

Continued

Driver Information Interface Content



You can see the current state of ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* and LKAS.

❶Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* and LKAS are ready to be activated.

❷Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.

❸Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.

❹Shows the set vehicle speed.

❺Shows the set vehicle interval.

---

* Not available on all models

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

≫Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

Manual transmission models

When the CMBS™ activates, the engine may stop automatically.
Start the engine by normal operation if the engine stops.

➲ **Starting the Engine** P. 451, 454

Important Safety Reminder
The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS™ may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

➲ **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 496

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➲ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546

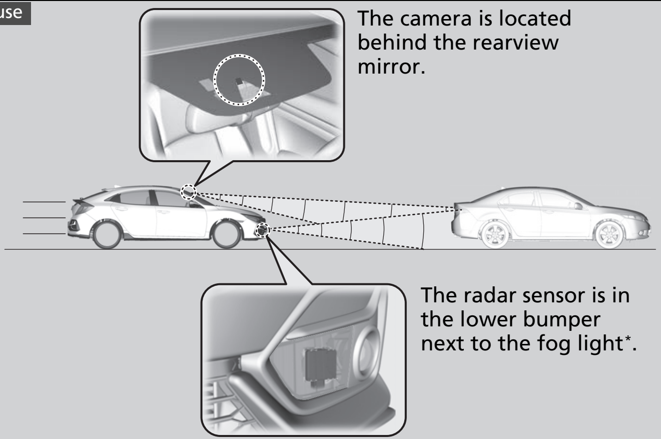
For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

➲ **Radar Sensor** P. 548

Continued

■ How the system works

When to use


The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.
The radar sensor is in the lower bumper next to the fog light*.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS™ activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 3 mph (5 km/h) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 62 mph (100 km/h) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
  - Vehicles detected in front of you that are stationary, oncoming, or traveling in your same direction.
  - A pedestrian who is detected in front of you.
- Your vehicle speed is above 62 mph (100 km/h), and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with a vehicle detected in front of you traveling in your same direction.

>How the system works

When the CMBS™ activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be canceled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

2.0 L engine models

CMBS™ does not function while VSA® is completely disabled.

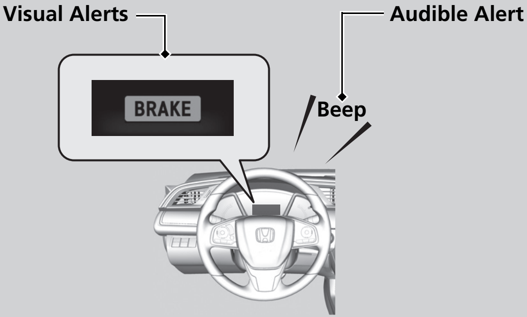
---

* Not available on all models

■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



You can change the distance (**Long**/**Normal**/**Short**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on through driver information interface or audio/information screen setting options.

List of customizable options P. 137, 359

≫When the system activates

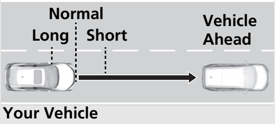
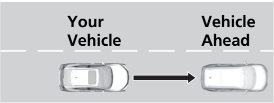
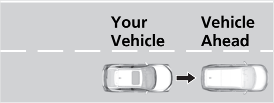
The camera in the CMBS™ is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 496

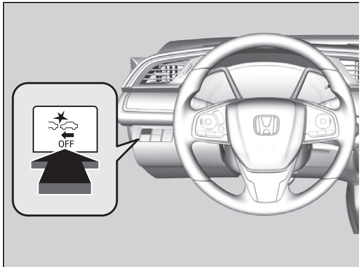
Continued

Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS™		
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one	 Normal Long Short Vehicle Ahead Your Vehicle	There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in **Long**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.	—
Stage two	 Your Vehicle Vehicle Ahead	The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three	 Your Vehicle Vehicle Ahead	The CMBS™ determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

CMBS™ On and Off



Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS™ is off:

- The CMBS™ indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS™ is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

The CMBS™ may automatically shut off, and the CMBS™ indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions:

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 496

When the CMBS™ is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be canceled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire Pressure/TPMS* and Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) indicator may come on after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

* Not available on all models

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS™ indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS™ functions.

➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

»CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the lower bumper gets dirty.

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Continued

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 3.3 feet (1 meter) or taller than about 6.6 feet (2 meters) in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS™ may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS™ indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS™ to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

With Little Chance of a Collision

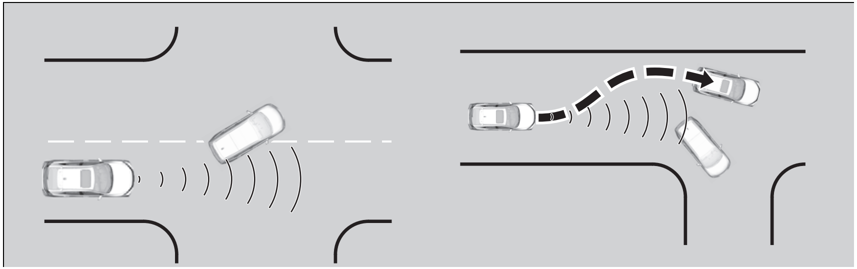
The CMBS™ may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.



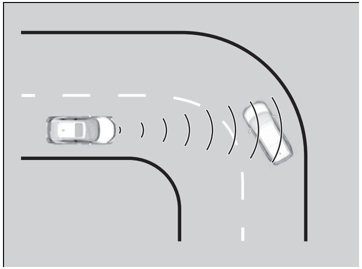
With Little Chance of a Collision

Do not paint, or apply any coverings or paint to radar sensor area. This can impact CMBS™ operation.

Continued

■ On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

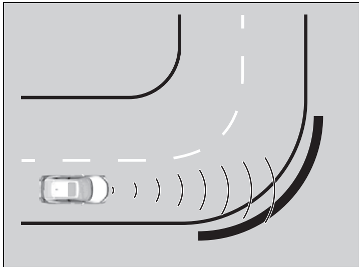


■ Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

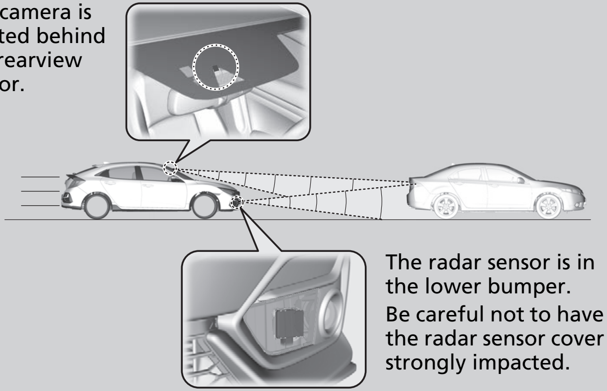
You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects (such as a traffic sign and guard rail) on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.
When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The radar sensor is in the lower bumper.

Be careful not to have the radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

- ■ Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 90 mph (145 km/h).
  No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 25 mph (40km/h) or above.
- ■ Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D or S.

≫Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on expressways or freeways and in good weather.

⚠WARNING

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

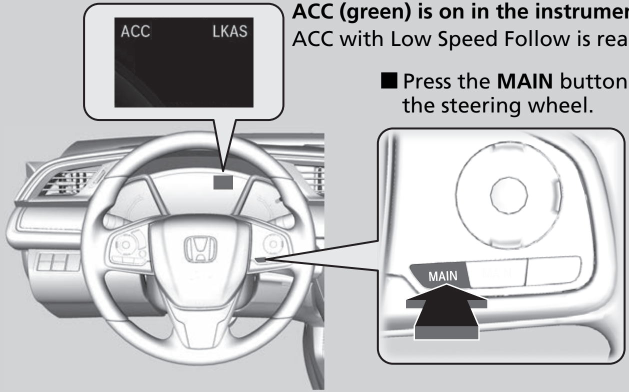
➔ **Radar Sensor** P. 548

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ How to activate the system

How to use



ACC (green) is on in the instrument panel.
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

■ Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
Front Sensor Camera P. 546

The radar sensor for ACC with Low Speed Follow is shared with the collision mitigation braking system™ (CMBS™).
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) P. 491

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC with Low Speed Follow and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

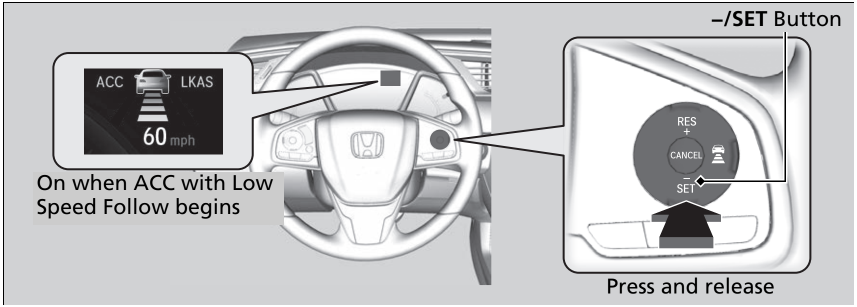
ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.
ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 508

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

---

* Not available on all models

To Set the Vehicle Speed



When driving at about 25 mph (40 km/h) or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When driving slower than about 25 mph (40 km/h): If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to 25 mph (40 km/h) regardless of current vehicle speed. If your vehicle is stationary and a vehicle is detected ahead, your vehicle speed can be set, even with the brake pedal depressed.

⨠Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:
- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with Low Speed Follow will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

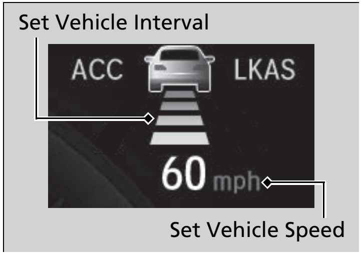
You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or audio/information screen between mph and km/h.

⮚ **Customized Features** P. 134, 350

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire Pressure/TPMS* and Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

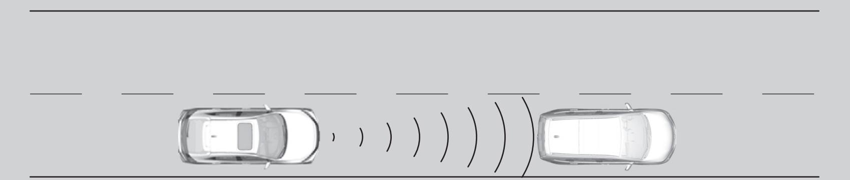
When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

When in Operation

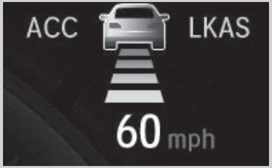
There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

To Set or Change Following-interval P. 512



ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 394 ft. (120 m)

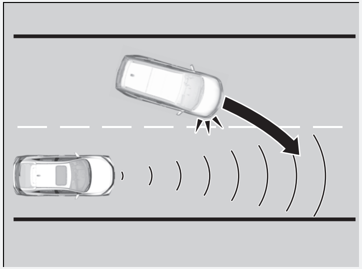


A vehicle icon appears on the driver information interface

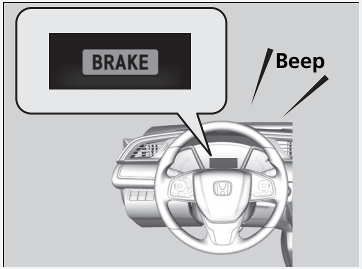
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

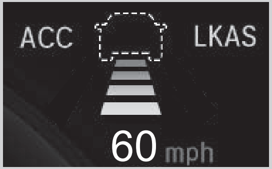
If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with dotted-line contour appears on the driver information interface

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from traveling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
There are times when the vehicle speed will decrease when the accelerator pedal is lightly applied.

»When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:
- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. Change the **ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep** setting.

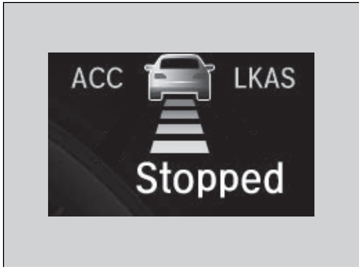
2 **Customized Features** P. 134, 350

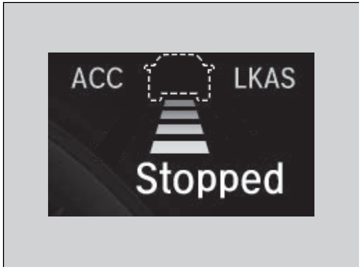
Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

2 **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 508

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop





Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the driver information interface.
When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the driver information interface blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the prior set speed.

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

≫A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

⚠WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Continued

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** with Low Speed Follow indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

➲ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546

Environmental conditions

Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

Roadway conditions

Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the lower bumper next to the fog light* is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.

≫ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

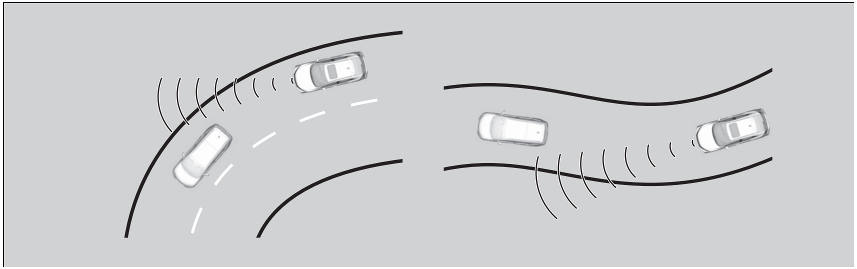
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

---

* Not available on all models

■Detection limitations

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.



- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

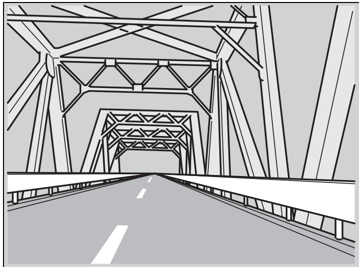
Continued

▶▶ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

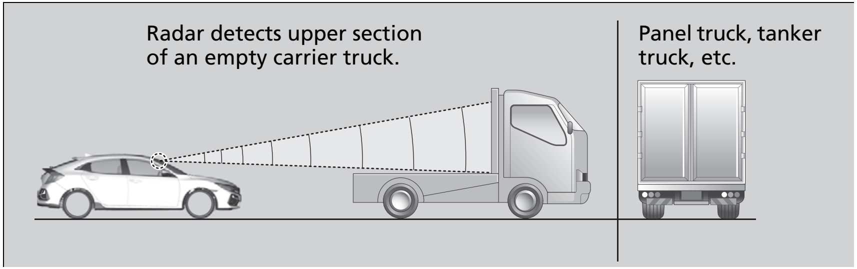
If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle impacted a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.



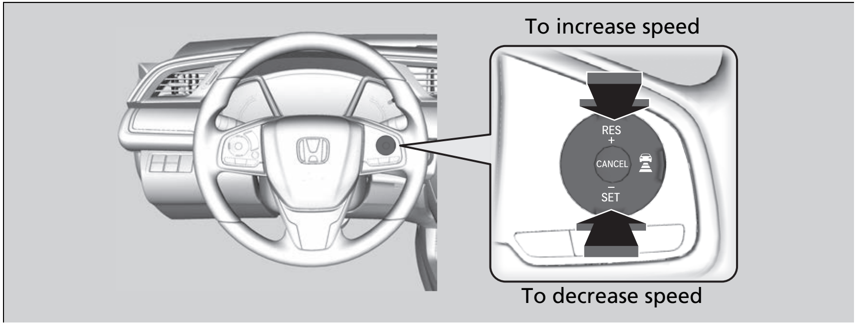
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.


Radar detects upper section of an empty carrier truck.
Panel truck, tanker truck, etc.

- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

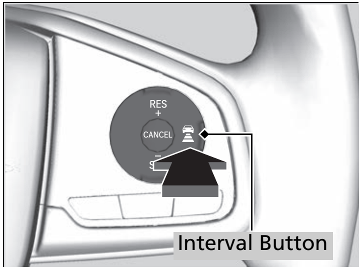
You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or the audio/information screen between mph and km/h.

Customized Features P. 134, 350

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **–/SET** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

Continued

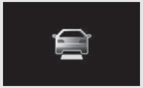
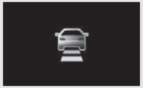
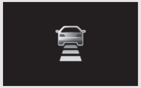
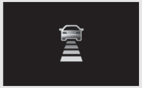
To Set or Change Following-interval



Press the (interval) button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.
Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

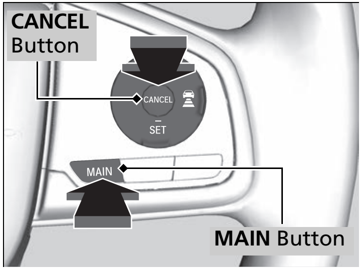
The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		50 mph (80 km/h)	65 mph (104 km/h)
Short		81.0 feet 24.7 meters 1.1 sec	103.3 feet 31.5 meters 1.1 sec
Middle		112.2 feet 34.2 meters 1.5 sec	142.4 feet 43.4 meters 1.5 sec
Long		153.5 feet 46.8 meters 2.1 sec	199.4 feet 60.8 meters 2.1 sec
Extra Long		208.3 feet 63.5 meters 2.9 sec	273.6 feet 83.4 meters 2.9 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

Continued

To Cancel



To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  - ▶ **ACC** with Low Speed Follow indicator goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.

≫To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the lower bumper next to the fog light* gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA® or CMBS™ is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA® system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver’s seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

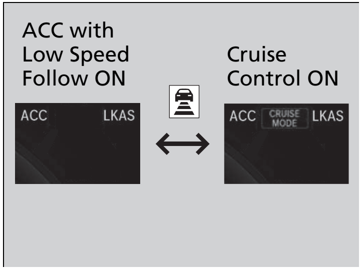
▶▶Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC with Low Speed Follow to cancel improves, then press the **–/SET** button.

* Not available on all models

Continued

To Switch ACC with Low Speed Follow to Cruise Control



Press and hold the (interval) button for one second. **Cruise Mode Selected** appears on the driver information interface for two seconds, and then the mode switches to Cruise.
To switch back to ACC with Low Speed Follow, press and hold the button again for one second. **ACC Mode Selected** appears on the driver information interface for two seconds.

When to use

Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~.

To Set the Vehicle Speed

Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.
The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

▶▶To Switch ACC with Low Speed Follow to Cruise Control

Always be aware which mode you are in. When you are driving in Cruise mode, the system will not assist you to maintain a following-interval from a vehicle ahead of you.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or the audio/information screen between mph and km/h.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 134, 350

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

To Cancel

To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

▶▶To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:
After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

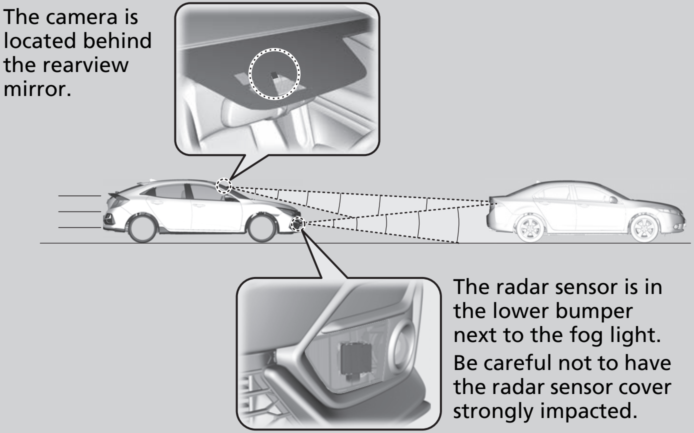
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h).
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off.

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control is canceled automatically.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When to use



The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The radar sensor is in the lower bumper next to the fog light.
Be careful not to have the radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

■ Vehicle speed for adaptive cruise control: Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~

≫Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

⚠WARNING

ACC has limited braking capability.
When your vehicle speed drops below 22 mph (35 km/h), ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle’s brakes.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

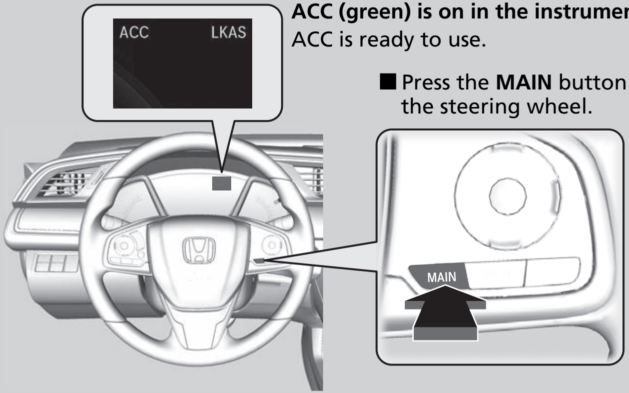
For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.
➲ **Radar Sensor** P. 548

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➲ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546

* Not available on all models

■ How to activate the system

How to use



ACC (green) is on in the instrument panel.
ACC is ready to use.

■ Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel.

≫Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the collision mitigation braking system™ (CMBS™).

➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 491

ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

➔ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 523

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift. You can maintain the set speed if you change gear within five seconds.

When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

Do not use ACC under the following conditions:

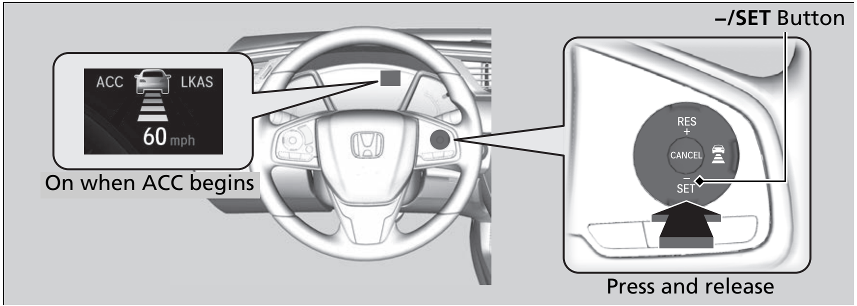
- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

---

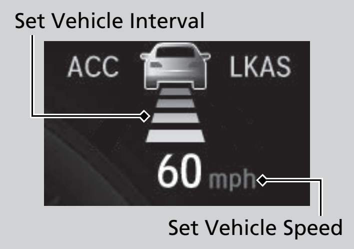
* Not available on all models

Continued

To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.



The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

▶ When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

When you use ACC, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

≫Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or audio/information screen between mph and km/h.

Customized Features P. 134, 350

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF and Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

2.0 L engine models

When you completely disable VSA®, you cannot use ACC.

Driving

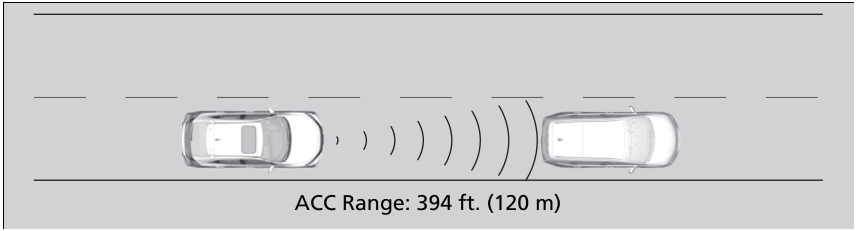
* Not available on all models

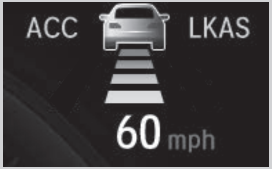
When in Operation

There is a vehicle ahead

ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

To Set or Change Following-interval P. 527



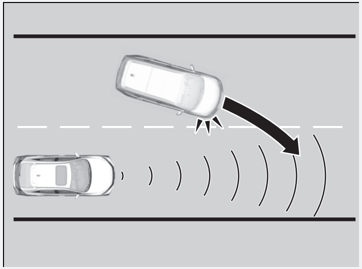


A vehicle icon appears on the driver information interface

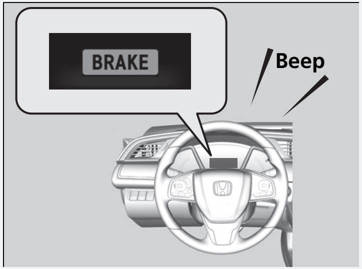
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

If the vehicle detected ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle is detected cutting in front of you, the beeper sounds, and a message appears on the driver information interface.

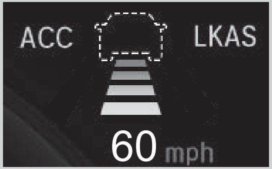


Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



Continued

■There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with dotted-line contour appears on the driver information interface

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from traveling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.
ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed.
There are times when the vehicle speed will decrease when the accelerator pedal is lightly applied.

»When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range. Change the **ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep** setting.

⮚ **Customized Features** P. 134, 350

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC. Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

⮚ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 523

ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

Front Sensor Camera P. 546

Environmental conditions

Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

Roadway conditions

Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the lower bumper next to the fog light is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.

Continued

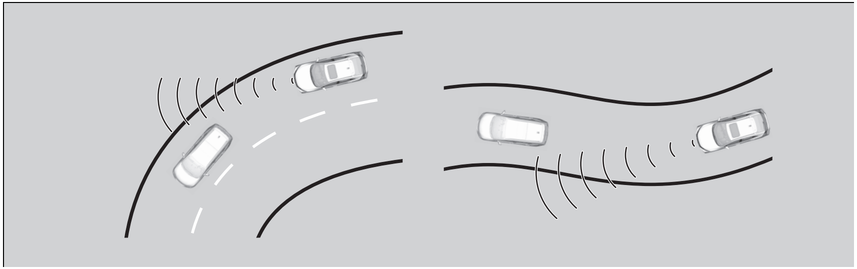
ACC Conditions and Limitations

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.



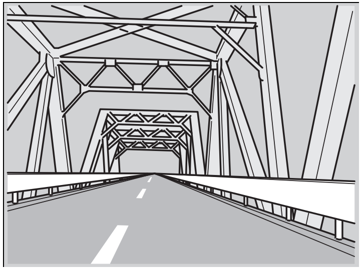
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

»ACC Conditions and Limitations

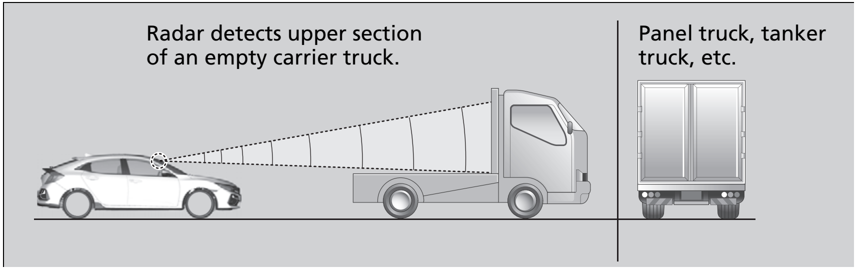
If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle impacted a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.



- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.

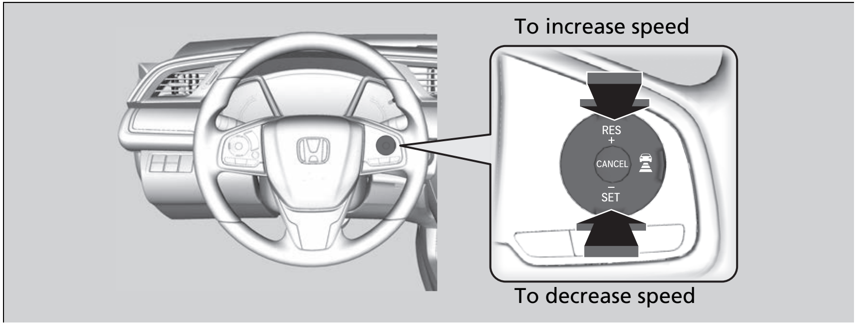

Radar detects upper section of an empty carrier truck.
Panel truck, tanker truck, etc.

- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

Continued

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep pressing the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

≫To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

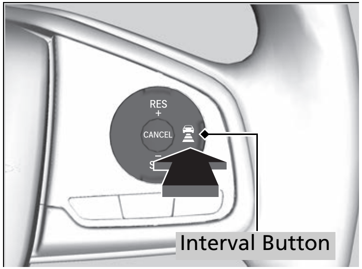
If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or the audio/information screen between mph and km/h.

Customized Features P. 134, 350

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **–/SET** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set or Change Following-interval

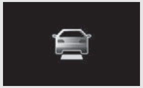
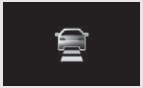
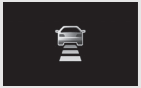
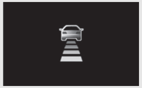


Press the (interval) button to change the ACC following-interval.
Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

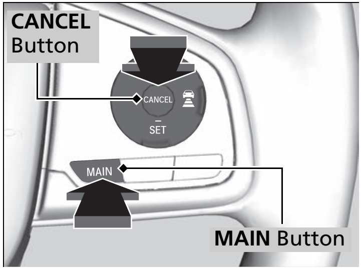
Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

Continued

The higher your vehicle’s following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		50 mph (80 km/h)	65 mph (104 km/h)
Short		83.3 feet 25.4 meters 1.1 sec	100.4 feet 30.6 meters 1.1 sec
Middle		109.6 feet 33.4 meters 1.5 sec	137.4 feet 41.9 meters 1.5 sec
Long		153.8 feet 46.9 meters 2.1 sec	199.8 feet 60.9 meters 2.1 sec
Extra Long		213.5 feet 65.1 meters 2.9 sec	282.7 feet 86.2 meters 2.9 sec

To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  ▶ **ACC** indicator goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.

≫To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled ACC, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button when driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

Continued

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the lower bumper next to the fog light gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA® or CMBS™ is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA® system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.
- Ignoring shift down indication shown in the tachometer display will cancel the ACC after about 10 seconds.
- The engine speed goes into the tachometer’s red zone.
- The engine speed goes to below 1,000 rpm.
- You shift into neutral temporarily when shifting into a higher or lower gear.

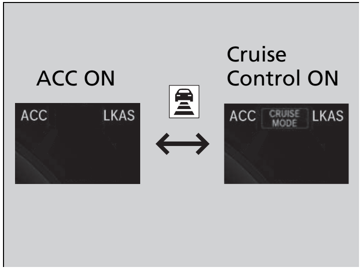
»Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC has been automatically canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves, then press the **–/SET** button.

2.0 L engine models

When you completely disable VSA® while ACC is activated, ACC will automatically be canceled.

To Switch ACC to Cruise Control



Press and hold the (interval) button for one second. **Cruise Mode Selected** appears on the driver information interface for two seconds, and then the mode switches to Cruise.
To switch back to ACC, press and hold the button again for one second. **ACC Mode Selected** appears on the driver information interface for two seconds.

When to use

Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~.

To Set the Vehicle Speed

Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.
The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

▷▷To Switch ACC to Cruise Control

Always be aware which mode you are in. When you are driving in Cruise mode, the system will not assist you to maintain a following-interval from a vehicle ahead of you.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or the audio/information screen between mph and km/h.

Customized Features P. 134, 350

Continued

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

To Cancel

To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:
- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:
After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h).
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off.

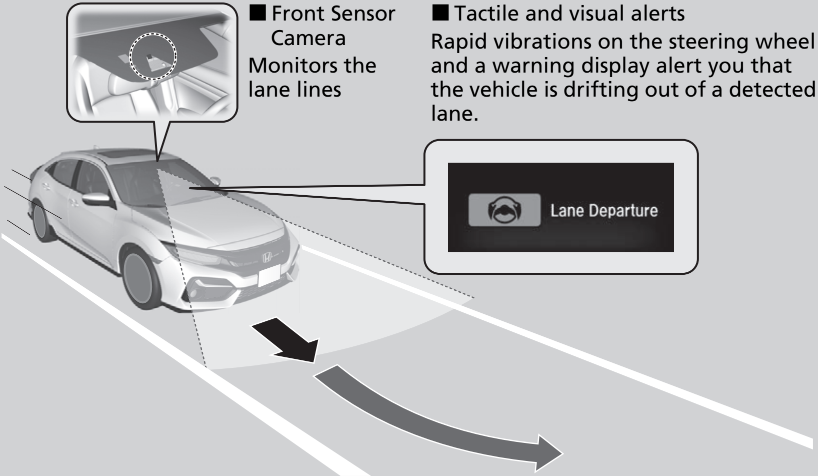
At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control canceled automatically.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ Front Sensor Camera

Monitors the lane lines

■ Tactile and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

≫Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

➲ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 104

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windshield and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on freeways.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➲ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 538

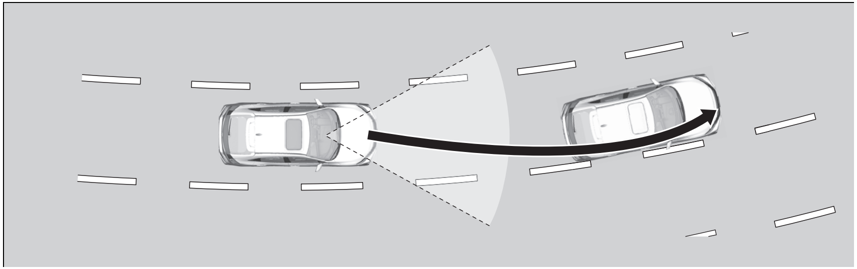
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➲ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546

Continued

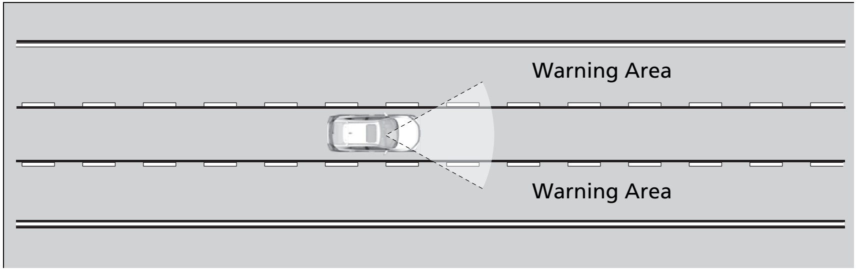
Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



▷▷Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

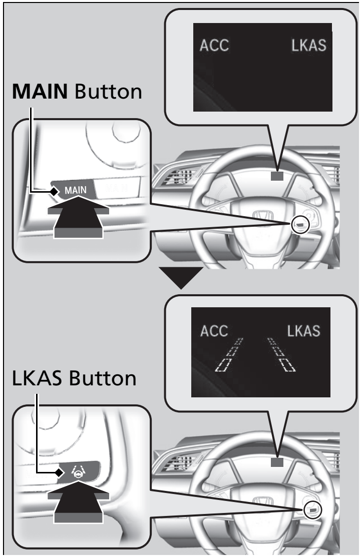
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be canceled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

How to activate the system



1. Press the **MAIN** button.
▶ The LKAS is on in the driver information interface.
The system is ready to use.

2. Press the LKAS button.
▶ Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.
The system is activated.

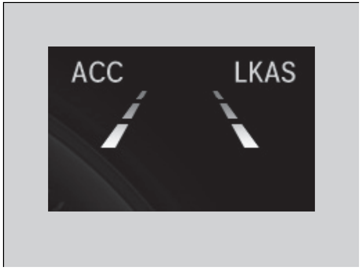
Continued

»When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

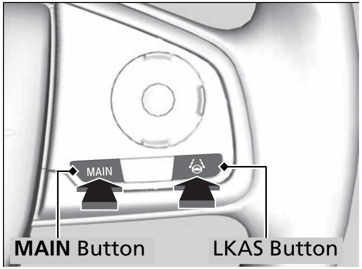
2.0 L engine models

When you completely disable VSA®, you cannot use LKAS.



3. Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.
▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To Cancel



To cancel the LKAS:
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

⋙To Cancel

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

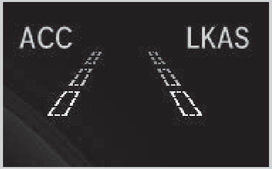
Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC with Low Speed Follow on and off.

Models with ACC

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC on and off.

2.0 L engine models

If you completely disable VSA® while LKAS is activated, LKAS will automatically be canceled.



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the driver information interface change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ The system operation is suspended if you:

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
  ▶ Turning the wipers off or setting it to **LO** resumes the LKAS.

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** and the wipers operate continuously.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

All models

- Decrease the vehicle speed to 40 mph (64 km/h) or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to 45 mph (72 km/h) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

■ The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 90 mph (145 km/h).

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

≫The system operation is suspended if you:

You can change the setting for the LKAS.
LKAS suspended beep **ON** and **OFF** can be selected.

Customized Features P. 350

Continued

■ The LKAS may automatically be canceled when:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA® system engages.

A beeper will sound if the LKAS is automatically canceled.

LKAS Conditions and Limitations

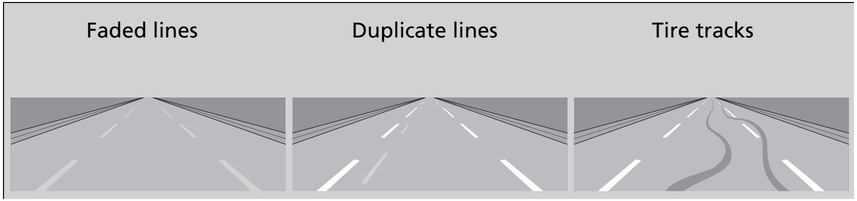
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

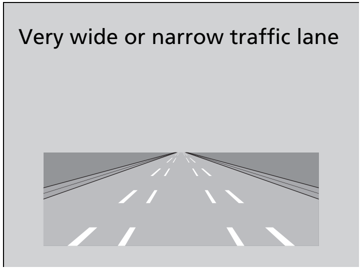
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



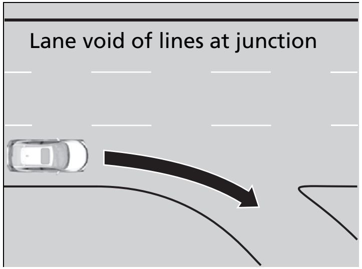
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.


Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

Continued

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.



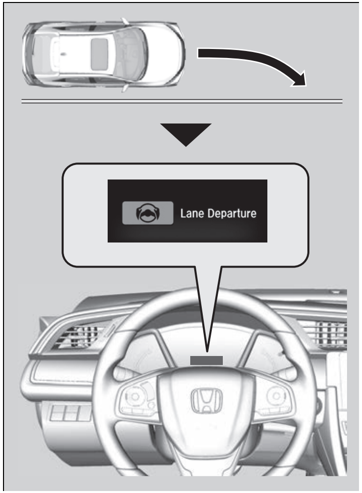
■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

2 **Customized Features** P. 134, 350

As a visual alert, the **Lane Departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

Continued

≫Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, the RDM system has limitations.
Over-reliance on the RDM system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The RDM system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The RDM system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

2 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546

The RDM system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

2 **RDM Conditions and Limitations** P. 544

There are times when you may not notice RDM functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

≫How the System Works

2.0 L engine models

The RDM system does not function while VSA® is completely disabled.

How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

How the System Activates

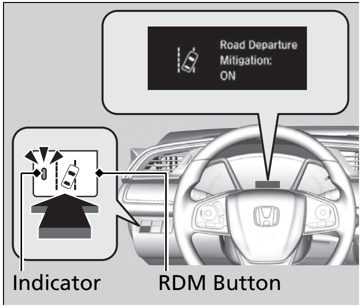
The RDM system may automatically shut off and the indicator comes and stays on.

Indicators P. 82

RDM system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

RDM On and Off



Press the RDM button to turn the system on and off.

▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

≫RDM On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the driver information interface or the audio/information screen, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

➲ **Customized Features** P. 134, 350

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire Pressure/TPMS* and Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

RDM Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

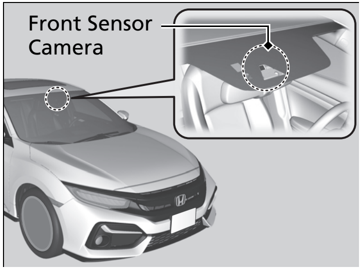
■Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.

Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems such as LKAS, RDM, ACC*, ACC with Low Speed Follow*, CMBSTM and auto high-beam, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Sensor Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the hood, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

* Not available on all models

≫Front Sensor Camera

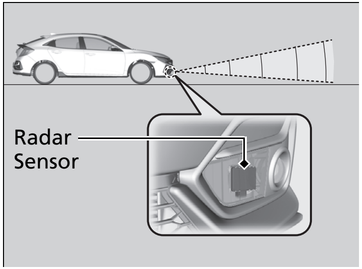
If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Radar Sensor



The radar sensor is at the lower part of the front bumper.

Radar Sensor

Avoid strong impacts to the radar sensor cover.

For the CMBS™ to work properly:
- Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.
- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
- Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by using the safety support switch and take your vehicle to a dealer.

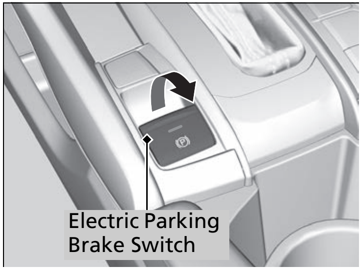
CMBS™ On and Off P. 495

If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:
- Your vehicle is involved in a frontal collision
- Your vehicle drives through deep water or is submerged in deep water
- Your vehicle strongly strikes a bump, curb, chock, or embankment that could jar the radar sensor

Brake System

■Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



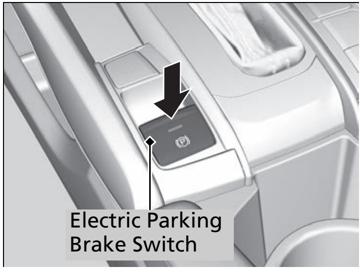
■To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the ignition switch[*1] is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.



■To release

The vehicle must be ON [II][*1] in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.

▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

»Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

➔ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 662

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA® system until the vehicle come to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

■ To release automatically

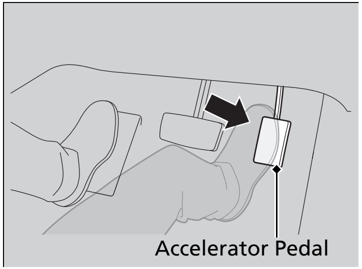
Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Continuously variable transmission models

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Manual transmission models

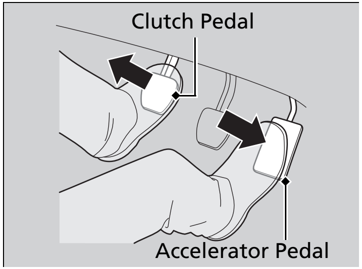
Depress the accelerator pedal while releasing the clutch pedal releases the parking brake.



Continuously variable transmission models

Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.



Manual transmission models

Gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

>>Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and automatic brake hold is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while automatic brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Automatic Brake Hold System while automatic brake hold is applied.

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the engine is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.

Manual transmission models

- When there is a problem with the electric parking brake switch, after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]*1.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.

Continuously variable transmission models

- The transmission is not in (P) or (N).

Manual transmission models

- The transmission is not in (N).

⟫Parking Brake

When the vehicle is traveling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator*

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Parking brake and brake system indicator (red)
- VSA® system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Manual transmission models

The clutch pedal is fully depressed before gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

⯈ **Brake Assist System** P. 557
⯈ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 556

2.0 L engine models

Brake squeal

To satisfy the performance under a wide range of driving conditions, a high-performance braking system is equipped on your vehicle. You may hear the brake squeal under certain conditions, such as vehicle speed, deceleration, humidity, and so on. This is not a malfunction.

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

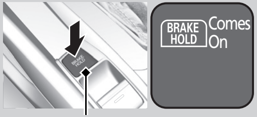
Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Automatic Brake Hold

Continuously variable transmission models

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

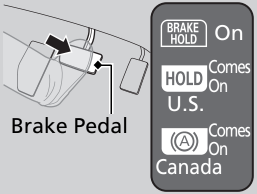
■ Turning on the system



Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

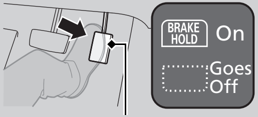
■ Activating the system



Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must not be in P or R.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Canceling the system



Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than P or N. The system is canceled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

>>Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

Continuously variable transmission models

⚠WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

Continued

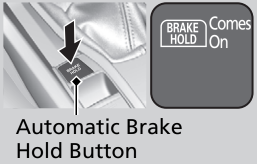
Manual transmission models

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until you shift into one of the gears other than N and:

- Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.
- Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

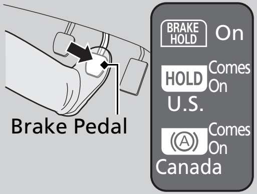
■ Turning on the system


BRAKE HOLD
Comes On
Automatic Brake Hold Button

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

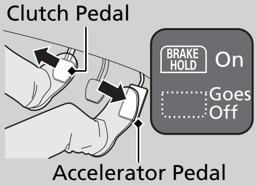
■ Activating the system


BRAKE HOLD
On
HOLD
Comes On
U.S.
Comes On
Canada
Brake Pedal

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Canceling the system


Clutch Pedal
BRAKE HOLD
On
Goes Off
Accelerator Pedal

Shift into one of the gears other than N and:

- Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.
- Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

The system is canceled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

- You depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever to P or R.

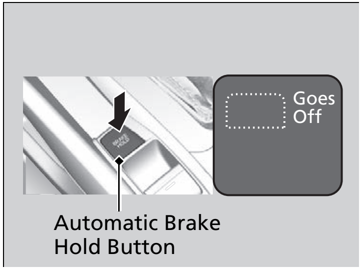
■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver’s seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

Manual transmission models

- The engine stalls.

■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

≫Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

➔ **When Stopped** P. 558

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

Manual transmission models

The system turns off if the engine stalls while automatic brake hold is active or the system is on.

≫Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

》Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tire of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tires are equipped with tire chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.

Continuously variable transmission models

3. Change the shift position to P.

Manual transmission models

3. Move the shift lever to R or 1.

All models

4. Turn off the engine.
   - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 15 seconds.

Parking Your Vehicle

Continuously variable transmission models

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift lever position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

When Stopped

NOTICE

Continuously variable transmission models

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into P before the vehicle stops completely.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

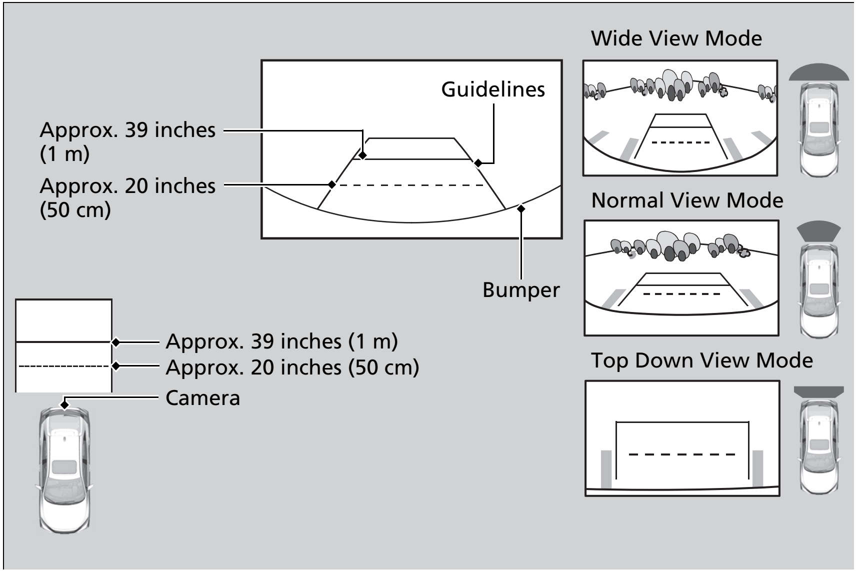
When Stopped

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view.
The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area


Wide View Mode
Guidelines
Approx. 39 inches (1 m)
Approx. 20 inches (50 cm)
Normal View Mode
Bumper
Top Down View Mode
Approx. 39 inches (1 m)
Approx. 20 inches (50 cm)
Camera

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

Models with Display Audio

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

Customized Features P. 350

Fixed Guideline
On: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into R.
Off: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline
On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
Off: Guidelines do not move.

You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

Models with color audio system

Press the selector knob to switch the angle.

Models with Display Audio

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the angle.

: Wide view
: Normal view
: Top down view

All models

- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal, the same mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If Top down view was last used before you turned off the engine, Wide View mode is selected next time you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 and put the transmission into R.
- If Top down view was last used more than 10 seconds after you shift from R, Wide View mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into R.

≫About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

Models with color audio system

You can change the **Camera Guideline** settings.

➜ **Customized Features** P. 343

Camera Guideline

On: Guidelines appear when you shift into R.
Off: Guidelines do not appear.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Models without 18 or 20 inch wheels

Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher

Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Models with 18 or 20 inch wheels

Unleaded premium gasoline, pump octane number 91 or higher

Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of a gasoline with a pump octane less than 87 can lead to engine damage.
The use of regular unleaded gasoline can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

■ Top tier detergent gasoline

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline” where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today’s advanced engines.

≫Fuel Information

NOTICE
We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.

Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service.
Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

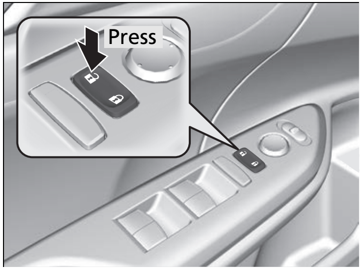
Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline” standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit *www.hondacars.com.* In Canada, visit *www.honda.ca* for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit *www.toptiergas.com*.

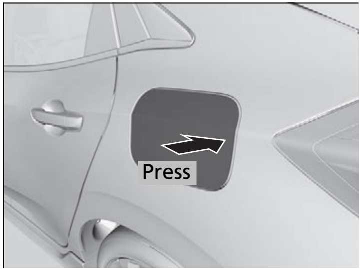
■ Fuel tank capacity: 12.39 US gal (46.9 L)

How to Refuel

Your fuel tank is not equipped with a fuel fill cap. You can insert the filler nozzle directly into the filler neck. The tank seals itself again when you pull out the filler nozzle.



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch or lock tab.
   ▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.



4. Press the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click.

>How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

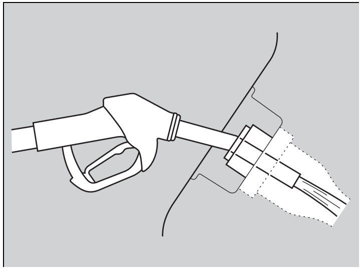
Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

The fuel filler opening is designed to accept only service station filler nozzles for refueling. Use of smaller diameter tubes (e.g., those used to siphon fuel for other uses) or other non-service station devices can damage the area in and around the filler opening.

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door.
The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

The fuel fill door and its latching mechanism can be permanently damaged if the fuel fill door is forced closed when the driver's door is locked.



5. Place the end of the filler nozzle on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
   - ▶ Make sure that the end of the filler nozzle goes down along with the filler pipe.
   - ▶ Keep the filler nozzle level.
   - ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically.
   - ▶ If you do not fill up the tank to full, always add a minimum of **1.3 US gal (5.0 L)** of fuel.
   - ▶ After filling, wait about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.
6. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

≫How to Refuel

If the filler nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

If you repeatedly fill the tank with less than the specified minimum amount of fuel, the malfunction indicator lamp may come on. If this happens, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If you have to refuel your vehicle from a portable container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

➔ **Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container** P. 682

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the driver information interface.

- Use the recommended viscosity engine oil.
  - **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 582
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

$$\text{Miles driven} \div \text{Gallons of fuel} = \text{Miles per Gallon}$$

$$100 \times \text{Liters of fuel} \div \text{Kilometers driven} = \text{L per 100 km}$$

In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test.
For more information on how this test is performed, please visit *https://www.nrcan.gc.ca* and search for “fuel consumption testing” in the search field at the top of the page.

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine’s exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.

- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Maintenance Minder™. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 1,292°F (700°C). It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

≫Turbo Engine Vehicle

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the filter is indicated on the driver information interface. Follow the information of when to replace them.

➔ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 573

The temperature gauge pointer is at the H mark when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.

Before Performing Maintenance
  Inspection and Maintenance 570
  Safety When Performing Maintenance 571
  Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 572
Maintenance Minder™ 573
Maintenance Under the Hood
  Maintenance Items Under the Hood 579
  Opening the Hood 581
  Recommended Engine Oil 582
  Oil Check 583
  Adding Engine Oil 585
  Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter..... 586
  Engine Coolant 589
  Transmission Fluid 591
  Brake/Clutch* Fluid 592
  Refilling Window Washer Fluid......... 593
Replacing Light Bulbs 594
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 604
Checking and Maintaining Tires
  Checking Tires 609
  Tire and Loading Information Label 610
  Tire Labeling 610
  DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)...... 612
  Wear Indicators................................ 614
  Tire Service Life 614
  Tire and Wheel Replacement 615
  Tire Rotation 616
  Winter Tires 617
  Cold Weather Driving 619
Battery 620
Remote Transmitter Care
  Replacing the Button Battery 622
Climate Control System Maintenance .. 624
Cleaning
  Interior Care 625
  Exterior Care 628
Accessories and Modifications 631

* Not available on all models

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.)

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake/clutch* fluid level monthly.
  - **Brake/Clutch* Fluid** P. 592
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 609
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 594
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 604

Inspection and Maintenance

U.S. models

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are “certified” to EPA standards.

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the driver information interface.

Maintenance Service Items P. 576

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at *www.techinfo.honda.com*.

Authorized Manuals P. 695

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.

---

* Not available on all models

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  - ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

≫Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

≫Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover* forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

* Not available on all models

Maintenance Minder™

Select the Maintenance Minder to see maintenance items that are due soon and to see the percentage of life remaining in the engine oil.
When the engine oil life is less than 15%, a Maintenance Minder message will appear every time you turn the ignition switch to ON [II][*1], reminding you to bring your vehicle to a dealer for service.

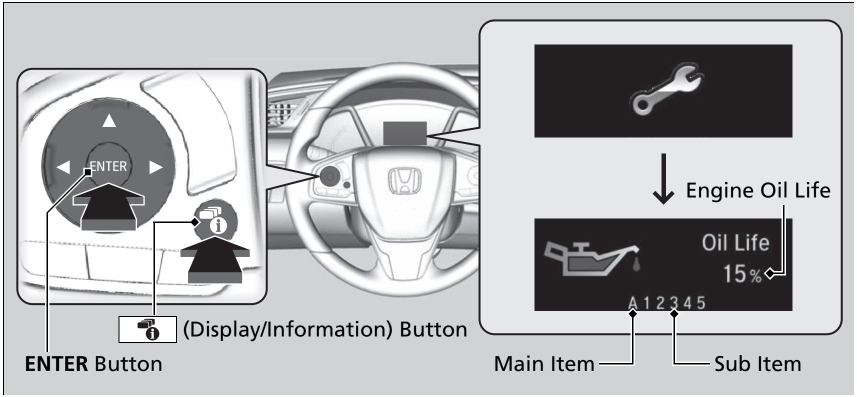
To Use Maintenance Minder™

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface.

You can view them on the **Maintenance Minder** screen at any time.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.
2. Press the ⓘ (Display/Information) button several times until 🔧 is displayed.
3. Press **ENTER** button to go to the **Maintenance Minder** screen. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.



≫Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Based on the engine operating conditions and oil age, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

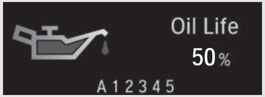
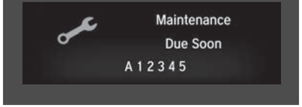
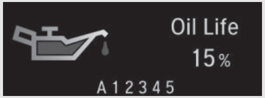
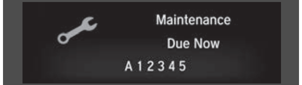
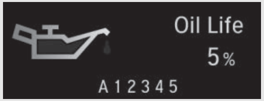
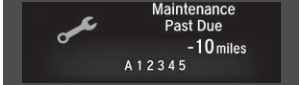
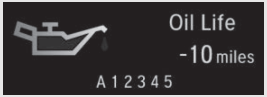
There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the driver information interface.

➔ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 576

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

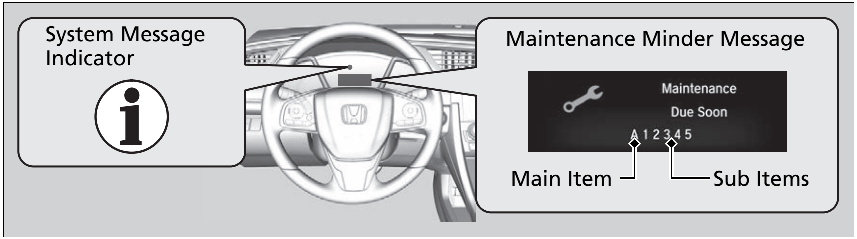
Maintenance Minder Messages on the Driver Information Interface

Maintenance Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
Normal —	 Oil Life 50% A12345	When you select the Maintenance Minder screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the percentage of engine oil life remaining.	
Maintenance Due Soon  Maintenance Due Soon A12345	 Oil Life 15% A12345	The engine oil life indicator starts to appear along with other due-soon maintenance item codes when the remaining oil life drops to 15 percent.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.
Maintenance Due Now  Maintenance Due Now A12345	 Oil Life 5% A12345	The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the ⓘ button to switch to another display.	The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
Maintenance Past Due  Maintenance Past Due -10 miles A12345	 Oil Life -10 miles A12345	The engine oil has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). The negative distance on the display blinks.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.

Continued

Maintenance Service Items



U.S. models

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil[*1]

B	• Replace engine oil[*1] and oil filter
	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Check expiration date for Temporary Tire Repair kit bottle (If equipped)
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system[#]
	  • Fuel lines and connections[#]

*1: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

# : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles.

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element[*2] • Replace dust and pollen filter[*3] • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid[*4]
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
7	• Replace brake fluid[*5]

*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles.

*4: Continuously variable transmission models Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 25,000 miles.

*5: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.

Maintenance Service Items

- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

Canadian models

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1
0	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter

*1: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 24,000 km.
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 24,000 km.
*4: **Continuously variable transmission models** Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 40,000 km.
*5: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.
# : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3 • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

9	• Service front and rear brakes
	• Check expiration date for Temporary Tire Repair kit bottle (If equipped)
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

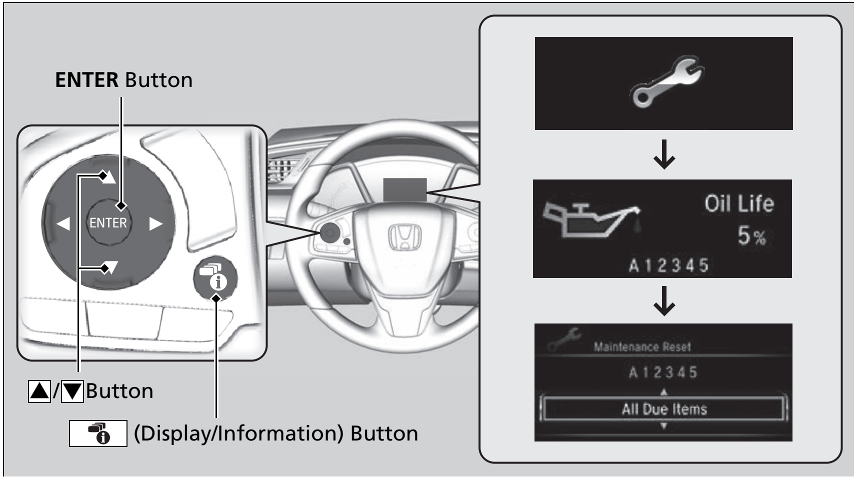
Maintenance Service Items

- Adjust the valves during services A, 0, 9, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

Continued

Resetting the Display

Reset the Maintenance Minder display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.
2. Press the ⓘ (display/information) button repeatedly until the 🔧 appears.
3. Press the **ENTER** button.
4. Press and hold the **ENTER** button for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
5. Press ▲ / ▼ button to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select **All Due Items** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
6. Press the **ENTER** button to reset the selected item.
7. Repeat from step 4 for other items you wish to reset.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▷▷Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the relevant item(s) after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the relevant maintenance item(s) yourself.

Models with color audio system

You can also reset the Maintenance Minder™ display using the customized features on the driver information interface.

Customized Features P. 134

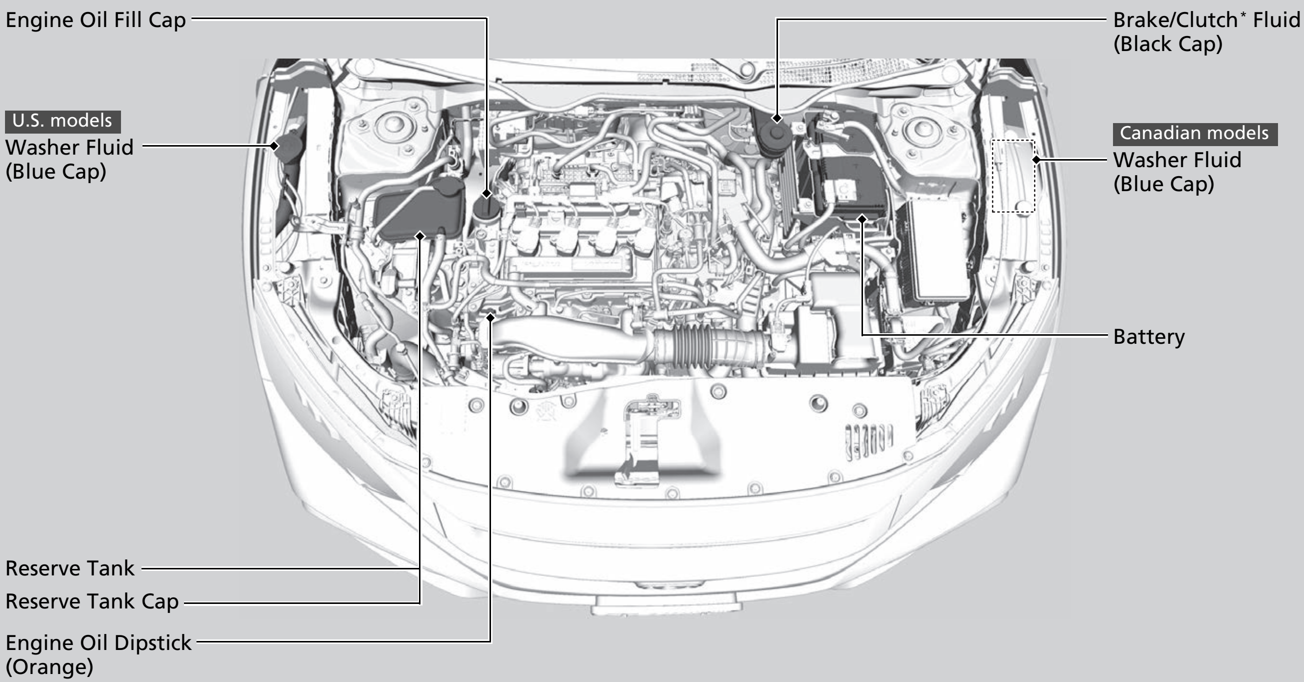
Models with Display Audio

You can also reset the Maintenance Minder™ display using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 350

Maintenance Items Under the Hood

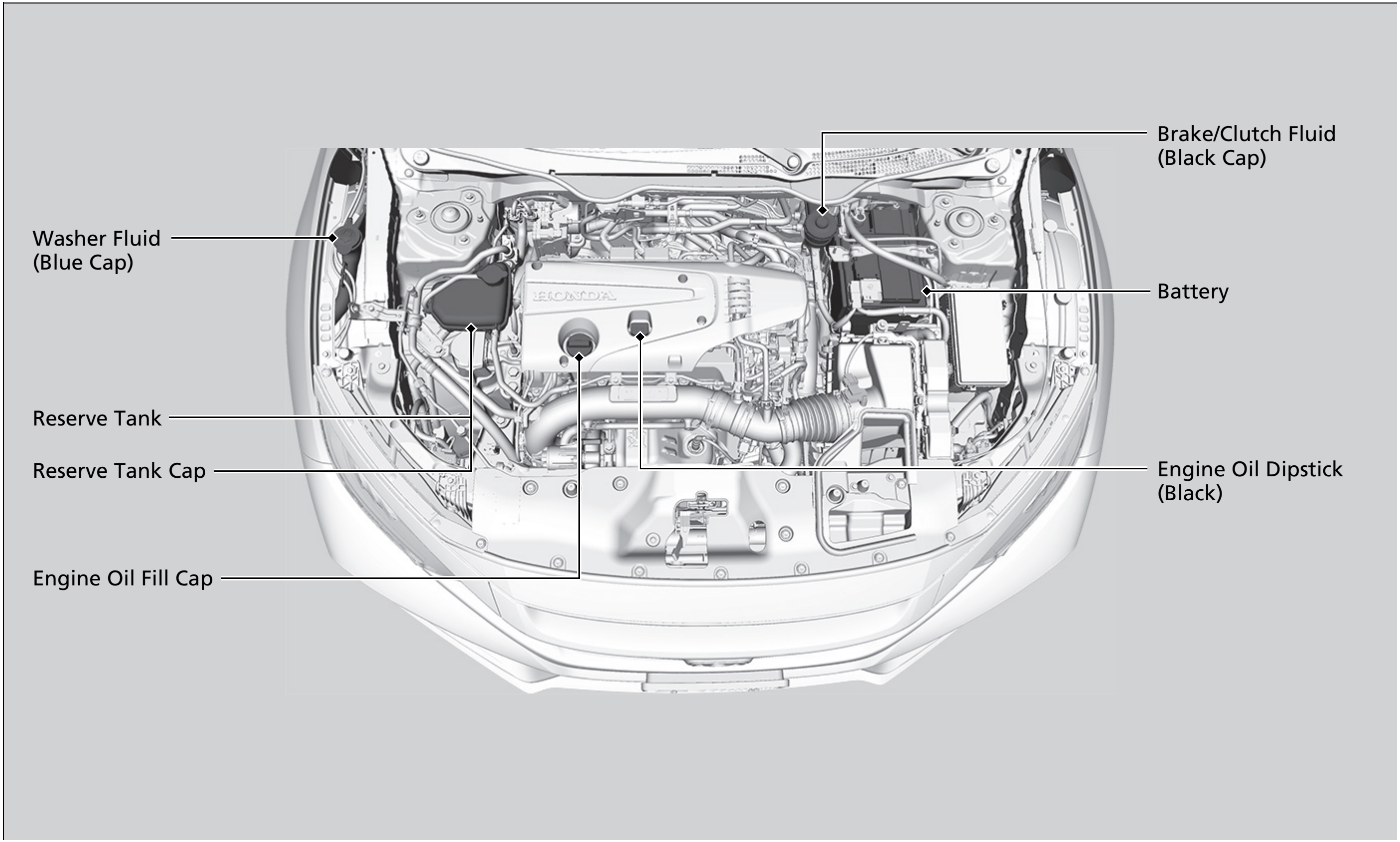
1.5 L engine models


Engine Oil Fill Cap
U.S. models
Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)
Reserve Tank
Reserve Tank Cap
Engine Oil Dipstick
(Orange)
Brake/Clutch* Fluid
(Black Cap)
Canadian models
Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)
Battery

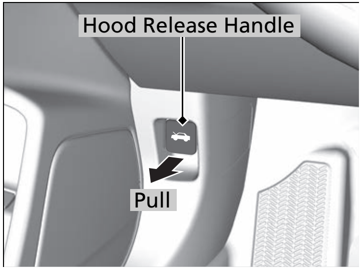
* Not available on all models

Continued

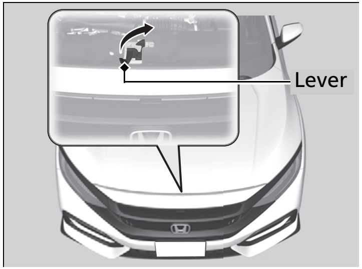
2.0 L engine models


Brake/Clutch Fluid
(Black Cap)
Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)
Battery
Reserve Tank
Reserve Tank Cap
Engine Oil Dipstick
(Black)
Engine Oil Fill Cap

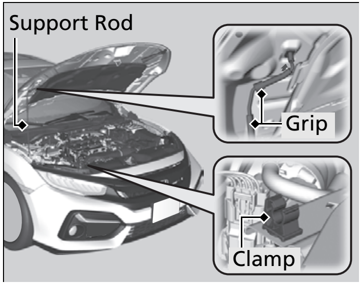
Opening the Hood



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the driver's side lower corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The hood will pop up slightly.



3. Pull up the hood latch lever (located under the front edge of the hood to the center) and raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the hood.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the hood. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and let the hood close.

≫Opening the Hood

⚠WARNING

The hood support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod: Use the foam grip instead.

NOTICE
Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised. The hood will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the hood and/or the wipers.

NOTICE
Do not press the engine cover* forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

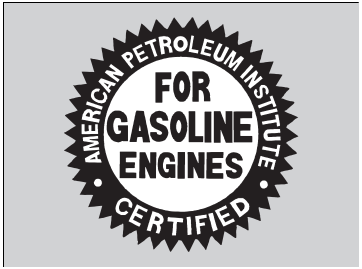
When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

* Not available on all models

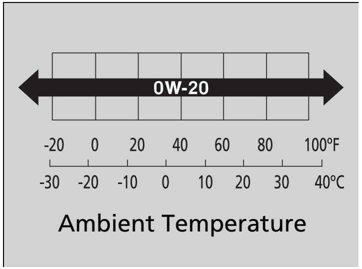
Recommended Engine Oil

- **Honda Genuine Motor Oil**
- **Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.**



Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute’s latest requirements.



Use Honda Genuine Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

■ Synthetic oil

You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

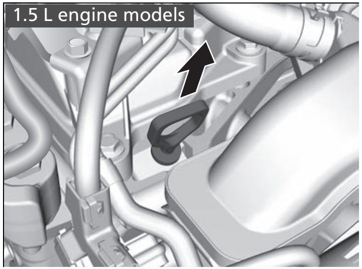
⧐Recommended Engine Oil

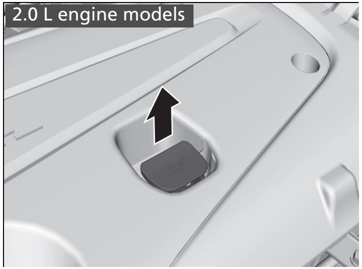
Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.
Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.





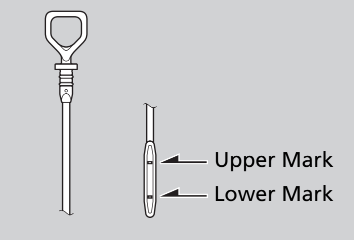
1. Remove the dipstick (orange or black).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

»Oil Check

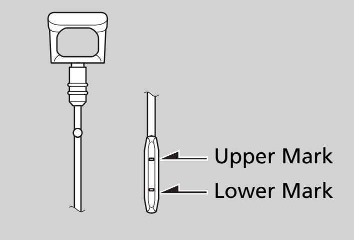
If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Continued

1.5 L engine models


Upper Mark
Lower Mark

2.0 L engine models


Upper Mark
Lower Mark

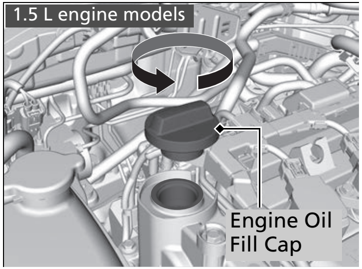
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

≫Oil Check

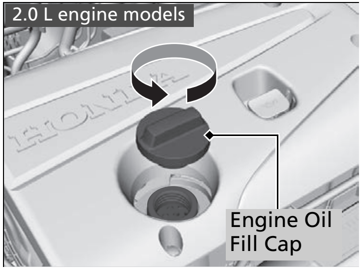
Under certain driving conditions, it is normal for the engine oil level to rise above the upper mark. If you have a concern, consult a dealer for details.

Adding Engine Oil

1.5 L engine models



2.0 L engine models



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

»Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

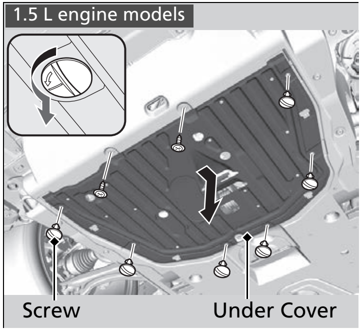
If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

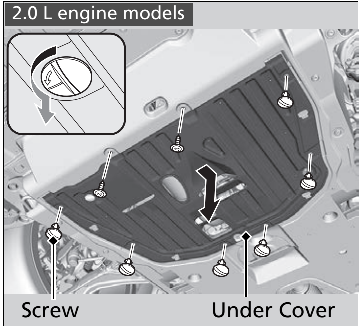
You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the driver information interface.

1.5 L engine models



2.0 L engine models

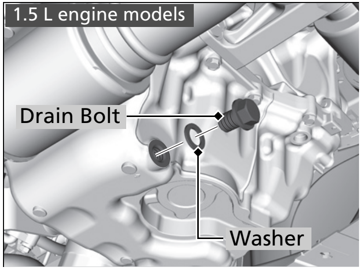


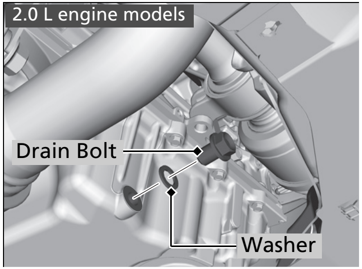
1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
3. Remove the phillips head screws and slotted head screws by turning 90° counterclockwise on the undercarriage and remove the under cover.

≫Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

NOTICE

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.

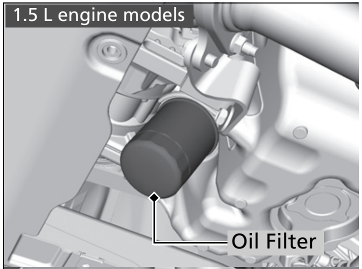

1.5 L engine models
Drain Bolt
Washer


2.0 L engine models
Drain Bolt
Washer

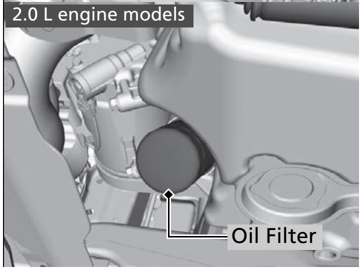
4. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

Continued

1.5 L engine models



2.0 L engine models



5. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.

6. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.
   - ▶ If it is stuck, you must detach it.

7. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.
   - ▶ Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the filter gasket.

8. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.
   - ▶ Tightening torque:
     30 lbf·ft (40 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)

9. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.
   - ▶ Engine oil change capacity (including filter):
     1.5 L engine models
     3.7 US qt (3.5 L)
     2.0 L engine models
     5.7 US qt (5.4 L)

10. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.

11. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.

12. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.
   - ▶ If necessary, add more engine oil.

≫Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

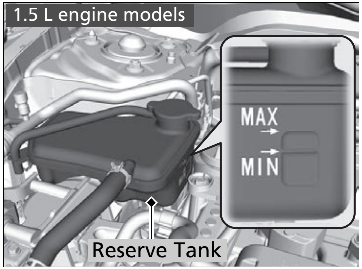
Engine Coolant

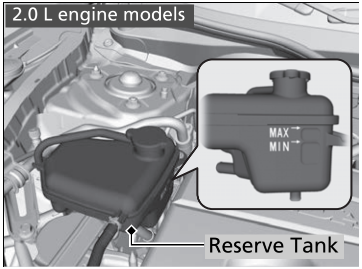
Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Checking the Coolant





1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Continued

≫Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

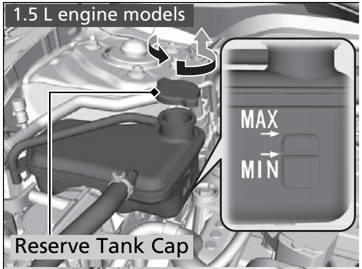
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

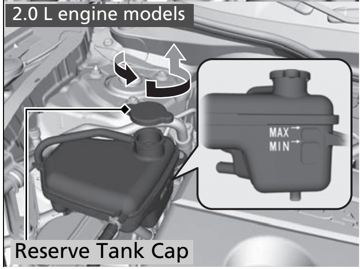
NOTICE

Genuine Honda engine coolant is a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water that can withstand freezing at temperatures as low as about −31°F (−35°C). If your vehicle is consistently subjected to temperatures below this, the concentration of antifreeze in the coolant should be increased. Consult a dealer for details.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Adding the Coolant


1.5 L engine models
MAX
MIN
Reserve Tank Cap


2.0 L engine models
MAX
MIN
Reserve Tank Cap

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8 turn counter-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the reserve tank cap counter-clockwise to remove it.
4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

≫Engine Coolant

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

≫Adding the Coolant

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

Continuously variable transmission models

■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

Manual transmission models

■ Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda MTF

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Do not attempt to check or change the manual transmission fluid yourself.

» Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle’s transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda’s new vehicle limited warranty.

» Manual Transmission Fluid

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certificated SAE 0 W-20 or 5 W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.

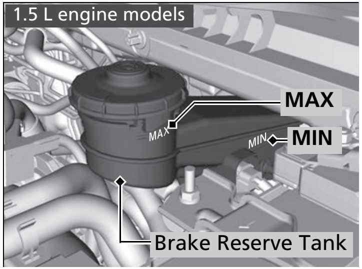
Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

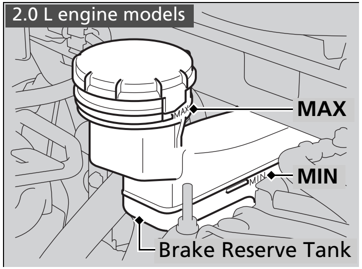
Brake/Clutch* Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

Use the same fluid for both the brakes and clutch*.

Checking the Brake Fluid





The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Manual transmission models

The brake fluid reserve tank is also used for your vehicle's clutch fluid. As long as you keep the brake fluid level as instructed above, there is no need for checking the clutch fluid level.

Brake/Clutch* Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

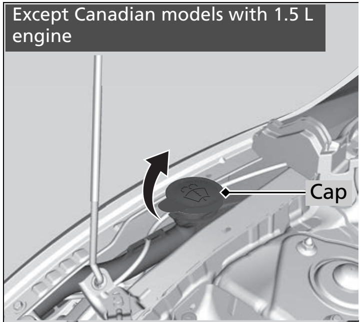
Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

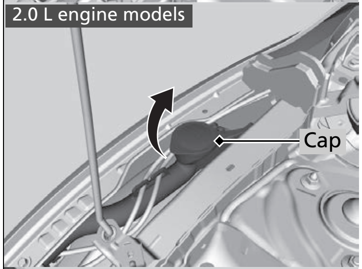
If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

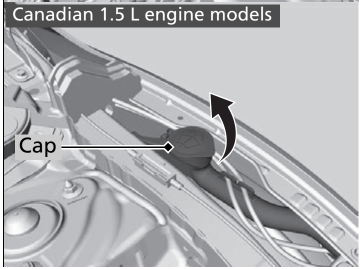
---

* Not available on all models

Refilling Window Washer Fluid


Except Canadian models with 1.5 L engine


2.0 L engine models


Canadian 1.5 L engine models

Open the cap and check the amount of window washer fluid.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Canadian models

If the washer fluid is low, a message appears on the driver information interface.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

»Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir.
Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.
Use only commercially available windshield washer fluid.
Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

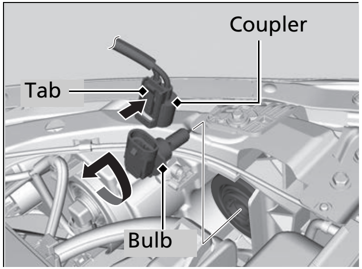
Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

High beam headlight:	**60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)***
High beam headlight:	**LED type***
Low beam headlight:	**55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)***
Low beam headlight:	**LED type***

High Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Headlight Bulbs

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit.
Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

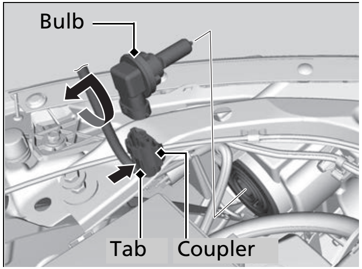
Models with LED headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

Low Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights



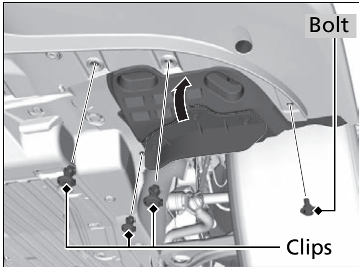
1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Fog Light Bulbs*

Models with halogen fog lights

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

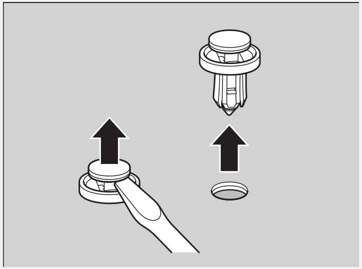
Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)



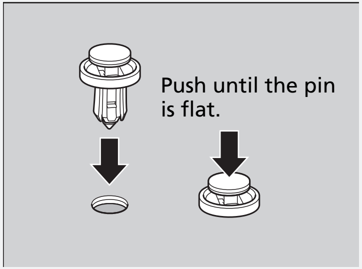
1. Remove the clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, remove the bolt, and push up the under cover.

≫Fog Light Bulbs*

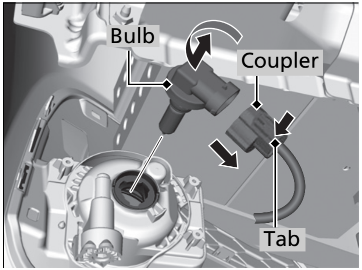
Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the center pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the center pin raised, and push until it is flat.



* Not available on all models



2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it clockwise.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

≫Fog Light Bulbs*

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Models with LED fog lights

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

---

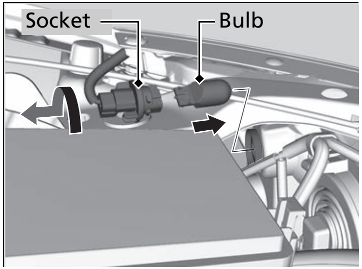
* Not available on all models

Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Models with halogen headlights

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

≫Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Models with LED headlights

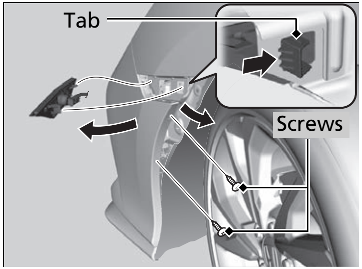
Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Side Marker Light Bulbs

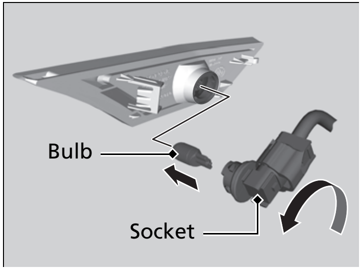
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Side Marker Light: 3 W

1.5 L engine models



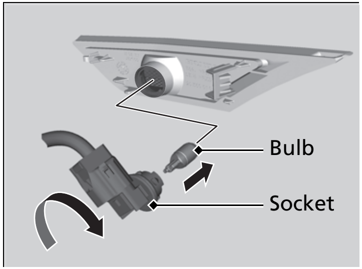
1. Remove the screws, and pull the inner fender back.
2. Push the tab to remove the light assembly.



Driver side

3. Turn the socket counter-clockwise to remove it, then remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.

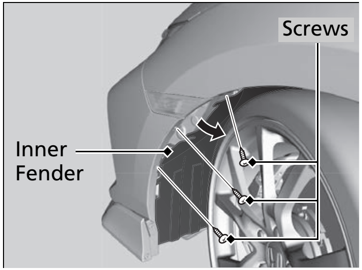
Continued



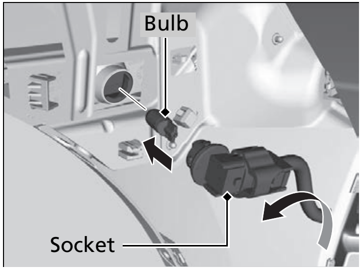
Passenger side

3. Turn the socket clockwise to remove it, then remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.

2.0 L engine models

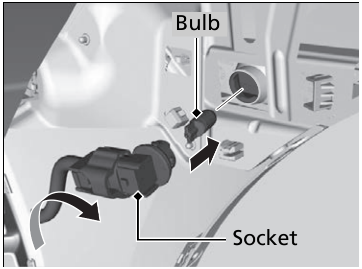


1. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the opposite side from the light being replaced.
   Passenger side: Turn the steering wheel to the left.
   Driver side: Turn the steering wheel to the right.
2. Remove the screws, then pull the inner fender back.



Driver side

3. Turn the socket counter-clockwise to remove it, then remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.



Passenger side

3. Turn the socket clockwise to remove it, then remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.

Parking/Daytime Running Lights

Parking/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights*

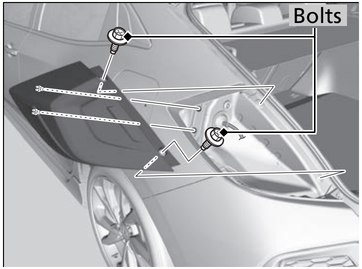
Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

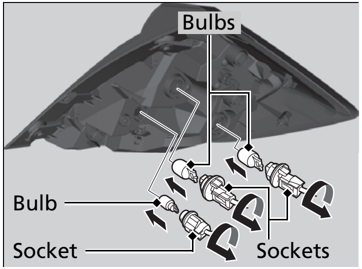
Brake Light, Rear Turn Signal Light and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light: 21 W
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Light: 16 W



1. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver or socket to remove the bolts.
2. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



3. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.
5. Slide the light assembly onto the guide on the body.
6. Align the pins with the body grommets, then push in until they fully seat.

Taillights/Rear Side Marker Lights

Taillights/rear side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Taillights

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear License Plate Light

Rear license plate light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

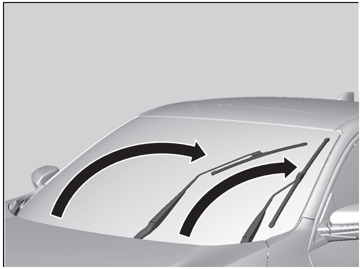
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

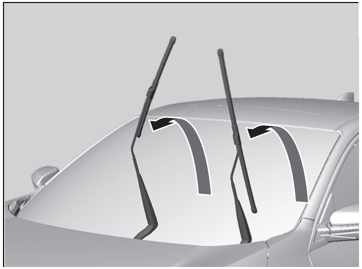
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK $\boxed{0}$[*1].
2. While holding the wiper switch in the **MIST** position, turn the ignition switch to ON $\boxed{II}$[*1], then to LOCK $\boxed{0}$[*1].
   - ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.



3. Lift both wiper arms.

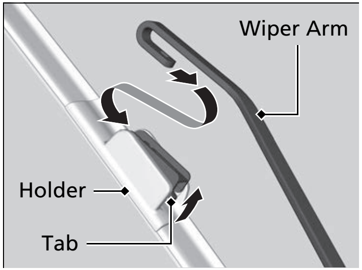
≫Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

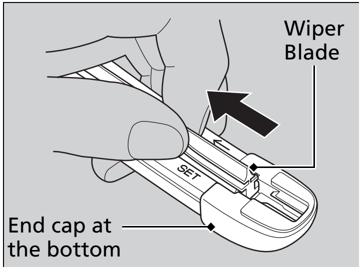
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.

---

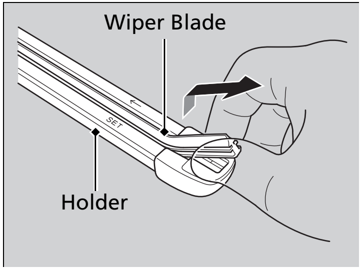
*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


Wiper Arm
Holder
Tab

4. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

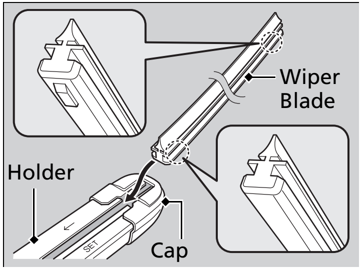

Wiper Blade
SET
End cap at the bottom

5. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.


Wiper Blade
SET
Holder

6. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.

Continued

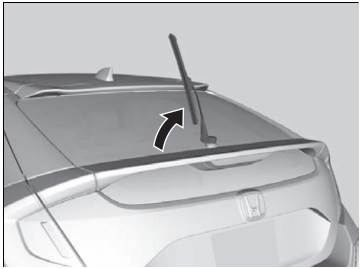


7. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
8. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
9. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
10. Lower both wiper arms.
11. Turn the ignition switch to ON (II)[*1] and hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position until both wiper arms return to the standard position.

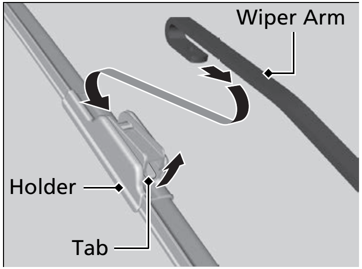
---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

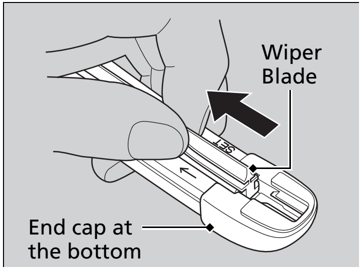
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber*



1. Raise the wiper arm off.


Wiper Arm
Holder
Tab

2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.


Wiper Blade
SET
End cap at the bottom

3. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.

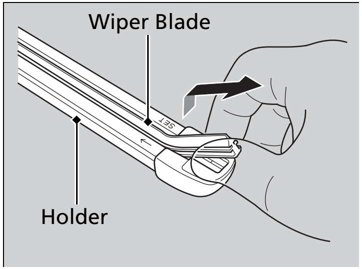
≫Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber*

NOTICE
Avoid dropping the wiper arm, it may damage the rear window.

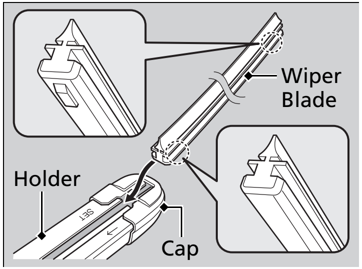
---

* Not available on all models

Continued


Wiper Blade
SET
Holder

4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of holder.


Wiper Blade
Holder
SET
Cap

5. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
6. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
7. Slide the wiper blade onto the wiper arm until it locks.
8. Lower the wiper arm.

Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specifications page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires, including the spare*. Even tires in good condition can lose 1–2 psi (10–20 kPa, 0.1–0.2 kgf/cm^2) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  - **Wear Indicators** P. 614
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

>Checking Tires

⚠WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm^2) higher than if checked when cold.

U.S. models

Whenever tire pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.
TPMS Calibration P. 483

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

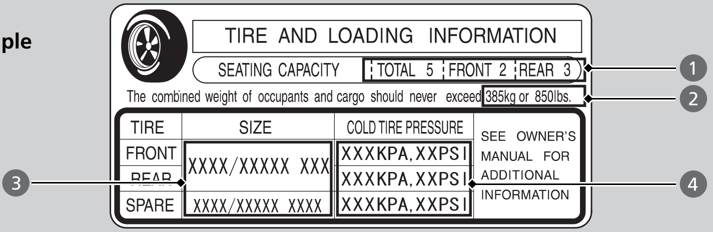
Check the spare tire* pressure once a month or before long trips.

* Not available on all models

Tire and Loading Information Label

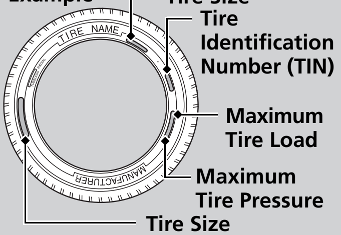
The label attached to the driver’s doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.

Label Example


TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
SEATING CAPACITY
TOTAL 5
FRONT 2
REAR 3
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 385kg or 850lbs.
TIRE
SIZE
COLD TIRE PRESSURE
FRONT
REAR
SPARE
XXXX/XXXXX XXX
XXXX/XXXXX XXXX
XXXKPA, XXPSI
XXXKPA, XXPSI
XXXKPA, XXPSI
SEE OWNER’S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
❶
❷
❸
❹

Tire Labeling

Example


Tire Size
Tire Identification Number (TIN)
Maximum Tire Load
Maximum Tire Pressure
Tire Size
TIRE NAME
MANUFACTURER

The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described as shown.

Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.

≫Tire and Loading Information Label

The tire and loading information label attached to the driver’s doorjamb contains:

❶ The number of people your vehicle can carry.
❷ The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
❸ The original tire sizes for front, rear, and spare.
❹ The proper cold tire pressure for front, rear, and spare.

≫Tire Sizes

Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P205/55 R16 89H

P: Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).
205: Tire width in millimeters.
55: Aspect ratio (the tire’s section height as a percentage of its width).
R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).
16: Rim diameter in inches.
89: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).
H: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

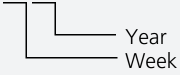
The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the example in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

Cold Tire Pressure – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).
Load Rating – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.
Maximum Inflation Pressure – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.
Maximum Load Rating – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.
Recommended Inflation Pressure – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.
Treadwear Indicators (TWI) – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

DOT B97R FW6X 2209
DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
B97R: Manufacturer's identification mark.
FW6X: Tire type code.
22 09: Date of manufacture.



DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

»Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For example:
Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

■ Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

■ Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

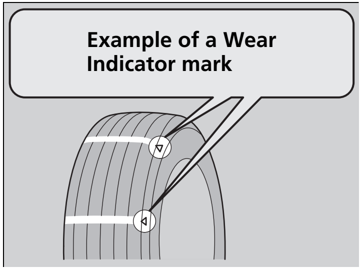
»Traction

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

»Temperature

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire. **Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires, including the spare*, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

≫Checking Tires

2.0 L engine models

High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 137 mph or 220 km/h), adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tire failure.

Tire Size 245/30ZR20 90Y	
Number of occupants	Pressure
1	Front: 41 psi (280 kPa, 2.9 kgf/cm^2) Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2)
2	
3	Front: 42 psi (290 kPa, 3.0 kgf/cm^2) Rear: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm^2)
4	

Models with FORGED engraved on the wheel

This vehicle is equipped with high grip tires.
Due to their focus on dry-grip performance, these tires have shallower tread grooves and wear faster than ordinary commercial tires.
Periodically check the tread depth.
Drive at a safe speed in the rain and on wet roads.

* Not available on all models

Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

≫Tire and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

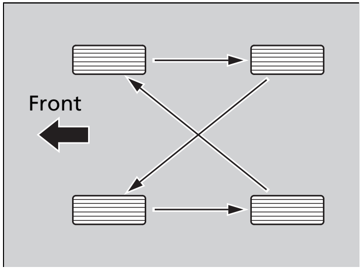
Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Tire Rotation

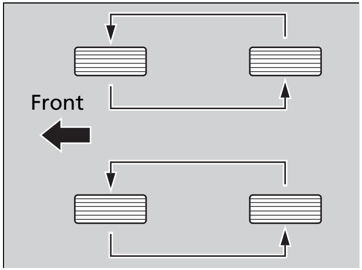
Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the driver information interface helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

■ Tires without rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

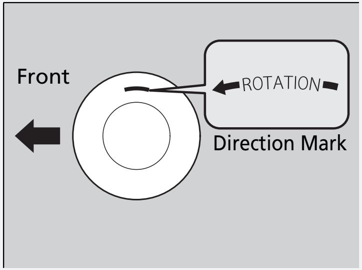
■ Tires with rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

⪢Tire Rotation

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



U.S. models

Whenever tires are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

TPMS Calibration P. 483

Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked **M+S** tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

>>Winter Tires

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer, high grip*1 or ultra high performance*2 tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

*1: Models with FORGED engraved on the wheel

*2: 2.0 L engine models without FORGED engraved on the wheel

Continued

For winter tires:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:

- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Models with 215/55R16 tires

Models with 215/50R17 tires

Cable-type: SCC Radial Chain SC1032

1.5 L engine models with 235/40R18 tires

Cable-type: SCC Radial Chain SC1034

2.0 L engine models with 235/40R18 tires

Cable-type: SCC AUTO TRUCK 0154705

Models with 245/30ZR20 tires*1

Not recommended to use any type of chains

*1: On 245/30ZR20 tires, you cannot install any type of tire chains. If you have to use tire chains, replace the original tires with the 235/40R18 tires.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

2.0 L engine models

Cold Weather Driving

Summer Only tires and High Grip tires*1 or Ultra High Performance (UHP) tires*2 are very sensitive to ambient temperatures and are designed to be used at temperatures above 45°F (7°C). If the vehicle is operated with Summer Only tires or UHP tires at temperatures below 45°F (7°C), the tires will provide decreasing amounts of grip and other performance attributes. If the vehicle is operated with Summer Only tires or UHP tires at temperatures below 20°F (–7°C)*1 or –4°F (–20°C)*2, the tire tread may lose their elasticity and become brittle, resulting in permanent damage to the tread. A damaged tire may fail during use. Therefore, if you operate the vehicle when ambient temperatures are below 45°F (7°C), we recommend that you install other tires (e.g., mud+snow, winter) that are designed to provide appropriate performance attributes under the anticipated conditions.

≫Cold Weather Driving

⚠WARNING

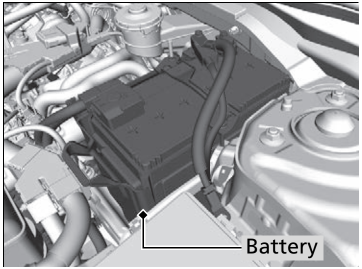
Use of Summer Only tires or Ultra High Performance tires at temperatures below 45°F (7°C) may lead to a loss of performance and control, which could result in a crash, serious injury or death.

---

*1: Models with FORGED engraved on the wheel

*2: Models without FORGED engraved on the wheel

Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
  - ➔ **Reactivating the audio system** P. 229
- The clock resets.
  - ➔ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 144
- Canadian models only
  The immobilizer system needs to be reset.
  - ➔ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 94

» Battery

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

WARNING: Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.
Wash your hands after handling.

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle’s electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

≫Battery

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire Pressure/TPMS* and Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) may come on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 after reconnecting a battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). Each indicator should go off. If none of them do, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

---

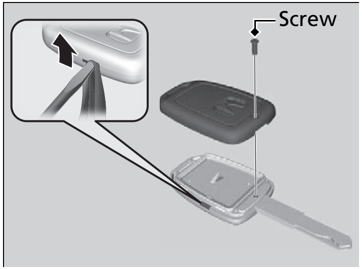
*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

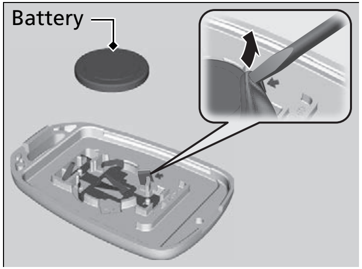
* Not available on all models

Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

■ Master Keys with Remote Transmitter*





Battery type: CR1620

1. Unscrew the cover with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.
2. Open the remote transmitter.
   - ▶ Wrap the small flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the transmitter.
3. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
4. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

≫Replacing the Button Battery

⚠WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

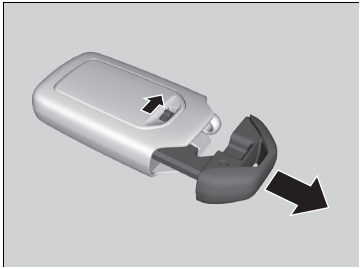
NOTICE
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

---

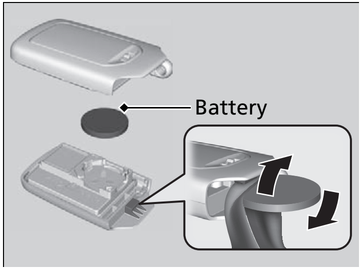
* Not available on all models

Smart Entry Remote*



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
   - ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the smart entry remote.
   - ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

---

* Not available on all models

Climate Control System Maintenance

Air Conditioning

To ensure proper and safe operation, the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE J2845) recommends that the refrigerant system only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

New replacement mobile air conditioning evaporators must be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.

Dust and Pollen Filter

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

≫Climate Control System Maintenance

NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

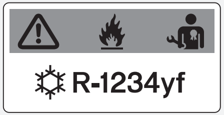
Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the hood:

➡ **Safety Labels** P. 80

➡ **Specifications** P. 684

Canadian models



⚠ : Caution

🔥 : Flammable Refrigerant

🧑‍🔧 : Requires Registered Technician to Service

❄ : Air Conditioning System

≫Dust and Pollen Filter

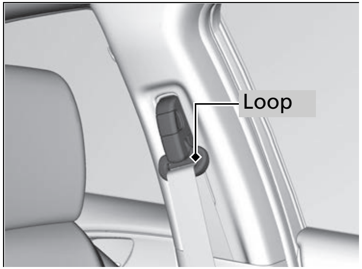
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact a dealer for replacement.

Interior Care

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



Continued

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

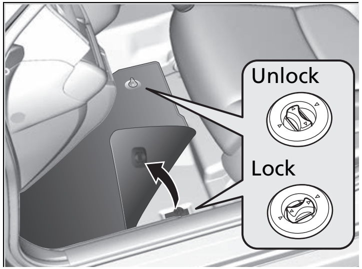
Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Floor Mats



The driver’s floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera and the rainfall/light sensor*.

- **Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)** P. 178
- **Automatic Intermittent Wipers*** P. 185
- **Front Sensor Camera** P. 546

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.
Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

* Not available on all models

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Alcantara® Care*

After having dusted the material, moisten a soft cloth with clean lukewarm water, wring it dry and blot gently to remove any dirt.

Once dry, lightly brush with a soft brush.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark colored clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discoloration or stains.

---

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

Using an Automated Car Wash

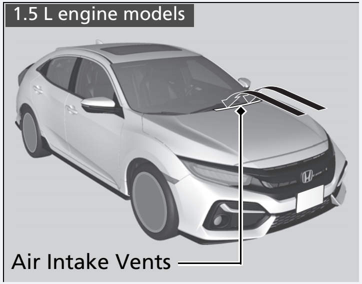
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

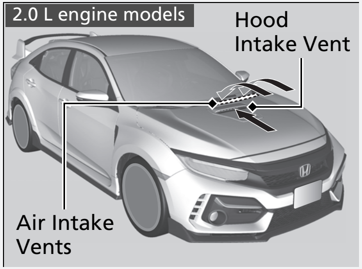
Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

≫Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake and hood intake* vents. It can cause a malfunction.





Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

* Not available on all models

Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining Aluminum Wheels

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminum alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Washing the Vehicle

If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windshield, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber P. 604

Do not spray water onto the capless unit when the fuel fill door is open. It can cause damage to the fuel system or engine.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

Continued

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside-lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle’s airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.

  ➔ **Fuses** P. 674
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

≫Accessories and Modifications

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle’s electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools

Types of Tools 634

If a Tire Goes Flat

Models with temporary tire repair kit
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire....... 635
Models with a compact spare tire
Changing a Flat Tire 648

Handling of the Jack*

Canadian models with temporary tire repair kit
How to Set Up the Jack.................... 656

Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine 659
Models with smart entry system
If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak ..660
Models with smart entry system
Emergency Engine Stop 661
If the Battery Is Dead 662
Shift Lever Does Not Move............. 665
Overheating 666

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On... 668
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On 668
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 669
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks 670
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On 671
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On......................... 672
If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks*...................... 673

Fuses

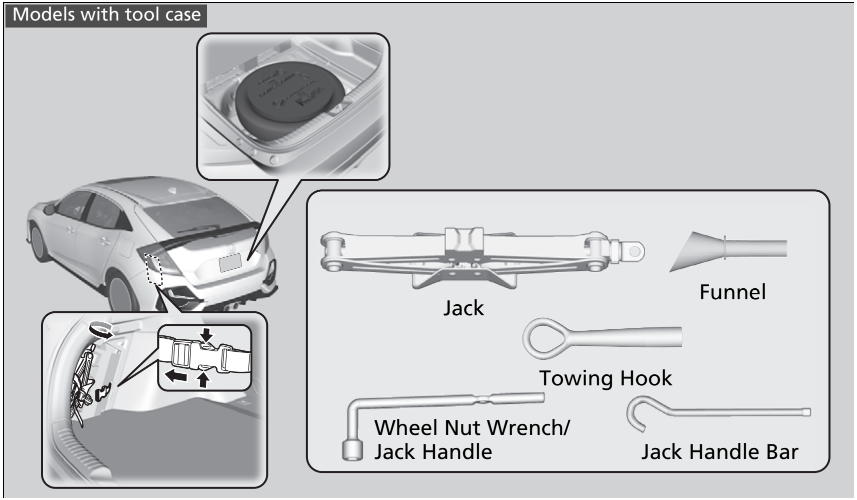
Fuse Locations 674
Inspecting and Changing Fuses........ 678
Emergency Towing.......................... 679
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door.. 680
If You Cannot Open the Hatch 681
Refueling.. 682

* Not available on all models

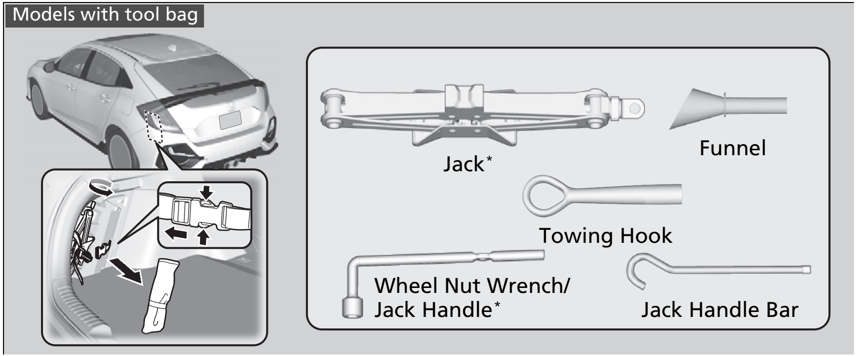
Tools

Types of Tools

Models with tool case


Jack
Funnel
Towing Hook
Wheel Nut Wrench/
Jack Handle
Jack Handle Bar

Models with tool bag


Jack*
Funnel
Towing Hook
Wheel Nut Wrench/
Jack Handle*
Jack Handle Bar

▶▶Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the cargo area.

---

* Not available on all models

Models with temporary tire repair kit

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

If the tire has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tire only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tire repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

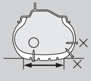
1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, and non-slippery surface, and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **R**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Continued

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

- The tire sealant has expired.
- More than one tire is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 3/16 inch (4 mm).
- The tire side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



When the puncture is:	Use Kit
Smaller than 3/16 inch (4 mm)	Yes
Larger than 3/16 inch (4 mm)	No

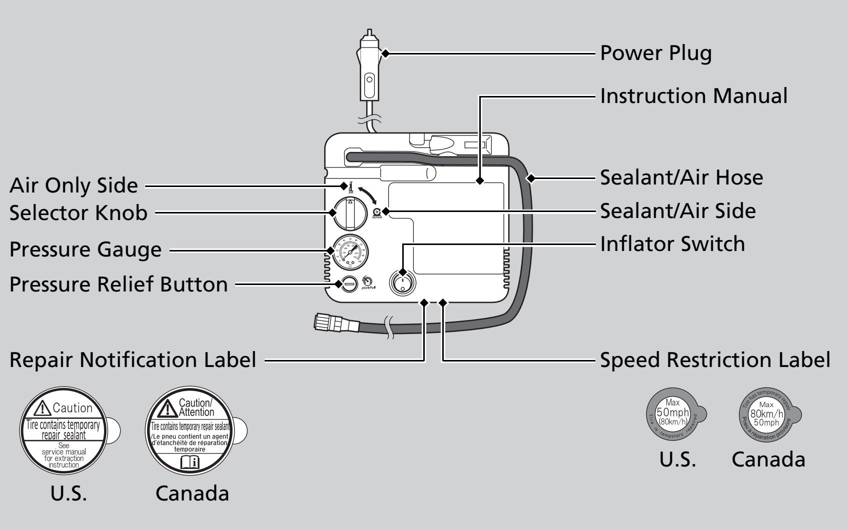
- Damage has been caused by driving with the tire extremely under inflated.
- The tire bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tire. If you remove it from the tire, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

NOTICE

Do not use a puncture-repairing agent other than the one provided in the kit that came with your vehicle. If a different agent is used, you may permanently damage the tire pressure sensor.

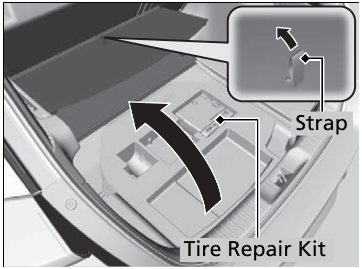
Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire


Power Plug
Instruction Manual
Air Only Side
Selector Knob
Sealant/Air Hose
Sealant/Air Side
Inflator Switch
Pressure Gauge
Pressure Relief Button
Repair Notification Label
Speed Restriction Label
Caution
Tire contains temporary repair sealant
See service manual for extraction instruction
U.S.
Caution/Attention
Tire contains temporary repair sealant/Le pneu contient un agent d'étanchéité de réparation temporaire
Canada
Max 50mph (80km/h)
Tire is temporary repaired
U.S.
Max 80km/h 50mph
Tire has temporary repair
Pneu à réparation provisoire
Canada

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire

Repair notification label and speed restriction label are applied to the side of temporary tire repair kit.

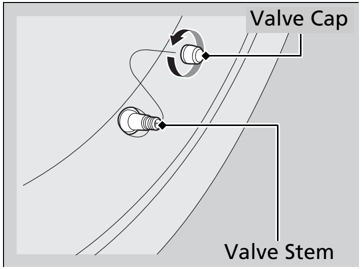
When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.



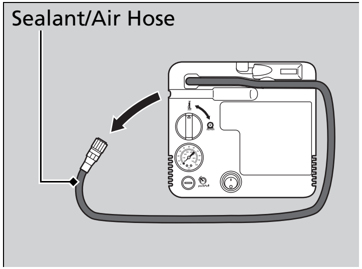
1. Pull the strap on the cargo area floor lid and open the lid.
2. Take the kit out of the case.
3. Place the kit face up, on flat ground near the flat tire, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

Continued

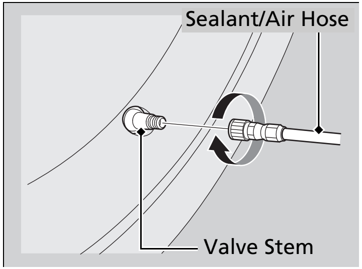
Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem.



2. Remove the sealant/air hose from the packaging.



3. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠CAUTION

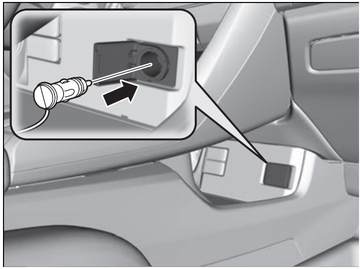
Tire sealant contains substances that are harmful if inhaled, ingested or if contact is made with the eyes or skin.

Always use in a well-ventilated area and use gloves and safety glasses for protection; do not ingest.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water; if ingested, rinse mouth with water. In all cases, seek medical attention if necessary.

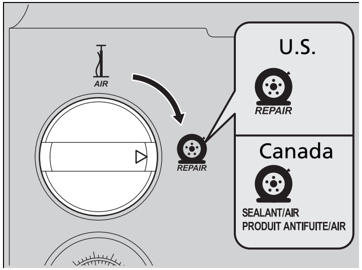
In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.



4. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
   - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

5. Start the engine.
   - ▶ Keep the engine running while injecting sealant and air.
     Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 79



6. Turn the selector knob to **REPAIR**[*1], **SEALANT/AIR**[*2], **PRODUIT ANTIFUITE/AIR**[*2].

Continued

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

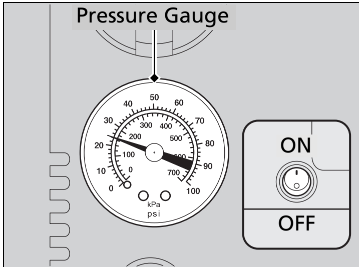
NOTICE

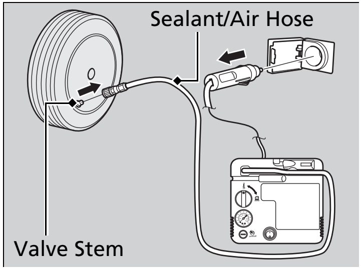
Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tire is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.

[*1] U.S. models

[*2] Canadian models





7. Press the inflator switch to turn on the kit.
   ▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tire.
   ▶ When the sealant injection is complete continue to add air.

8. After the air pressure reaches front: 35 psi (240 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (230 kPa), turn off the kit.
   ▶ To check the pressure, occasionally turn off the compressor and read the gauge.

9. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.

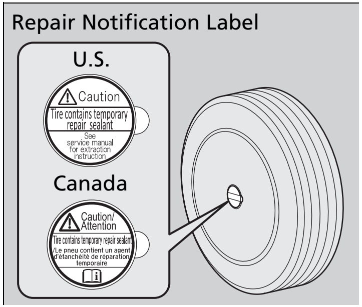
10. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

11. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns 0 psi (0 kPa).

≫Injecting Sealant and Air

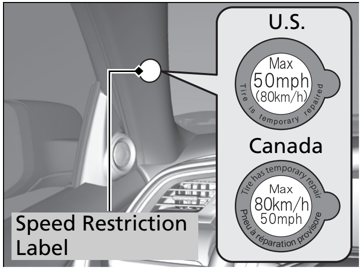
If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tire may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal, and your vehicle will need to be towed.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.


Repair Notification Label
U.S.
Caution
Tire contains temporary repair sealant
See service manual for extraction instruction
Canada
Caution/ Attention
Tire contains temporary repair sealant
/Le pneu contient un agent d'étanchéité de réparation temporaire

12. Apply the repair notification label to the flat surface of the wheel.
▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tire

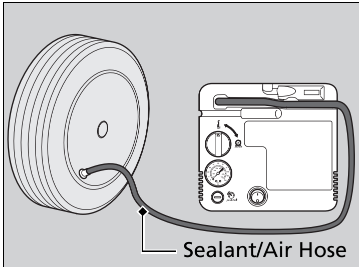

U.S.
Max
50mph
(80km/h)
Tire is temporary repaired
Canada
Tire has temporary repair
Max
80km/h
50mph
Pneu à réparation provisoire
Speed Restriction Label

1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.

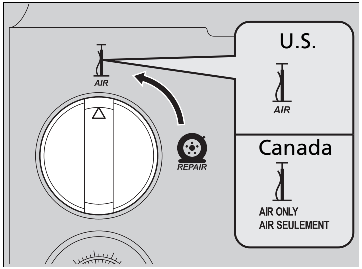
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
▶ Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

Continued



4. Recheck the air pressure using the sealant/ air hose on the compressor.



5. Turn the selector knob to **AIR***1, **AIR ONLY***2, **AIR SEULEMENT***2.

▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tire P. 645

6. If the air pressure is

- Less than 25 psi (175 kPa):

Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

Emergency Towing P. 679

- Front: 35 psi (240 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (230 kPa) or more:

Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station, whichever is sooner.

Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). If you have not reached a service station, stop and check the tire pressure.

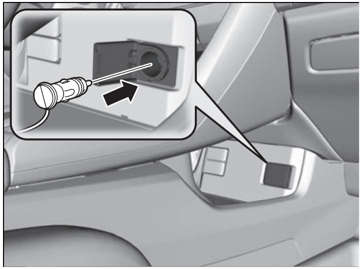
▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minutes of driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.

---

*1: U.S. models

*2: Canadian models

Continued



- Greater than 25 psi (175 kPa), but less than front: 35 psi (240 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (230 kPa):

Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tire until the tire pressure reaches front: 35 psi (240 kPa)/rear: 33 psi (230 kPa).

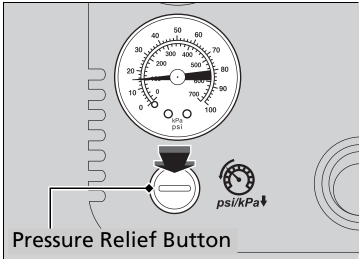
2 **Inflating an Under-inflated Tire** P. 645

Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station, whichever is sooner.

Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). If you have not reached a service station, stop and check the tire pressure.

▶ You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

7. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
8. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tire valve stem.
   Reinstall the valve cap.
9. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).
10. Repackage and properly stow the kit.



»Distributing the Sealant in the Tire

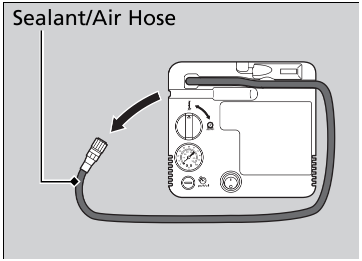
⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

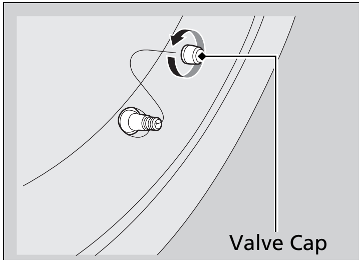
Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tire

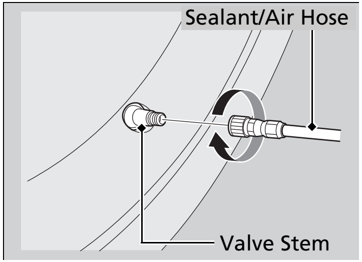
You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured, under-inflated tire.



1. Open the cargo area floor lid.
   ➡ **Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire** P. 636
2. Remove the kit from the case.
3. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tire, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
4. Remove the sealant/air hose from the kit.



5. Remove the valve cap.



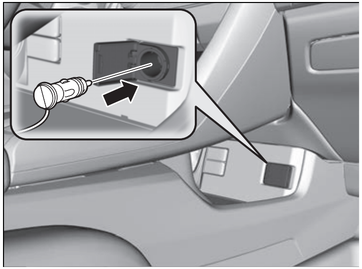
6. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

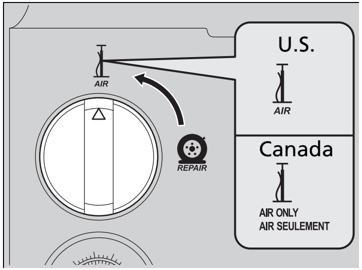
Continued

≫Inflating an Under-inflated Tire

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.





7. Plug in the kit to the accessory power socket.
   - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
8. Start the engine.
   - ▶ Keep the engine running while injecting air.
     - **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 79
9. Turn the selector knob to **AIR**[*1], **AIR ONLY**[*2], **AIR SEULEMENT**[*2].
10. Press the inflator switch to turn on the kit.
    - ▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tire.
11. Inflate the tire to the specified air pressure.

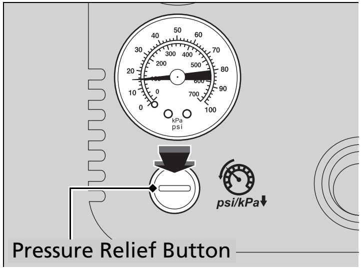
≫Inflating an Under-inflated Tire

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

*1: U.S. models
*2: Canadian models



12. Turn off the kit.
  ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
  ▶ If overinflated, press the pressure relief button.

13. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.

14. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

15. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).

16. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Models with a compact spare tire

Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tire with a compact spare tire. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tire repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Put the transmission into P.

Manual transmission models

2. Put the transmission into R.

All models

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0[*1].

⯈⯈Changing a Flat Tire

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tire pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm^2)

When driving with the compact spare tire, keep the vehicle speed under 50 mph (80 km/h). Replace with a full-size tire as soon as possible.

The compact spare tire and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tire or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tire chains on a compact spare tire.
If a chain-mounted front tire goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tires and replace it with the compact spare tire. Remove the flat front tire and replace it with the full-size tire that was removed from the rear. Mount the tire chains on the front tire.

NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn’t work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

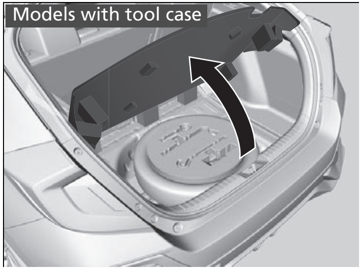
The subwoofer*, a large black enclosure, is located on the rear right side. Do not store anything in this area. Doing so may compromise vehicle audio performance.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

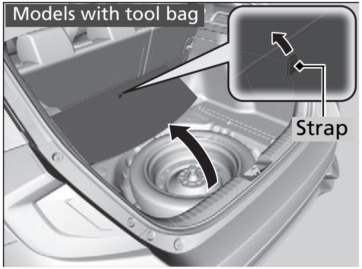
* Not available on all models

Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tire


Models with tool case

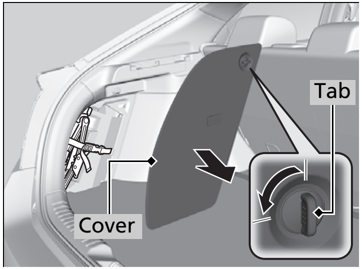
Models with tool case

1. Open the cargo area floor lid.


Models with tool bag
Strap

Models with tool bag

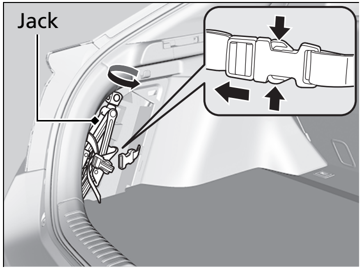
1. Pull the strap on the cargo area floor lid and open the lid.



All models

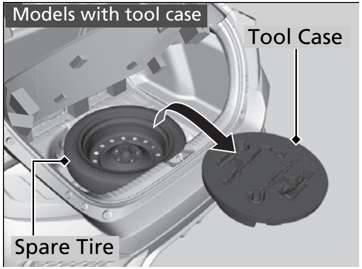
2. Turn and pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the left side of the cargo area.

Continued



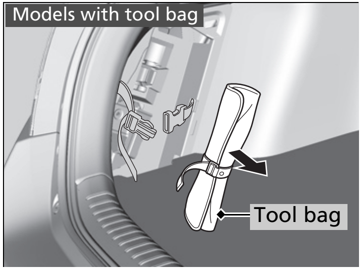
3. Turn the jack's end bracket to loosen it, then remove it.

Models with tool case


Models with tool case
Tool Case
Spare Tire

4. Take the tool case out of the cargo area. Take the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.

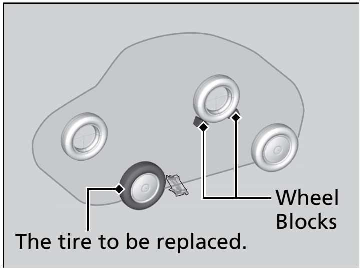
Models with tool bag


Models with tool bag
Tool bag

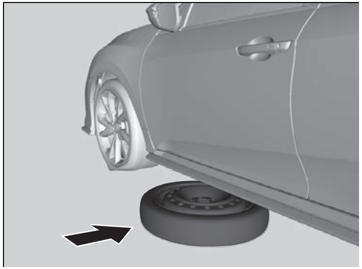
4. Take the tool bag out of the compartment. Take the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench out of the tool bag.

All models

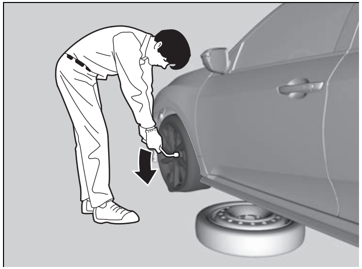
5. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tire.



6. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tire.



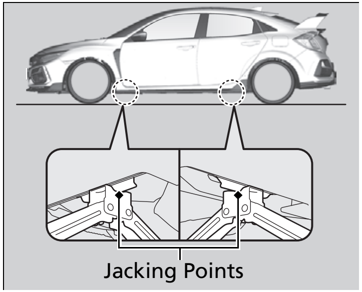
7. Place the compact spare tire (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tire that needs to be replaced.



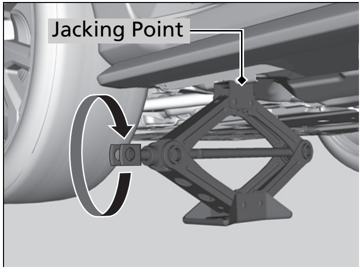
8. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

Continued

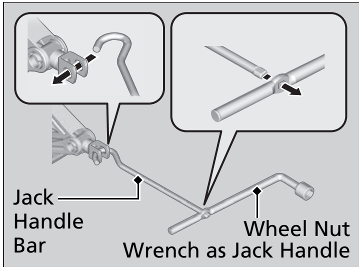
How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.



2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
   ▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

≫How to Set Up the Jack

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

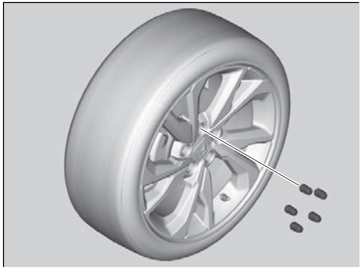
Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

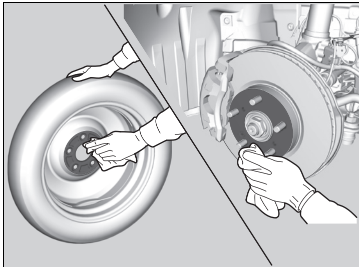
Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight (“load”) or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

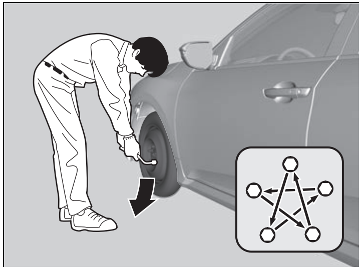
Replacing the Flat Tire



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tire.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the compact spare tire.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

   Wheel nut torque:

   1.5 L engine models

   80 lbf·ft (108 N·m, 11 kgf·m)

   2.0 L engine models

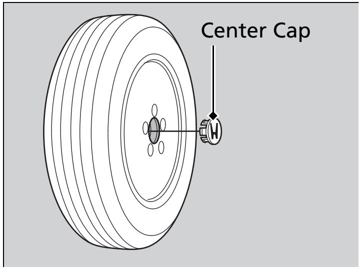
   94 lbf·ft (127 N·m, 13 kgf·m)

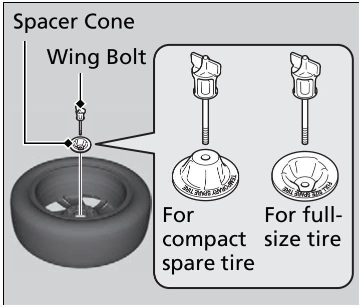
Continued

»Replacing the Flat Tire

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Storing the Flat Tire




Spacer Cone
Wing Bolt
TEMPORARY SPARE TIRE
FULL SIZE SPARE TIRE
For compact spare tire
For full-size tire

1. Remove the center cap.
2. Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.
3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tire with the wing bolt.
4. Store the jack in the compartment on the left side. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place.

Models with tool case

5. Securely put the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case. Store the case in the cargo area.

Models with tool bag

5. Securely put the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench back in the tool bag. Store the bag in the compartment.

≫Storing the Flat Tire

⚠WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

■ TPMS and the Compact Spare Tire*

If you replace a flat tire with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few miles (kilometers), **Tire Pressures Monitor Problem** will appear on the driver information interface and the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on; however, this is normal and is no cause for concern.

Calibrate the TPMS when you replace the tire with a specified regular tire.

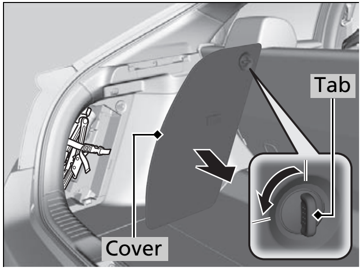
➔ **TPMS Calibration** P. 483

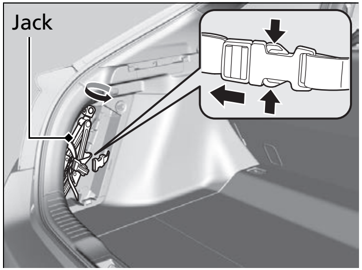
---

* Not available on all models

Handling of the Jack*

How to Set Up the Jack





1. Turn and pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the left side of the cargo area.
2. Turn the jack's end bracket to loosen it, then remove it.

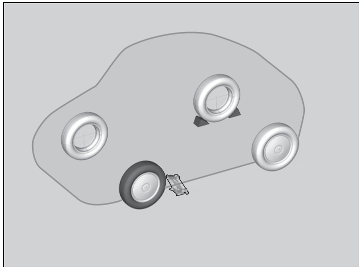
⯈How to Set Up the Jack

⚠WARNING

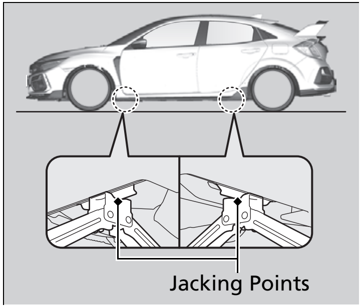
The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

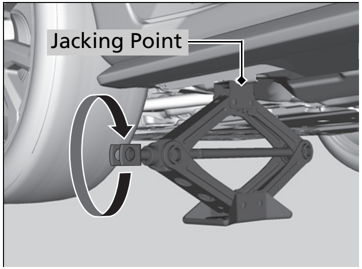
* Not available on all models



3. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tire.



4. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.



5. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

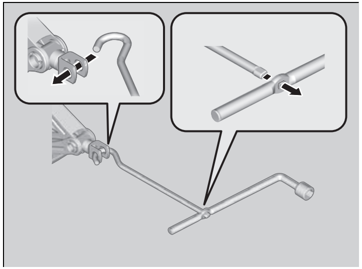
»How to Set Up the Jack

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight (“load”) or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Continued



6. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

▶▶Checking the Engine

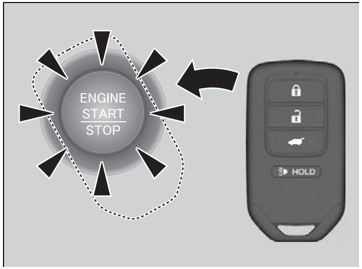
If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.
➔ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 662

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	Models with smart entry system **Check for a message on the driver information interface.** • If the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears ➔ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 660 ▶Make sure the smart entry remote is in its operating range. ➔ **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 172
	Check the brightness of the interior lights. Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness. • If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all ➔ **Battery** P. 620 • If the interior lights come on normally ➔ **Fuses** P. 674
The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Review the engine start procedure.** Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➔ **Starting the Engine** P. 451
	Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ➔ **Immobilizer System** P. 163
	Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➔ **Fuel Gauge** P. 122
	Check the fuse. Check all fuses, or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 678
	If the problem continues: ➔ **Emergency Towing** P. 679

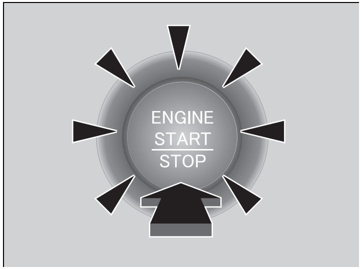
Models with smart entry system

If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface, and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows:



1. Touch the center of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the smart entry remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the smart entry remote should be facing you.
   ▶ The indicator flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal (continuously variable transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
   ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Models with smart entry system

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button about for two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place. With manual transmission models you can also downshift the transmission to utilize engine braking.

Continuously variable transmission models

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Canadian continuously variable transmission models

Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

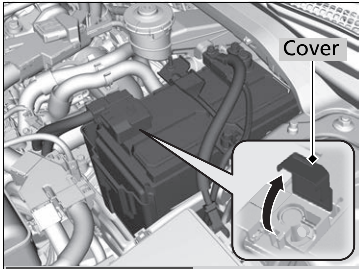
»Emergency Engine Stop

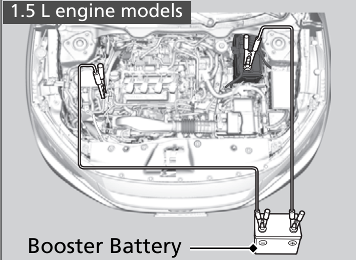
Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.
If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

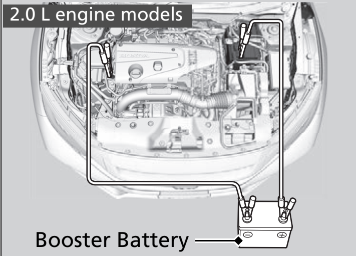
Jump Starting Procedure

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the hood.







1. Open the cover on your vehicle's battery positive ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
   - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
   - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

≫If the Battery Is Dead

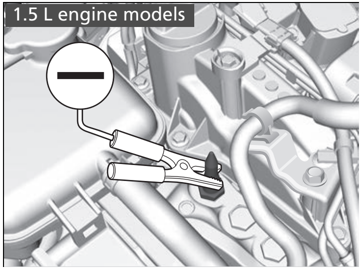
⚠WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

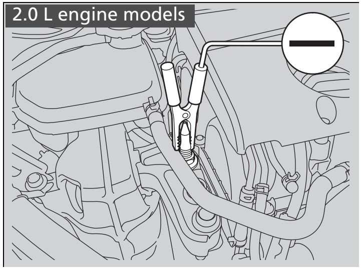
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

1.5 L engine models



2.0 L engine models



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.

6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.

7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

>If the Battery Is Dead

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

Continued

What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

≫What to Do After the Engine Starts

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire Pressure/TPMS* and Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) may come on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 after reconnecting a battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

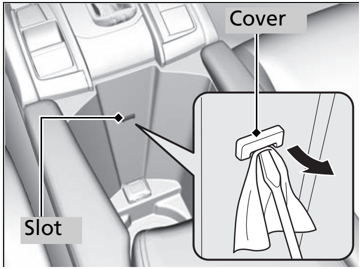
* Not available on all models

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Continuously variable transmission models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.

Models without smart entry system

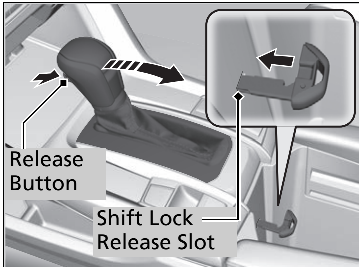
2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

2. Remove the built-in key from the smart entry remote.

All models

3. Move the removable beverage holder tray rearward.
   - **Front seat beverage holders** P. 205
4. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover of the shift lock release slot. Put the tip of the flat-tip screwdriver into the slot and remove it as shown in the image.
5. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
6. While pushing the key in, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.
   - ▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge pointer is at the H mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- The **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
   - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the hood.
   - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the hood.

»How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

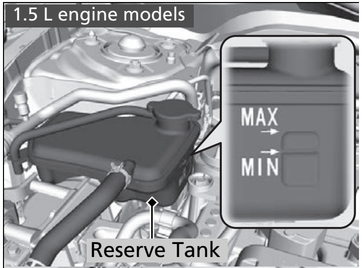
NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge pointer at the H mark may damage the engine.

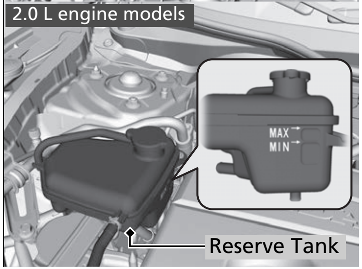
Continuing to drive with the **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do

1.5 L engine models



2.0 L engine models



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message on the driver information interface goes off.
   - ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   - ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   - ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge pointer has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

≫How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the indicator comes on**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the hood and check the oil level.
   ➔ **Oil Check** P. 583
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.
   ▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
   ▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

»If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

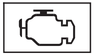
■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Turn off the climate control system, rear defogger, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

»If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

≫If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

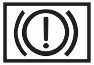
If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 31 mph (50 km/h) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

U.S.

BRAKE

Canada



(Red)

■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ Reason for the indicator to blink

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

≫If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➔ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 671

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.
It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

U.S.
BRAKE
Canada
((!))
(Red)

U.S.
BRAKE SYSTEM
Canada
((!))
(Amber)

■ If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically.

Parking Brake P. 549

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  - ▶ Preventing the vehicle from moving

    Continuously variable transmission models

    Put the transmission into P.

    Manual transmission models

    Put the transmission into 1 or R.
- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the Parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

■Reasons for the indicator to come on

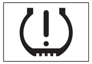
- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks*



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tire pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on. If the compact spare tire* is installed, the indicator will either come on or it will first blink for about one minute, then stays on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after the tire pressure is adjusted.

If the compact spare tire* causes the indicator to come on, change the tire to a full-size tire. The indicator goes off after calibrating the TPMS.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tire* causes the indicator to first blink, and then stays on, change the tire to a full- size tire. The indicator goes off after calibrating the TPMS.

》If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks*

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.

---

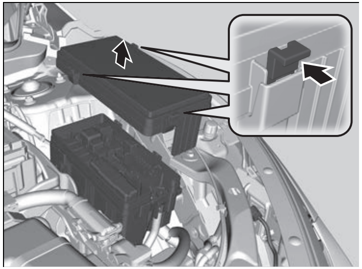
* Not available on all models

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK $\boxed{0}$[*1], and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.
Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

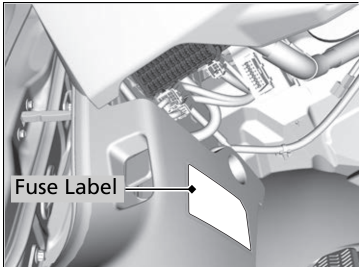
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Option Block 1*	(60 A)
	–	–
	Cooling Fan	50 A*4 30 A*5
	Audio AMP*	(30 A)
	IG Main 2*1	(30 A)
	Headlight High Beam Main	30 A
	Battery	125 A
2	EPS	70 A
	IG Main 1	30 A*1 50 A*2
	Fuse Box Option*	(40 A)
	Fuse Box 1	60 A
	Front Wiper Motor	30 A
	Headlight Low Beam Main	30 A
3	Rear Defroster	40 A
	Starter Motor	(30 A)
	Fuse Box 2	40 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	Blower Motor	40 A
4	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
5	Cooling Fan*4	(5 A)
6	Washer	15 A
7	FI Main	15 A*4 20 A*5
8	Stop Lights	10 A
9	FI Sub	15 A
10	Injector*4	(15 A)
	Sub Fan Motor*5	20 A
11	LAF	5 A
12	FI ECU	10 A
13	Hazard	15 A
14	Rear Heated Seat*	(15 A)
15	IG Coil	15 A
16	Transmission*3	(15 A)
17	Daytime Running Lights	(10 A)
18	Back Up	10 A
19	Audio	(15 A)
20	Parking Lights	10 A
21	Interior Lights	10 A
22	Front Fog Lights*	(15 A)
23	A/C Compressor	10 A
24	Horn	10 A
25	–	–
26	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
27	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
28	–	–
29	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
31	Passenger's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
32	Passenger's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
	Adaptive Damper System*5	(15 A)
33	VB ACT	(5 A)

*1:Models with smart entry system
*2:Models without smart entry system
*3:Continuously variable transmission models
*4:1.5 L engine models
*5:2.0 L engine models

* Not available on all models

Interior Fuse Box

Located under the driver’s side dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

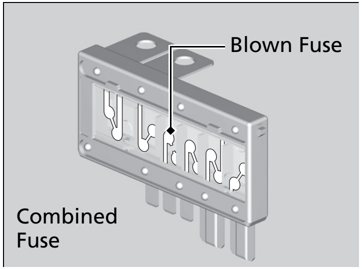
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

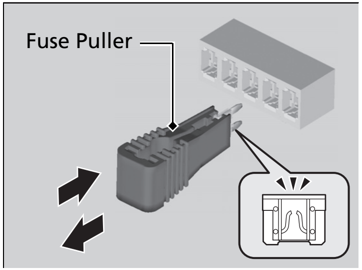
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	10 A
2	Key Lock	(5 A)
3	Rear Wiper Motor*	(10 A)
4	Front Sensor Camera*1, * Transmission*2, *3	(5 A) (10 A)
5	Option	(10 A)
6	SRS Indicator	(10 A)
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A*4 20 A*5
9	AIRCON	10 A
10	–	–
11	Engine Control*4	5 A
12	Passenger’s Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Driver’s Side Rear Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Driver’s Side Power Window	(20 A)
15	Front Passenger’s Side Power Window	20 A
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	Transmission*1, *3 Front Sensor Camera*2, *	(10 A) (5 A)
18	–	–
19	Moonroof	(20 A)
20	–	–
21	ACG	10 A
22	Daytime Running Lights	(10 A)
23	–	–
24	Front Sensor Camera*	(5 A)
25	Driver’s Door Lock	(10 A)
26	Passenger’s Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Passenger’s Side Power Window	(20 A)
28	Driver’s Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30	Smart Entry*1 STS*2	(10 A) (5 A)
31	Driver’s Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
32	Front Seat Heater*	(20 A)
33	Driver’s Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
34	VSA/ABS	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	–	–
37	Option	(10 A)
38	Driver’s Side Rear Door Lock	10 A
39	Driver’s Door Unlock	(10 A)

*1:Models with smart entry system
*2:Models without smart entry system
*3:Continuously variable transmission models
*4:1.5 L engine models
*5:2.0 L engine models

* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses





1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0[*1]. Turn headlights and all accessories off.

2. Remove the fuse box cover.

3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.

4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

≫Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

Fuse Locations P. 674

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Emergency Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

≫Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle’s weight.

NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain.
It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

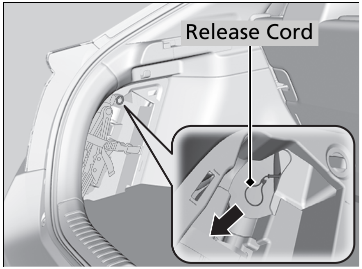
Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flat bed equipment.

➲ **Parking Brake** P. 549

If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



1. Open the hatch.

Models with tool case

2. Open the cargo floor lid.

Models with tool bag

2. Pull the strap on the cargo area floor lid and open the lid.

All models

3. Turn and pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the left side of the cargo area.

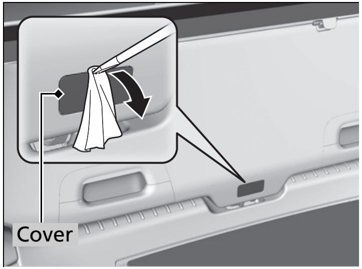
4. Pull the release cord toward you.
   - ▶ The release cord unlocks the fuel fill door when it is pulled.

≫If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

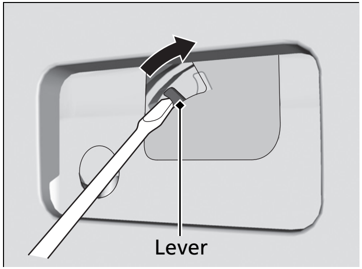
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Hatch

If you cannot open the hatch, use the following procedure.



1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the hatch.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. To open the hatch, push the hatch while sliding the lever with the flat-tip screwdriver.

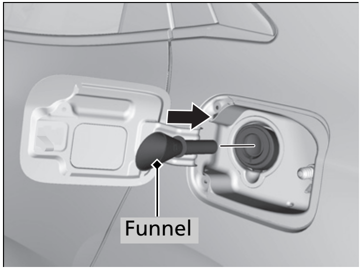
≫If You Cannot Open the Hatch

Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

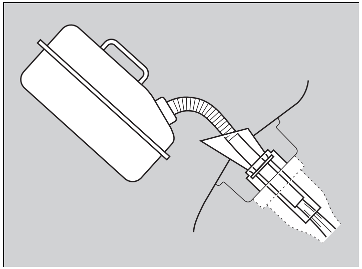
When you open the hatch from inside, make sure there is enough space around the hatch, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

If you have run out of fuel and need to refuel your vehicle from a portable fuel container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.



1. Turn off the engine.
2. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
   ▶ The fuel fill door opens.
3. Take the funnel out of the cargo area.
   ➔ **Types of Tools** P. 634
4. Place the end of the funnel on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
   ▶ Make sure that the end of the funnel goes down along with the filler pipe.



5. Fill the tank with fuel from the portable fuel container.
   ▶ Pour fuel carefully so you do not spill any.
6. Remove the funnel from the filler neck.
   ▶ Wipe up any fuel from the funnel before storing it.
7. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

≫Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

⚠WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

NOTICE

Do not insert the nozzle of a portable fuel container or any funnel other than the one provided with your vehicle. Doing so can damage the fuel system.
Do not try to pry open or push open the sealed fuel tank with foreign objects. This can damage the fuel system and its seal.

Make sure the fuel in the portable fuel container is gasoline before you refuel.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications 684
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number 686
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 687
Reporting Safety Defects 688
Emissions Testing
Testing of Readiness Codes.............. 689
Warranty Coverages 692
Authorized Manuals......................... 695
Customer Service Information......... 696

Specifications

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	Civic[*1] Civic TYPE R[*2]
No. of Passengers:	
Front	2
Rear	3[*1] 2[*2]
Total	5[*1] 4[*2]
Weights:	
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb

*1: 1.5 L engine models
*2: 2.0 L engine models

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	13.2 – 15.0 oz (375 – 425 g)
Lubricant Type	RL85HM (POE)
Quantity	4.70 – 6.28 cu-in (77 – 103 ml)

■ Engine Specifications

Displacement	91.38 cu-in (1,498 cm^3)[*1] 121.76 cu-in (1,996 cm^3)[*2]	
Spark Plugs	NGK	ILZKAR8H8S

*1: 1.5 L engine models
*2: 2.0 L engine models

■ Fuel

Type	Unleaded gasoline, Pump octane number of 87 or higher[*1]
	Unleaded premium gasoline, Pump octane number of 91 or higher[*2]
Fuel Tank Capacity	12.39 US gal (46.9 L)

*1: Models without 18 or 20 inch wheels
*2: Models with 18 or 20 inch wheels

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	U.S.:	2.6 US qt (2.5 L)[*1] 3.2 US qt (3.0 L)[*2]
	Canada:	4.8 US qt (4.5 L)[*1] 3.2 US qt (3.0 L)[*2]

*1: 1.5 L engine models
*2: 2.0 L engine models

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55 W (H11)[*1] LED[*2]
Headlights (High Beam)	60 W (HB3)[*1] LED[*2]
Fog Lights*	35 W (H8)[*3] LED[*4]
Parking/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Side Marker Lights	3 W
Front Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)[*1] LED[*2]
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*	LED
Brake Lights	21 W
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Taillights/Rear Side Marker Lights	LED
Back-Up Lights	16 W
Taillights	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear License Plate Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map Lights	8 W
Ceiling Light	8 W
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2 W
Center Pocket Lights*	LED
Glove Box Light	3.4 W
Cargo Area Light	5 W

*1: Models with halogen headlights
*2: Models with LED headlights
*3: Models with halogen fog lights
*4: Models with LED fog lights

* Not available on all models

Brake/Clutch* Fluid

Specified	Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid*

Specified	Honda HCF-2	
Capacity	Change	3.9 US qt (3.7 L)

Manual Transmission Fluid*

Specified	Honda MTF	
Capacity	Change	2.0 US qt (1.9 L)[*1] 2.3 US qt (2.2 L)[*2]

*1: 1.5 L engine models
*2: 2.0 L engine models

Engine Oil

Recommended	·Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ·API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil	
Capacity	Change	3.4 US qt (3.2 L)[*1] 5.3 US qt (5.0 L)[*2]
	Change including filter	3.7 US qt (3.5 L)[*1] 5.7 US qt (5.4 L)[*2]

*1: 1.5 L engine models
*2: 2.0 L engine models

Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	**1.5 L engine models** 1.30 US gal (4.92 L)[*1] (change including the remaining 0.15 US gal (0.58 L) in the reserve tank) 1.28 US gal (4.84 L)[*2] (change including the remaining 0.15 US gal (0.58 L) in the reserve tank) **2.0 L engine models** 1.26 US gal (4.64 L) (change including the remaining 0.20 US gal (0.75 L) in the reserve tank)

*1: Models with continuously variable transmission
*2: Models with manual transmission

Tire

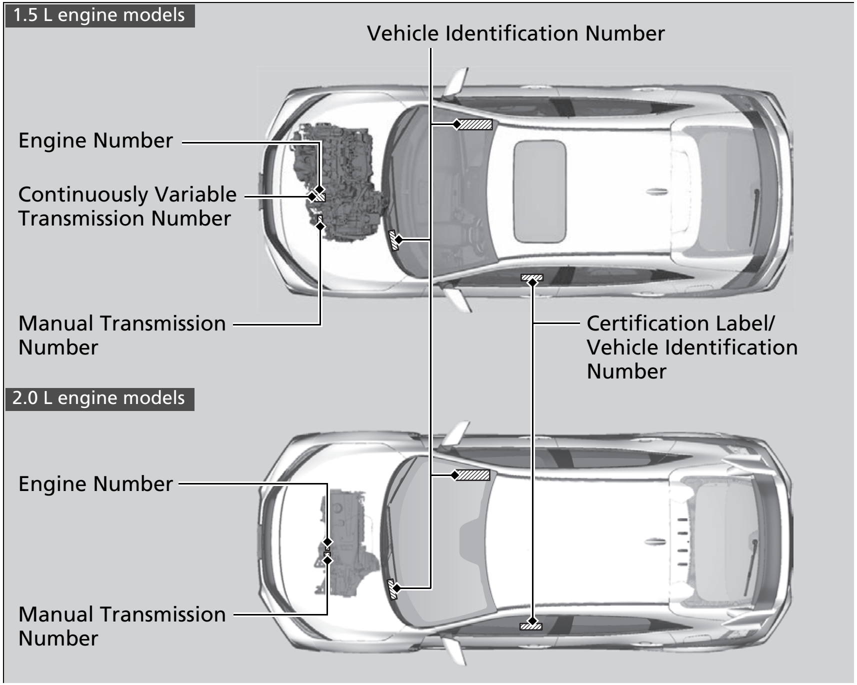
Regular	Size		215/55R16 93H[*1] 215/50R17 91H[*2] 235/40R18 91W[*3] 235/40R18 95Y[*4] 245/30ZR20 90Y[*5]
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm^2])	Front	32 (220 [2.2])[*1, *2] 35 (240 [2.4])[*3, *4, *5]
		Rear	32 (220 [2.2])[*1, *2] 33 (230 [2.3])[*3, *4, *5]
Compact Spare	Size		T125/80D16 97M[*1, *2] T125/70D17 98M[*3] T125/70R18 99M[*6]
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm^2])		60 (420 [4.2])
Wheel Size	Regular		16 x 7J[*1] 17 x 7J[*2] 18 x 8J[*3, *4] 20 x 8 1/2J[*5]
	Compact Spare		16 x 4T[*1, *2] 17 x 4T[*3] 18 x 4T[*6]

*1: Models with 16 inch wheel
*2: Models with 17 inch wheel
*3: 1.5 L engine models with 18 inch wheel
*4: 2.0 L engine models with 18 inch wheel
*5: Models with 20 inch wheel
*6: 2.0 L engine models with optional compact spare tire

* Not available on all models

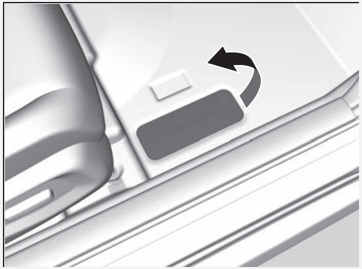
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, and transmission number are shown as follows.


1.5 L engine models
Vehicle Identification Number
Engine Number
Continuously Variable Transmission Number
Manual Transmission Number
Certification Label/ Vehicle Identification Number
2.0 L engine models
Engine Number
Manual Transmission Number

»Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



Devices that Emit Radio Waves

Each radio frequency device installed in the vehicle conforms to the requirements and standards of the regulation listed below:

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

In the U.S.
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

In Canada
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada’s Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to *http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety*.

Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle has readiness code as part of the onboard self diagnostic system. Some states use these codes for testing to verify whether your vehicle’s emissions components are working properly.
The codes may not be read properly if testing is performed just after the battery has gone dead or been disconnected.

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to ON [II]*1, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for several seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested before the readiness codes are ready, prepare the vehicle for retesting by doing the following:

1.5 L engine models

1. Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
2. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 6 hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
4. Start the engine without touching the accelerator pedal, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in [P] (continuously variable transmission) or [N] (manual transmission). Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there for about 3 minutes.
6. Let the engine idle with your foot off the accelerator for 20 seconds.

>>Testing of Readiness Codes

The readiness codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.

---

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

7. Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D (continuously variable transmission) or 5th (manual). Do not use cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
8. Drive in city or suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
9. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 30 minutes.

2.0 L engine models

1. Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
2. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 6 hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
4. Start the engine without touching the accelerator pedal, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in N. Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there for about 3 minutes.
6. Let the engine idle with your foot off the accelerator for 20 seconds.
7. Drive in city or suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

8. Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in 5th gear without using cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds). While the vehicle is traveling in this speed range, shift to 6th gear and then accelerate and decelerate 5 times, each time making sure you do not exceed 60 mph (97 km/h).
9. Park the vehicle and let the engine idle for 1 minute without using the accelerator pedal.
10. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 30 minutes.

Warranty Coverages

■U.S. Owners

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty – these two warranties cover your vehicle’s emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty – all exterior body panels are covered against rusting from the inside out for the specified time period, regardless of mileage.

Accessory Limited Warranty – Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty – covers all Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Replacement Battery Limited Warranty – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle’s original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

■ Statement on Warranty Coverage for Aftermarket and Recycled Parts

The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. s.2301 et seq., makes it illegal for motor vehicle manufacturers to void a motor vehicle warranty or deny warranty coverage solely because an aftermarket or recycled part has been used to repair the vehicle or someone other than the authorized service provider performed service on the vehicle. This provision does not apply to a new motor vehicle purchased solely for commercial or industrial use.

Continued

Under federal law, a manufacturer may deny warranty coverage and charge for repairs to a vehicle if it is discovered that an aftermarket or recycled part installed on the vehicle is defective or was installed incorrectly and caused damage to another part of the vehicle otherwise covered under warranty. The Federal Trade Commission requires that a manufacturer demonstrate that an aftermarket or recycled part or service performed by a person other than an authorized service provider caused damage to another part of the vehicle otherwise covered under warranty before denying warranty coverage. Additionally, federal law allows a manufacturer to void a motor vehicle warranty or deny warranty coverage if the manufacturer provides the article or service to consumers free of charge under the warranty or the manufacturer has secured a waiver from the Federal Trade Commission.

■ Canadian Owners

Please refer to the warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

■ EPA Contact Information

An owner may obtain further information concerning emission warranties or report violations of the terms of the emission warranties by contacting:

Director,
Light-Duty Vehicle Center,
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency,
Attention: Warranty Claim
2000 Traverwood Drive,
Ann Arbor, MI 48105;
complianceinfo@epa.gov

Authorized Manuals

■ Service Express

For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit *www.techinfo.honda.com* for pricing and options.

■ For U.S. Owners

Manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at 1 (800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at *www.helminc.com*.

■ For Canadian Owners

Please contact a dealer to order any manuals that you may require.

Customer Service Information

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals who should be able to deal with any problems you may encounter with your vehicle. If, however, you are faced with a problem that they cannot resolve to your satisfaction, contact Honda Customer Services.

U.S. Owners
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Honda Automobile Customer Services
Mail Stop 100-5E-8A
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746
Tel: 1 (800) 999-1009

Canadian Owners
Honda Canada Inc.
Customer Relations
180 Honda Boulevard
Markham, ON
L6C 0H9
Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9
Fax: 1-877-939-0909
E-mail: Honda_cr@ch.honda.com

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816
Tel: 1 (787) 620-7546

Customer Service Information

When you call or write, please give us the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number
  - **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number** P. 686
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

Disclaimer of Pandora®*

Requirements to access Pandora®

- Latest version of the Pandora app installed on your Android, Blackberry, or iPhone.
- Registered Pandora account (you can create a free account at *www.pandora.com <http://www.pandora.com/>* or on your smartphone)
- Connection to the internet via Wi-Fi or cellular data network.

Limitations

- Access to Pandora requires an active internet connection
- Ability to access Pandora through this system is subject to change without notice
- Certain functionality of Pandora service is not available when accessing the service through this system including, but not limited to, creating new stations, deleting stations, emailing current stations, buying tracks, viewing additional text information, logging in to Pandora, and adjusting Cell Network Audio Quality. Pandora internet radio is a music service not affiliated with HONDA. More information is available at *http://www.pandora.com <http://www.pandora.com/>*. Pandora, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission.
- Mobile access requires a smartphone with an active data plan. Standard data rates may apply.
- Pandora is only available in the United States.

* Not available on all models

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 465

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)................... 556
Accelerator Position Meter 131
Accessories and Modifications................. 631
Accessory Power Socket 208
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)........... 99, 518
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow............................ 99, 501
Adding the Coolant.................................. 590
Additives
  Coolant 589
  Engine Oil.. 582
  Washer... 593
Additives, Engine Oil............................... 582
Adjusting
  Armrest 200
  Clock.. 144
  Front Head Restraints.............................. 196
  Front Seats 193
  Mirrors 190
  Rear Seats.. 199
  Steering Wheel 189
  Temperature... 129
Adjusting the Clock 144
Adjusting the Sound................................ 238
Agile Handling Assist............................... 478
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 217
  Changing the Mode 220
  Defrosting the Windshield and Windows.. 221
  Dust and Pollen Filter.............................. 624
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 220
  Sensor.. 224
  Using Automatic Climate Control 217
Air Pressure..................................... 610, 685
Airbags.. 48
  Advanced Airbags 54
  After a Collision 51
  Airbag Care.. 63
  Event Data Recorder 0
  Front Airbags (SRS)................................... 51
  Indicator... 60, 89
  Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator 61
  Sensors 48
  Side Airbags 56
  Side Curtain Airbags................................. 58
AM/FM Radio... 280
Android Auto 316
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 556
  Indicator.. 89
Apple CarPlay 313
Armrest 200
Audio Remote Controls 230
Audio System.................................. 226, 251
  Adjusting the Sound....................... 238, 273
  Android Auto 316
  Apple CarPlay 313
  Audio/Information Screen 252
  Bluetooth® Audio 248, 303
  Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout.. 256
  Changing the Screen Interface 270
  Closing Apps 272
  Customizing the Meter 256
  Display Setup 274
  Error Messages 320
  General Information............................... 324
  Home Screen 262
  HondaLink® 305
  iPod 242, 291
  Limitations for Manual Operation............ 275
  Menu Customize 271
  MP3/WMA/AAC 245, 300
  Pandora® 298
  Reactivating 229
  Recommended Devices 326
  Remote Controls.................................... 230
  Security Code 229
  Selecting an Audio Source 275
  Siri Eyes Free 312
  SiriusXM® Radio 283
  Song By Voice™ (SBV)............................ 294
  Status Area 269
  Theft Protection 229
  USB Flash Drives..................... 245, 300, 326
  USB Port(s).. 227
  Voice Control Operation 276
  Wallpaper Setup 260

Index

  Wi-Fi Connection 310
Audio/Information Screen 234, 252
Authorized Manuals 695
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 159
  Customize 140
Auto High-Beam 181
Automatic Brake Hold 553
  Indicator 84, 553
Automatic Brake Hold System
  Indicator 84, 553
Automatic Lighting 178
Average Fuel Economy 128
Average Speed 128

B

Battery 620
  Charging System Indicator 85, 668
  If the Battery Is Dead 662
  Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 620
  Maintenance (Replacing) 622
Belts (Seat) 40
Beverage Holders 205
***Bluetooth*® Audio** 303
***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** 383, 410
Booster Seats (For Children) 78
Brake System 549
  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 556
  Automatic Brake Hold 553
  Brake Assist System 557
  Fluid 592
  Foot Brake 552
  Indicator (Red) 82, 670, 671
  Parking Brake 549
Braking Pressure Meter 131
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 187
Bulb Replacement 594
  Brake Light, Rear Turn Signal Light and Back-Up Light 602
  Fog Lights 596
  Front Side Marker Lights 599
  Front Turn Signal Lights 598
  Headlights 594
  High-Mount Brake Light 603
  Parking/Daytime Running Lights 601
  Rear License Plate Light 603
  Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights 601
  Taillights 603
  Taillights/Rear Side Marker Lights 603
Bulb Specifications 684

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 79
Cargo Area Cover 213
Cargo Hook 212
Carrying Cargo 445, 447
Certification Label 686
Changing Bulbs 594
Charging System Indicator 85, 668
Child Safety 64
  Childproof Door Locks 158
Child Seat 64
  Booster Seats 78
  Child Seat for Infants 66
  Child Seat for Small Children 67
  Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 72
  Larger Children 77
  Rear-facing Child Seat 66
  Selecting a Child Seat 68
  Using a Tether 74
Childproof Door Locks 158
Cleaning the Exterior 628
Cleaning the Interior 625
Climate Control System 217
  Changing the Mode 217
  Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 221
  Dust and Pollen Filter 624
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 220
  Sensors 224
  Using Automatic Climate Control 217
CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™) 491
Coat Hooks 211
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 491
Compact Spare Tire 648, 685
Console Compartment 204

- **Continuously Variable Transmission**
  - Creeping 460
  - Fluid 591
  - Kickdown 460
  - Operating the Shift Lever 24, 462
  - Shift Lever Does Not Move 665
  - Shifting 461
- **Controls** 143
- **Coolant (Engine)** 589
  - Adding the Coolant 590
  - Overheating 666
- **Creeping (Continuously Variable Transmission)** 460
- **Cup Holders** 205
- **Customer Service Information** 696
- **Customized Features** 134, 350

D

- **Daytime Running Lights** 180
- **Dead Battery** 662
- **Defaulting All the Settings** 379
- **Defrosting the Windshield and Windows** 221
- **Devices that Emit Radio Waves** 687
- **Dimming**
  - Headlights 177
  - Rearview Mirror 190
- **Dipstick (Engine Oil)** 583
- **Directional Signals (Turn Signal)** 176
- **Display Button** 252
- **Display Setup** 239
- **Display/Information Button** 125
- **Door Mirrors** 192
- **Doors** 145
  - Auto Door Locking 159
  - Auto Door Unlocking 159
  - Keys 145
  - Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 156
  - Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 147
- **DOT Tire Quality Grading** 612
- **Drive Mode Switch** 473
- **Driver Information Interface** 124
- **Driving** 443
  - Braking 549
  - Continuously Variable Transmission 460
  - Shifting Gear 468
  - Shifting Position 461
  - Starting the Engine 451, 454
- **Dust and Pollen Filter** 624

E

- **Eco Assist System** 11
- **ECON Mode** 472
- **Elapsed Time** 128
- **Electric Power Steering (EPS) System** 89
  - Indicator 89, 672
- **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)** 475
- **Emergency** 679
- **Emergency Engine Stop** 661
- **Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes)** 689
- **Engine**
  - Coolant 589
  - If the Battery Is Dead 662
  - Oil 582
  - Starting 451, 454
  - Switch Buzzer 171
- **Engine Coolant** 589
  - Adding the Coolant 590
  - Overheating 666
  - Temperature Gauge 122
- **Engine Oil** 582
  - Adding 585
  - Checking 583
  - Displaying Oil Life 574
  - Low Oil Pressure Indicator 84, 668
  - Recommended Engine Oil 582
- **ENGINE START/STOP Button** 172
- **EPS (Electric Power Steering) System** 672
- **Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)** 79
- **Exterior Care (Cleaning)** 628
- **Exterior Mirrors** 192

F

- **Features** 225
- **Filters**
  - Dust and Pollen 624
  - Oil 586
- **Flat Tire** 635

- **Floor Mats** 626
- **Fluids**
  - Brake/Clutch 592
  - Continuously Variable Transmission 591
  - Engine Coolant 589
  - Manual Transmission 591
  - Windshield Washer 593
- **FM/AM Radio** 240, 280
- **Fog Light Indicator** 93
- **Folding Down the Rear Seats** 199
- **Foot Brake** 552
- **Front Airbags (SRS)** 51
- **Front Head Restraints** 196
- **Front Seat Heaters** 215
- **Front Seats** 193
  - Adjusting 193
- **Front Sensor Camera** 546
- **Fuel** 26, 562
  - Fuel Economy and CO$_2$ Emissions 566
  - Gauge 122
  - Instant Fuel Economy 129
  - Low Fuel Indicator 88
  - Range 128
  - Recommendation 562
  - Refueling 562
- **Fuel Economy and CO$_2$ Emissions** 566
- **Fuel Fill Door** 26, 564
  - Unable to Unlock 680
- **Fuses** 674
  - Inspecting and Changing 678
  - Locations 674, 676

G

- **Gasoline (Fuel)**
  - Economy 566
  - Gauge 122
  - Information 562
  - Instant Fuel Economy 129
  - Low Fuel Indicator 88
  - Refueling 562
- **Gauges** 122
- **Gear Shift Lever Positions**
  - Continuously Variable Transmission 461
  - Manual Transmission 468
- **Glass (care)** 626, 629
- **Glove Box** 203
- **G-Meter** 131

H

- **Halogen Bulbs** 594, 597
- **Handling the Unexpected** 633
- **HandsFreeLink® (HFL)** 383, 410
  - Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History 423
  - Displaying Messages 437
  - HFL Buttons 383, 410
  - HFL Menus 386, 413
  - HFL Status Display 385, 412
  - In Case of Emergency 441
  - Limitations for Manual Operation 385, 412
  - Making a Call 404, 431
  - Options During a Call 409, 434
  - Phone Setup 390, 418
  - Phonebook Phonetic Modification 427
  - Receiving a Call 408, 434
  - Receiving a Text Message/E-mail 435
  - Ring Tone 422
  - Selecting a Text/E-mail Message Account 436
  - Speed Dial 400, 424
  - To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options 421
- **Hatch** 160
  - Light Bulb 684
  - Release Lever 681
  - Unable to Open 681
- **Hazard Warning Button** 6
- **HD Radio™** 280
- **Headlights** 177
  - Aiming 594
  - Auto High-Beam System 181
  - Automatic Operation 178
  - Dimming 177, 180
  - Operating 177
- **Heaters (Front Seat)** 215
- **Heaters (Rear Seat)** 216
- **HFL (HandsFreeLink®)** 383, 410
- **High Beam Indicator** 92
- **Hill Start Assist System** 453, 458
- **HomeLink® Universal Transceiver** 380
- **Honda App License Agreement** 327
- **Honda Sensing®** 27, 488
- **HondaLink®** 305

I

Identification Numbers 686
  Vehicle Identification 686
Ignition Switch... 171
Illumination Control 187
  Knob 187
Immobilizer System 163
  Immobilizer System Indicator 94
Indicators... 82
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow......................... 100, 501
  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)..................... 89
  Auto High-Beam....................................... 93
  Automatic Brake Hold........................ 84, 553
  Automatic Brake Hold System............ 84, 553
  Charging System 85, 668
  Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 101, 102, 103
  Drive Mode.. 93
  ECON Mode 95, 472
  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System .. 89, 672
  Fog Light 93
  Gear Position 87
  High Beam... 92
  Immobilizer System................................... 94
  Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) .. 100, 535
  Lights On... 92
  Low Fuel.. 88
  Low Oil Pressure 84, 668
  Low Tire Pressure/TPMS 91, 482, 486
  M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/ Shift Indicator 86
  Malfunction Indicator Lamp............... 85, 669
  Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) .. 83
  Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 82, 670, 671
  Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) 96
  Seat Belt Reminder 42, 88
  Security System Alarm 95
  Shift Down... 86
  Shift Lever Position 86
  Shift Up... 86
  Supplemental Restraint System........... 60, 89
  System Message.. 92
  Transmission System................................. 86
  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 92
  Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF .. 90, 476
  Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System 90, 475
Information 683
Instant Fuel Economy.............................. 129
Instrument Panel...................................... 81
  Brightness Control................................. 187
Interior Lights.. 201
Interior Rearview Mirror......................... 190
iPod 291

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) 652
  Handling of the Jack............................... 656
Jump Starting.. 662

K

Key Number Tag 146
Keys.. 145
  Number Tag.. 146
  Rear Door Won’t Open 158
  Remote Transmitter 153
  Types and Functions.............................. 145
  Won’t Turn 30
Kickdown (Continuously Variable Transmission)... 460

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 533
LaneWatch™ 480
Language (HFL) 412
LATCH (Child Seats) 69
Lights 177, 594
  Automatic... 178
  Bulb Replacement 594
  Daytime Running Lights 180
  Fog Lights 180
  High Beam Indicator 92
  Interior.. 201
  Light Switches.. 177
  Lights On Indicator................................... 92
  Turn Signals 176
Limited Slip Differential (LSD)................. 479

Load Limits 447

Locking/Unlocking 145

- Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 159
- Childproof Door Locks 158
- From Inside 156
- From Outside 147
- Keys 145
- Using a Key 154

Low Battery Charge 668

Low Fuel Indicator 88

Low Oil Pressure Indicator 84, 668

Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength 146

Lower Anchors 69

Luggage (Maximum Load Limit) 447

M

Maintenance 569

- Adding the Coolant 590
- Battery 620
- Brake/Clutch Fluid 592
- Cleaning 625
- Climate Control System 624
- Coolant 589
- Maintenance Minder™ 573
- Oil 583
- Precautions 570
- Remote Transmitter 622
- Replacing Light Bulbs 594
- Safety 571
- Service Items 576
- Tires 609
- Transmission Fluid 591
- Under the Hood 579

Malfunction Indicator Lamp 85, 669

Manual Transmission 468

Map Lights 202

Maximum Load Limit 447

Meters, Gauges 122

Mirrors 190

- Adjusting 190
- Door 192
- Exterior 192
- Interior Rearview 190

Modifications (and Accessories) 631

Moonroof 170

MP3 .... 245, 300

Multi-View Rear Camera 560

N

Numbers (Identification) 686

O

Odometer 127

Oil (Engine) 582

- Adding 585
- Checking 583
- Displaying Oil Life 574
- Low Oil Pressure Indicator 84, 668
- Recommended Engine Oil 582
- Viscosity 582

Open Source Licenses 341

Opening

- Hatch 681

Opening/Closing

- Hatch 160
- Hood 581
- Moonroof 170
- Power Windows 167

Outside Temperature Display 129

Overheating 666

P

Paddle Shifters (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) 25, 465, 466

Pandora® 298

Panic Mode 166

Parking 558

Parking Brake 549

Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) 83

Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) 82, 670, 671

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator 61

Passing Indicators 177

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 248, 303

Power Windows 167

Precautions While Driving 459

- Rain 459

- Pregnant Women 46
- Puncture (Tire) 635

R

- Radar Sensor 548
- Radio (FM/AM) 240, 280
- Radio (SiriusXM®) 283
- Radio Data System (RDS) 241, 282
- Range 128
- RDS (Radio Data System) 241, 282
- Readiness Codes (Emissions Testing) 689
- Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button 188
- Rear Seat Heaters 216
- Rear Seats (Folding Down) 199
- Rearview Mirror 190
- Refueling 562
  - Fuel Gauge 122
  - Gasoline 562, 684
  - Low Fuel Indicator 88
- Regulations 486, 612, 687
- Remote Engine Start 456
- Remote Transmitter 153
- Replacement
  - Battery 622
  - Bulbs 594
  - Fuses 674, 676
  - Tires 615
  - Wiper Blade Rubber 604, 607
- Reporting Safety Defects 688
- Resetting a Trip Meter 127
- Rev Indicators 131
- Rev Match System 469
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) 541
  - On and Off 543

S

- Safe Driving 35
- Safety Check 39
- Safety Labels 80
- Safety Message 3
- Seat Belts 40
  - Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor 45
  - Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 43
  - Checking 47
  - Fastening 44
  - Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 72
  - Pregnant Women 46
  - Reminder 42
  - Warning Indicator 42, 88
- Seat Heaters 215, 216
- Seats 193
  - Adjusting 193
  - Front Seat Heaters 215
  - Front Seats 193
  - Rear Seats 199
  - Seat Heaters 215, 216
- Security System 163
  - Security System Alarm Indicator 95
- Select Lever 24, 461, 468
  - Operation 24, 462, 468
  - Releasing 665
  - Won’t Move 665
- Select/Reset Knob 127
- Selecting a Child Seat 68
- Selector Knob (Audio) 233
- Setting the Clock 144
- Shift Lever 24, 461, 468
- Shift Lever Position Indicator 86
- Shift Position Indicator 462
- Shifting (Transmission) 461, 468
- Shoulder Anchor 45
- Side Airbags 56
- Side Curtain Airbags 58
- Siri Eyes Free 312
- SiriusXM® Radio 283
- Smart Entry with Push Button Start System 147
- Snow Tires 617
- Song By Voice™ (SBV) 294
- Spare Tire 648, 685
- Spark Plugs 684
- Specifications 684
- Specified Fuel 562, 684
- Speedometer 122
- SRS Airbags (Airbags) 51
- Starting the Engine 451, 454
  - Does Not Start 659
  - Engine Switch Buzzer 171
  - If the Battery Is Dead 662

Remote Engine Start 456

Steering Wheel

Adjusting 189

Stopping 558

Stopwatch 132

Summer Tires 617

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 51

Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) 6, 7, 171

System Message Indicator 92

T

Tachometer 122

Temperature

Outside Temperature Display 129

Temperature Sensor 129

Temporary Tire Repair Kit 636

Tie-down Anchors 212

Time (Setting) 144

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 482

Indicator 91, 673

Tires 609

Air Pressure 610, 685

Checking and Maintaining 609

Inspection 609

Labeling 610

Puncture (Flat Tire) 635

Regulations 612

Rotation 616

Spare Tire 648, 685

Summer 617

Temporary Tire Repair Kit 636

Tire Chains 617

Wear Indicators 614

Winter 617

Tools 634

Towing Your Vehicle

Emergency 679

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) 482

Indicator 91, 673

Transmission 461, 468

Continuously Variable Transmission 461

Fluid 591

Manual 468

Shift Lever Position Indicator 86, 462, 464

Trip Meter 127

Troubleshooting 633

Blown Fuse 674, 676

Brake Pedal Vibrates 30

Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 31

Emergency Towing 679

Engine Won’t Start 659

Noise When Braking 32

Overheating 666

Premium Gasoline 684

Puncture/Flat Tire 635

Rear Door Won’t Open 31, 158

Select Lever Won’t Move 665

Warning Indicators 82

Turbo Engine Vehicle 567

Turbo Meter 129

Turn Signals 176

Indicators (Instrument Panel) 92

Turn-by-Turn Directions 130

U

Unlocking the Doors 147

Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside 156

USB Adapter Cable 226

USB Flash Drives 300, 326

USB Port(s) 227

Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System 147

V

Vanity Mirrors 9

Vehicle Identification Number 686

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) 475

Off Button 476

Off Indicator 90

System Indicator 90

Viscosity (Oil) 582, 685

Voice Control Operation 276
  Audio Commands 278
  Climate Control Commands 279
  General Commands 279
  Music Search Commands 279
  On Screen Commands 279
  Phone Commands 278
  Useful Commands 278
  Voice Portal Screen 277
  Voice Recognition 276
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist™) 475

W

Wallpaper 236, 260
Warning and Information Messages 104
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 668
Warning Labels 80
Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately) 692
Watts 684
Wear Indicators (Tire) 614
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) 652
Wi-Fi Connection 310
Window Washers 184
  Adding/Refilling Fluid 593
  Switch 184
Windows (Opening and Closing) 167
Windshield 184
  Cleaning 626, 629
  Defrosting/Defogging 221
  Washer Fluid 593
  Wiper Blades 604
  Wipers and Washers 184
Winter Tires 617
  Snow Tires 617
  Tire Chains 617
Wipers and Washers 184
  Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 604
  Front 184
  Rear 186
Wireless Charger 209
WMA 245, 300
Worn Tires 609

HONDA

owners.honda.com (U.S.)
honda.ca (Canada)

31TGG640
OM-14570
00X31-TGG-6400

2021 Honda Civic Hatchback Owner’s Manual

© 2020 Honda Motor Co., Ltd. — All Rights Reserved

Printed in U.S.A.